# 2019 OWNER'S MANUAL



OPTIMA

KIA

The Power to Surprise

**⚠ WARNING – California Proposition 65**

"Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-road vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle."

## *Kia, THE COMPANY*

Thank you for becoming the owner of a new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality vehicles with exceptional value, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, Kia reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement can be carried out.

This manual applies to all trims of this vehicle and includes images, descriptions, and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, some material in this manual may not be applicable to your specific Kia vehicle. Some images are shown for illustration only and may show features that differ from those on your vehicle.

***Drive safely and enjoy your Kia!***

Thank you for choosing a Kia vehicle.

When you require service, remember that your Kia dealer knows your vehicle best. Your dealer has factory-trained technicians, recommended special tools and genuine Kia replacement parts. It is dedicated to your complete customer satisfaction.

Because subsequent owners require this important information as well, this publication should remain with the vehicle if it is sold.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Consumer Information manual that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle.

We urge you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

Kia offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models. Therefore, some of the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. Kia reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, always check with your Kia dealer.

We assure you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction in your Kia vehicle.

© 2018 Kia MOTORS AMERICA, Inc.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Kia Motors America, Inc.

Printed in U.S.A.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | |
|---|---|
| Introduction | 1 |
| Your vehicle at a glance | 2 |
| Safety features of your vehicle | 3 |
| Features of your vehicle | 4 |
| Driving your vehicle | 5 |
| What to do in an emergency | 6 |
| Maintenance | 7 |
| Specifications, Consumer information and Reporting safety defects | 8 |
| Index | I |

# Introduction

1


**How to use this manual . . . . . 1-2**
**Fuel requirements . . . . . 1-3**
- **Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol. . . . . 1-3**
- **Do not use methanol . . . . . 1-4**
- **Fuel Additives . . . . . 1-5**
- **Operation in foreign countries. . . . . 1-5**

**Vehicle break-in process . . . . . 1-5**
**Vehicle data collection and event data recorders. . 1-6**

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has nine sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTICEs in this manual. These WARNINGs were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTICEs.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.**

## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having a pump octane number ((R+M)/2) of 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (Consult an authorized Kia dealer for details.)

- Tighten the cap until it clicks one time, otherwise the Check Engine light will illuminate.

**⚠ WARNING - Refueling**

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off. Attempts to force more fuel into the tank can cause fuel overflow onto you and the ground causing a risk of fire.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage, especially in the event of an accident.**

### *Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol*

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Pursuant to EPA regulations, ethanol may be used in your vehicle.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 15 percent ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Ethanol provides less energy than gasoline and it attracts water, and it is thus likely to reduce your fuel efficiency and could lower your MPG results.

Methanol may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
2. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.
3. Gasohol containing more than 15 percent ethanol.

"E85" fuel is an alternative fuel comprised of 85 percent ethanol and 15 percent gasoline, and is manufactured exclusively for use in Flexible Fuel Vehicles. “E85” is not compatible with your vehicle. Use of “E85” may result in poor engine performance and damage to your vehicle's engine and fuel system. Kia recommends that customers do not use fuel with an ethanol content exceeding 15 percent.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage to the fuel system or any performance problems caused by the use of “E85” fuel.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never use any fuel containing methanol. Discontinue use of any methanol containing product which may inhibit proper drivability.**

***Other fuels***

Using fuels that contain Silicone (Si), MMT (Manganese, Mn), Ferrocene (Fe), and Other metalic additives, may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, clogging, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

***Gasoline containing MMT***

Some gasoline contains harmful manganese-based fuel additives Such as MMT(Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl). Kia does not recommend the use of gasoline containing MMT. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and affect your emission control system. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp on the cluster may come on.

***Do not use methanol***

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

### *Fuel Additives*

Kia recommends that you use good quality gasolines treated with detergent additives such as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, which help prevent deposit formation in the engine. These gasolines will help the engine run cleaner and enhance performance of the Emission Control System. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the website (www.toptiergas.com)

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, additives that can be purchased separately may be added to the gasoline.

If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive should be added to the fuel tank at every 7,500miles or every engine oil change is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

### *Operation in foreign countries*

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

## VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 600 miles (1,000 km) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 1,200 miles (2,000 km) of operation.

## VEHICLE DATA COLLECTION AND EVENT DATA RECORDERS

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/ fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

**These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.**

**To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.**

# Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview . . . . . 2-2
Interior overview . . . . . 2-4
Instrument panel overview . . . . . 2-5
Engine compartment . . . . . 2-6

## EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

■ Front view

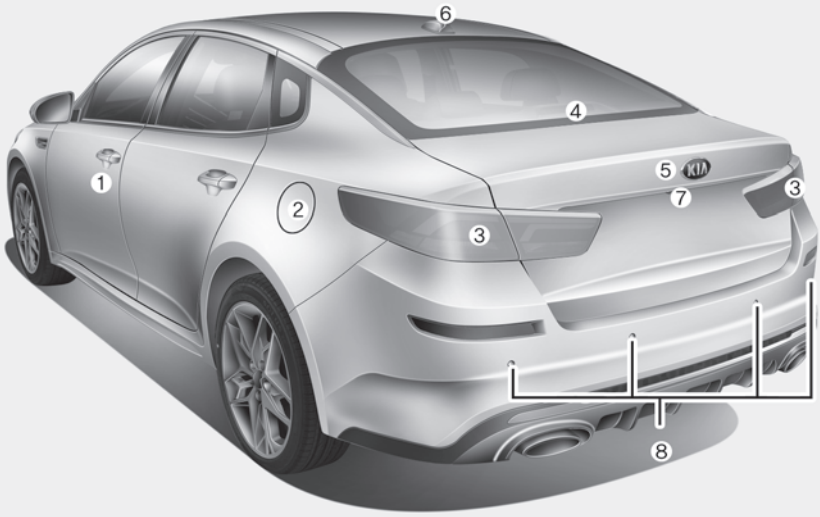



1. Hood ..... 4-36
2. Head lamp (Features of your vehicle) .4-103
   Head lamp (Maintenance) ..... 7-76
3. Fog lamp or Front turn signal lamp
   (Features of your vehicle) ..... 4-110
   Fog lamp or Front turn signal lamp
   (Maintenance) ..... 7-76
4. Wheel and tire (Maintenance) ..... 7-45
   Wheel and tire (Specifications) ..... 8-5
5. Outside rearview mirror ..... 4-55
6. Panoramic sunroof ..... 4-42
7. Front windshield wiper blades
   (Features of your vehicle) ..... 4-113
   Front windshield wiper blades
   (Maintenance) ..... 7-38
8. Windows ..... 4-31
9. Forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA)
   system ..... 5-60, 5-72
   Smart cruise control ..... 5-91

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJFA018001

■ Rear view

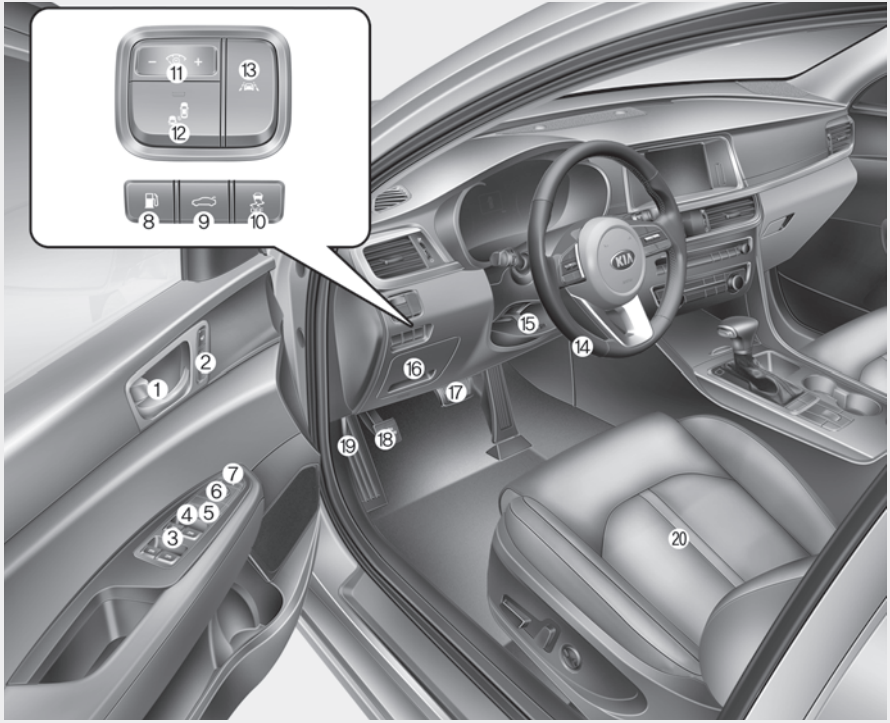



1. Door locks .....4-20
2. Fuel filler lid .....4-38
3. Rear combination lamp (Maintenance) .....7-76
4. High mounted stop lamp (Maintenance) .....7-76
5. Trunk .....4-25, 4-27
6. Antenna .....4-160
7. Rear view monitor .....4-101
8. Parking distance warning-reverse .....4-98

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJFA018002

## INTERIOR OVERVIEW

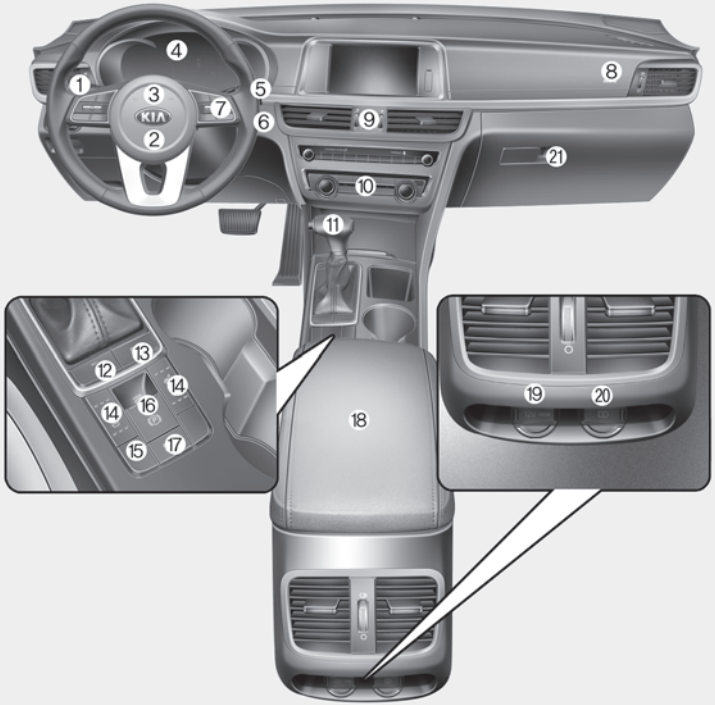



1. Inside door handle ..... 4-21
2. Driver position memory button ..... 3-11
3. Power window switch ..... 4-31
4. Central door lock switch ..... 4-22
5. Power window lock button ..... 4-35
6. Outside rearview mirror control ..... 4-56
7. Outside rearview mirror folding ..... 4-57
8. Fuel filler lid open button ..... 4-38
9. Trunk open button ..... 4-25
10. ESC off button ..... 5-52
11. Instrument panel illumination control .... 4-60
12. BCW On/Off button ..... 5-115
13. LKA On/Off button ..... 5-125
14. Steering wheel ..... 4-49
15. Tilt and telescopic steering control lever .. 4-50
16. Inner fuse panel ..... 7-60
17. Brake pedal ..... 5-36
18. Parking brake pedal ..... 5-38
19. Hood release lever ..... 4-36
20. Seat ..... 3-4

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OJFA018003

## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



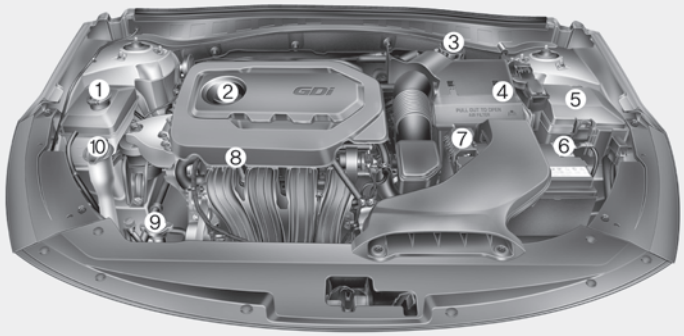

❊ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Light control/Turn signals .....4-103
2, Driver`s front air bag .....3-60
3. Horn.....4-52
4. Instrument cluster.....4-59
5. Wiper and washer control lever.....4-113
6. Ignition switch.....5-7
Engine start/stop button .....5-10
7. Cruise control .....5-87
Smart cruise control .....5-91
8. Passenger's front air bag .....3-60
9. Hazard warning flasher .....6-2
10. Manual climate control system.....4-121
Automatic climate control system....4-131
11. Shift lever A/T.....5-14
Shift lever DCT .....5-22
12. Heated steering wheel button .....4-51
13. Drive mode button.....5-112
14. Seat warmer.....4-151
Air ventilation seat.....4-152
15. Surround view monitoring system
On/Off button.....4-102
16. Electronic parking brake (EPB)
switch.....5-39
17. Auto Hold On/Off button.....5-46
18. Center console storage box .....4-148
19. Power outlet.....4-153
20. USB charger.....4-154
21. Glove box .....4-148

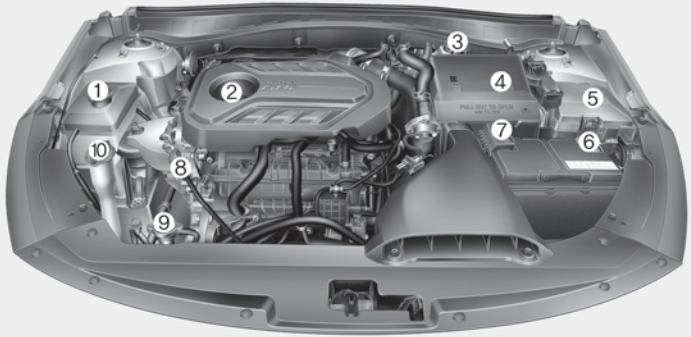
OJFA018004N

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **THETA 2.4L - GDI**




■ **THETA 2.0L T-GDI**

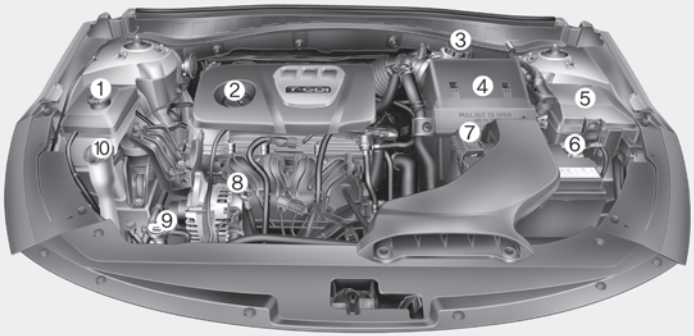



❉ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-28
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-26
3. Brake fluid reservoir.....7-31
4. Air cleaner.....7-34
5. Fuse box .....7-60
6. Negative battery terminal.....7-42
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-42
8. Engine oil dipstick.....7-26
9. Radiator cap .....7-28
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir....7-32

OJFA078152/OJFA078150

■ **GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir.....7-28
2. Engine oil filler cap .....7-26
3. Brake fluid reservoir.....7-31
4. Air cleaner.....7-34
5. Fuse box.....7-60
6. Negative battery terminal.....7-42
7. Positive battery terminal .....7-42
8. Engine oil dipstick.....7-26
9. Radiator cap .....7-28
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir....7-32

❈ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA078151

# Safety features of your vehicle


**Important safety precautions . . . . . 3-2**
- Always wear your seat belt. . . . . 3-2
- Restrain all children . . . . . 3-2
- Air bag hazards . . . . . 3-2
- Driver distraction . . . . . 3-2
- Control your speed . . . . . 3-3
- Keep your vehicle in safe condition. . . . . 3-3

**Seat. . . . . 3-4**
- Driver's seat. . . . . 3-4
- Front passenger's seat. . . . . 3-4
- Rear seat. . . . . 3-4
- Front seat adjustment - manual. . . . . 3-7
- Front seat adjustment - power. . . . . 3-9
- Driver position memory system (for power seat) . . . 3-11
- Headrest (for front seat) . . . . . 3-14
- Seatback pocket. . . . . 3-17
- Rear seat adjustment . . . . . 3-17

**Seat belts . . . . . 3-22**
- Seat belt restraint system . . . . . 3-22
- Pre-tensioner seat belt. . . . . 3-28
- Seat belt precautions. . . . . 3-31
- Care of seat belts . . . . . 3-33

**Child Restraint System (CRS) . . . . . 3-34**
- Children always in the rear . . . . . 3-34
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) . . . . . 3-35
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS). . . . . 3-38

**Air bag - advanced supplemental restraint system . . . . . 3-45**
- How does the air bag system operate? . . . . . 3-46
- Air bag warning light . . . . . 3-48
- SRS components and functions . . . . . 3-49
- Occupant Detection System (ODS) . . . . . 3-52
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag . . . . . 3-60
- Side air bag . . . . . 3-63
- Curtain air bag . . . . . 3-65
- SRS Care . . . . . 3-71
- Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle. . . . . 3-72
- Air bag warning label . . . . . 3-72

## IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

### Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate child restraint. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

### Air bag hazards

While air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and shorter adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using cellular phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction or getting into an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (i.e., MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.

- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and when conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email while driving. Most states have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some states and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

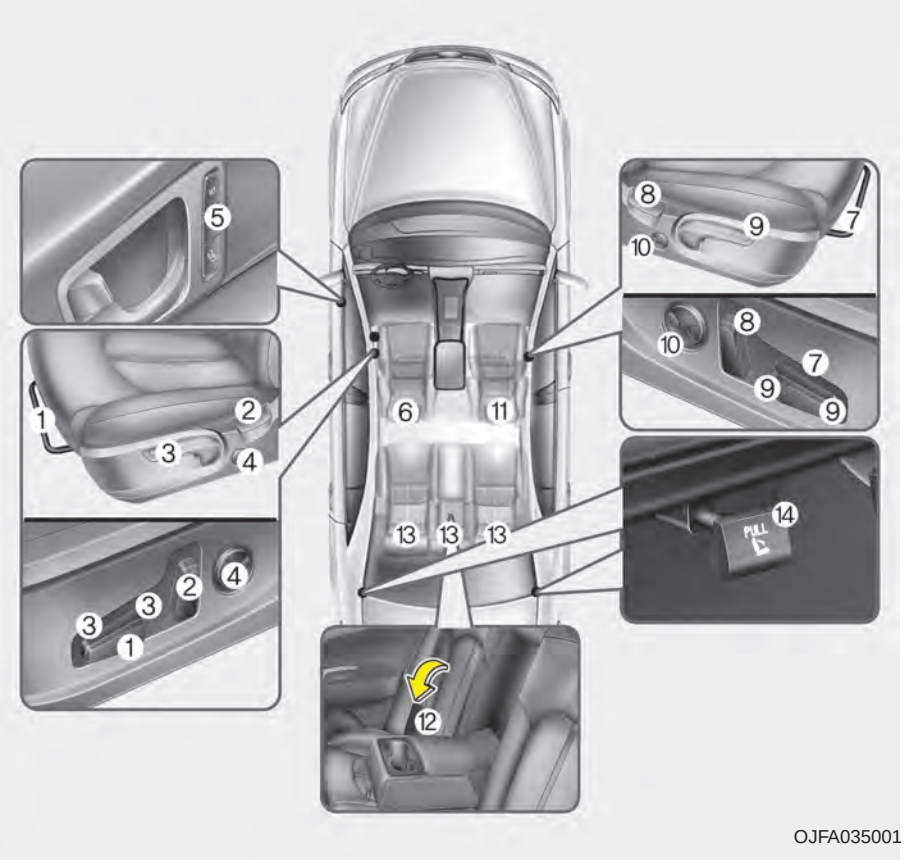
### Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

### Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

## SEAT




### Driver's seat

(1) Seat adjustment, forward / backward
(2) Seatback recliner
(3) Seat adjustment, height
(4) Lumbar support *
(5) Driver position memory system *
(6) Headrest

### Front passenger's seat

(7) Seat adjustment, forward / backward
(8) Seatback recliner
(9) Seat cushion height
(10) Lumbar support*
(11) Headrest

### Rear seat

(12) Armrest
(13) Headrest
(14) Seat-back folding lever

* : if equipped

**⚠ WARNING - Loose objects**

**Do not place anything in the driver's foot well or under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**Do not press the release lever on a manual seatback without holding and controlling the seatback. The seatback will spring upright possibly impacting you or other passengers.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for passengers**




**The driver must advise the passengers to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the restraint system's ability to restrain will be greatly reduced.**

**⚠ WARNING - Seat cushion**

**Occupants should never sit on aftermarket seat cushions or sitting cushions. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat**

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control of your vehicle.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against the seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining comfortable control of the your vehicle. A distance of at least 10" from your chest to the steering wheel is recommended. Failure to do so can result in air bag inflation injuries to the driver.**

**⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks**

**Always lock the rear seatback before driving. Failure to do so could result in passengers or objects being thrown forward injuring vehicle occupants.**

**⚠ WARNING - Luggage and Cargo**

**Do not stack, pile or stack luggage or cargo higher than the seatback in the cargo area. In an accident the cargo could strike and injure a passenger. If objects are large, heavy or must be piled, they must be secured in the cargo area.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unexpected Seat Movement**

**After adjusting a manual seat, always check that it is locked by shifting your weight to the front and back. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - Seat adjustment**

- **Do not adjust the seat while wearing seat belts. Moving the seat forward will cause strong pressure on the abdomen.**
- **Do not place your hand near the seat bottom or seat track while adjusting the seat. Your hand could get caught in the seat mechanism.**

**⚠ WARNING - Small Objects**

**Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the center console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seats mechanism.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Precautions with seat covers**

***Use caution when working on the seat cover. A short circuit or disconnection may occur, which could lead to noise, damage the ventilation system, and possible fire.***

**⚠ WARNING - Seat short circuit risk**

**Be aware of wires or air vents when placing a seat cover or covering the seat with plastic cover. A short circuit may occur, which could lead to fire.**

***Feature of Seat Leather***

- Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural substance, each part differs in thickness or density.

  Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
- The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
- The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
- Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the product.

### ⚠ CAUTION

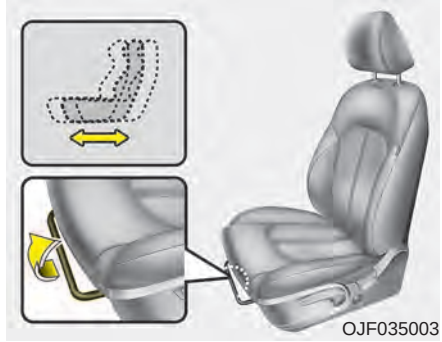
- ***Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside your back pants pocket may damage the seat fabric.***
- ***Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.***
- ***Jeans or clothes which contain bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric and cause damage or discoloration.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.**

## Front seat adjustment - manual

***Forward and backward***

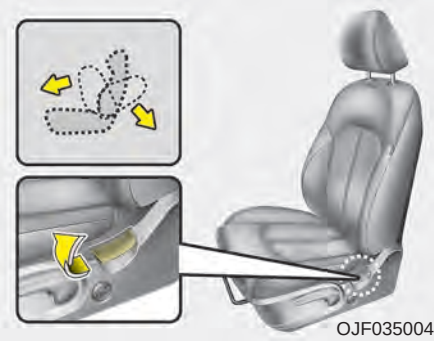



To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

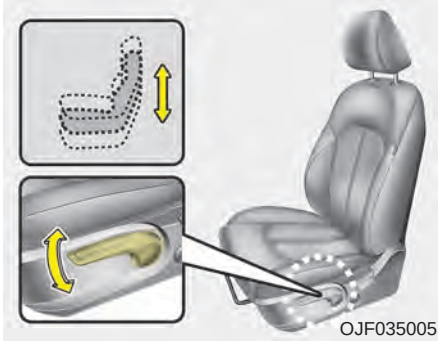
### *Seatback angle*




To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

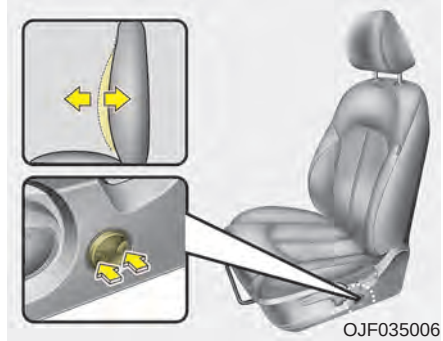
### *Seat height*




To change the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

### *Lumbar support (if equipped)*




The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

## Front seat adjustment - power (if equipped)

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so you can easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended children**

**Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Power seat adjustments**

***The power seating controls function by electric motor.***

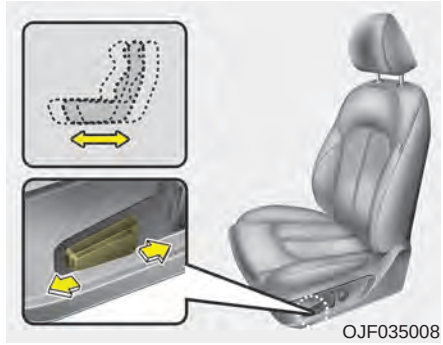
***Excessive operation may cause damage to the electrical equipment.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Power Seating**

***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may damage the power seat motor or electrical components.***

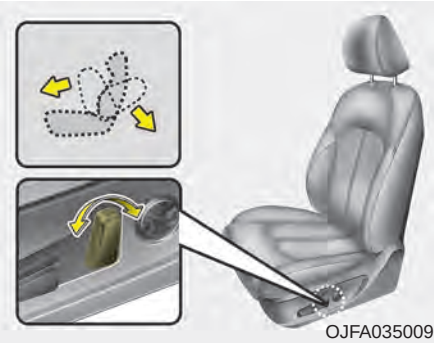
When in operation, the power seat-consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.

***Forward and backward***



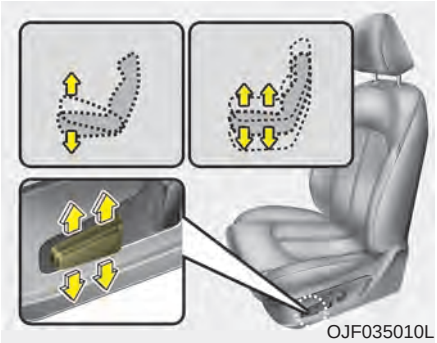

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Seatback angle*



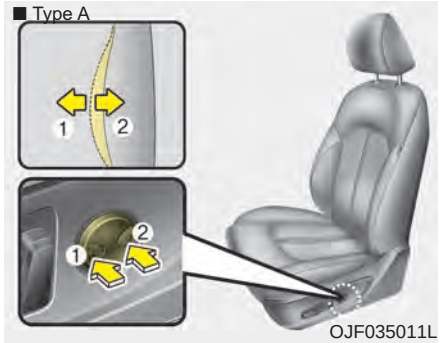

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Seat height*




Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Lumbar support (if equipped)*

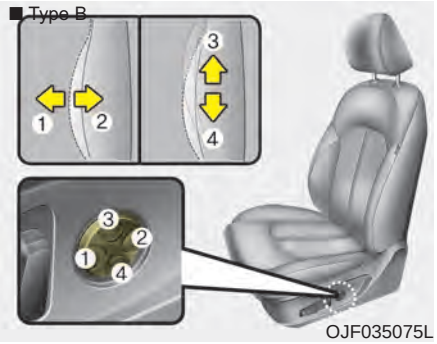



The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

**Type A**

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

■ Type B

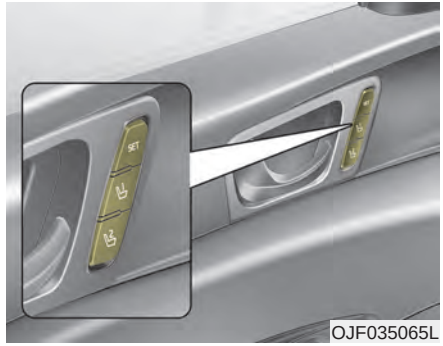



OJF035075L

**Type B**

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch (2), to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.
3. Press the upper portion (3) of the switch to move the support position up, or press the lower portion (4) of the switch, to move the support position down.
4. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

## Driver position memory system (if equipped, for power seat)




OJF035065L

A driver position memory system is provided to store and recall the driver seat and outside rearview mirror position with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference. If the battery is disconnected, the desired seat position memory will need to be re-saved.

**⚠ WARNING - Driver Position Memory System**

**Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system while the vehicle is moving.**

**This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death or serious injury.**

### *Storing positions into memory using the buttons on the door*

**Storing driver's seat positions**

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) while the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. Adjust the driver's seat and outside rearview mirror comfortable for the driver.
3. Press SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when memory has been successfully stored.

When recalling an adjustment memory button while sitting in the vehicle, you can be surprised by the setting chosen if the memory has been adjusted by someone else. If that occurs, immediately push the seat position control knob in the direction of the desired position to stop further undesired movement.

**Recalling positions from memory**

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) while the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. To recall the position in the memory, press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.

Adjusting the control switch for the driver's seat while the system is recalling the stored position will cause the movement to stop and move in the direction that the control switch is moved.

***Driver position memory system reset***

If the Driver position memory system reset fails to work, initialize the system as follows.

How to initialize:

1. Stop the car and open the driver's door with the Engine start/stop button in ON and the automatic shift lever in P (parking) position.
2. Pull the driver's seat forward as far as possible and have the seatback upright as much as possible using driver's seat forward adjustment and seatback angle (recline) movement switches.
3. Push SET button and seat forward movement switch button for 2 seconds simultaneously.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***If alarm sound and driver seat adjustment stop while initialization is in process, re-start initialization.***
- ***Make sure that there are no obstacles around the driver seat before proceeding with initialization.***
- ***Once initialization is completed, adjust seats conforming to your ideal driving position and save the customized seat settings.***

Initialization in the process :

1. Initialization begins as the alarm sounds.
2. The seat and seatback will automatically move backwards. The alarm sound will continue while the system is in operation.
3. Initialization will be all set after the seat and seatback move to the center with alarm sound being raised. If, however, any of the following occur, the initialization process will come to a stop and the alarm sound will stop as well.
   - When pushing driving position memory system button
   - When pushing driver's seat height adjustment switch
   - When relocating the shift lever from P position to other positions
   - When the driving speed exceeds 2mph (3 km/h)
   - When the driver's door is closed

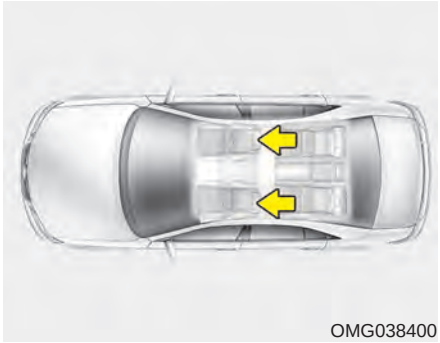
***Easy access function (if equipped)***

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the ignition key is removed and front driver`s door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the OFF position and front driver`s door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the ACC or START position.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when you get in your vehicle with the smart key after closing the driver's door.

You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User settings" in chapter 4.

## Headrest (for front seat)



OMG038400

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a rear collision.

For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes.

Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.

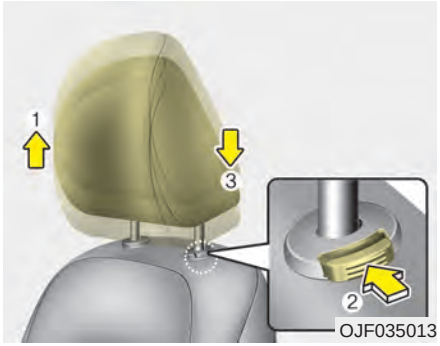
**⚠ WARNING - Headrest removal/adjustment**

- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Headrests can provide critical neck and head support in a crash.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest height while the vehicle is in motion. Driver may lose control of the vehicle.**

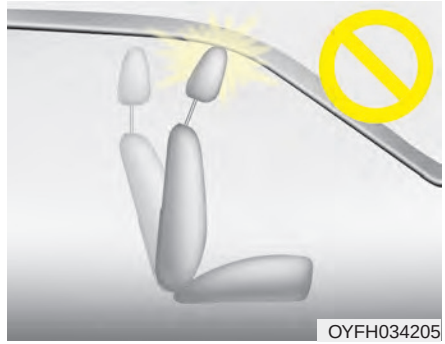
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Excessive pulling or pushing may damage the headrest.***

### *Adjusting the height up and down*



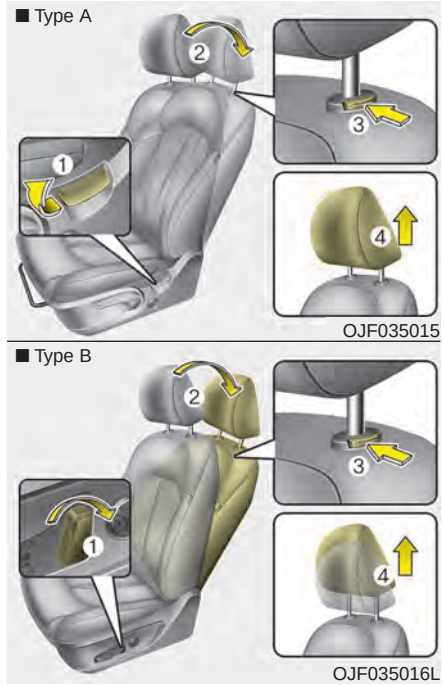

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).




### ✻ NOTICE

**If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.**

### *Removal and reinstallation*



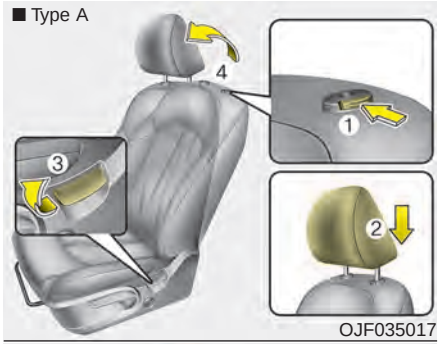
To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) while pulling the headrest up (4).

**⚠ WARNING - Headrest Removal**

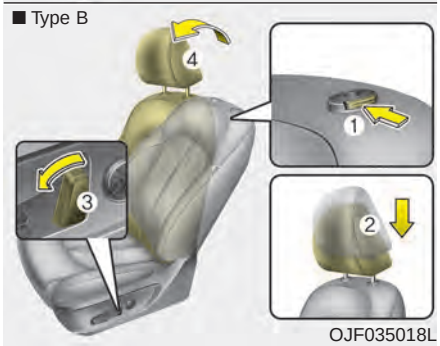
**NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed. Headrests can provide critical neck and head support in a crash.**

■ Type A




OJF035017

■ Type B




OJF035018L

To reinstall the headrest :

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes while pressing the release button (1) or switch(1).
2. Recline the seatback (4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING - Headrest Reinstallation**

**To reduce the risk of injury to the head or neck, always make sure the headrest is locked into position and adjusted properly after reinstalling.**

## Seatback pocket



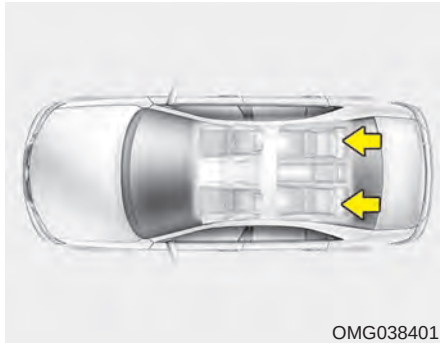

The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.

**⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets**

**Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.**

## Rear seat adjustment

### *Headrest*

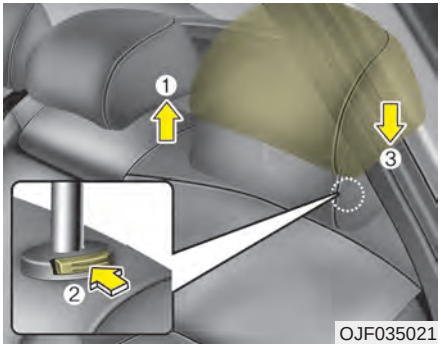



The rear seat is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

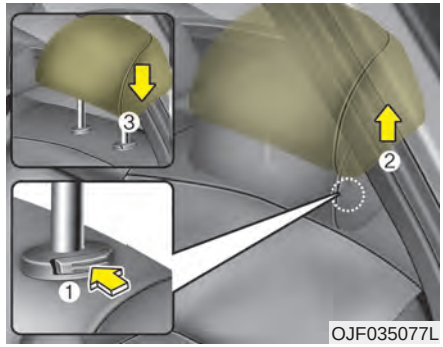
For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's heads is similar with the height as the top of their eyes.

Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.




**Adjusting the height up and down (if equipped)**

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

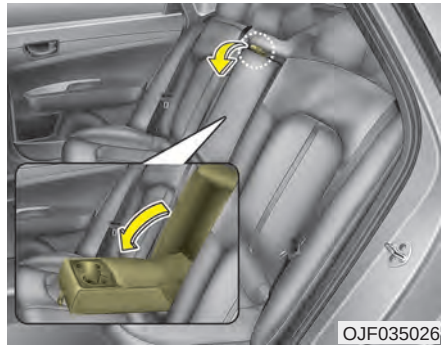



**Removal and reinstallation (if equipped)**

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) while pulling the headrest upward (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height and ensure that it locks in position.

### *Armrest*




To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

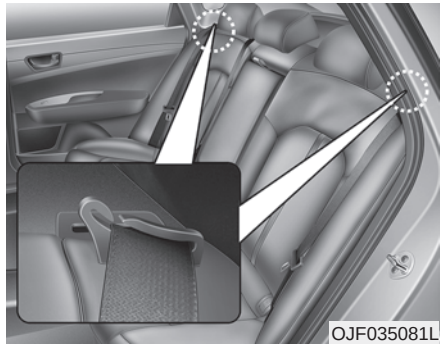
### *Folding the rear seat*

The rear seatbacks may be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Folded Seatback**

**The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects that could not otherwise be accommodated.**

- **Never allow a passenger to sit on top of the folded down seatback while the car is moving. This is not a proper seating position since no seat belts are available for use.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury caused by sliding cargo within the passenger compartment of the vehicle, objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seats.**

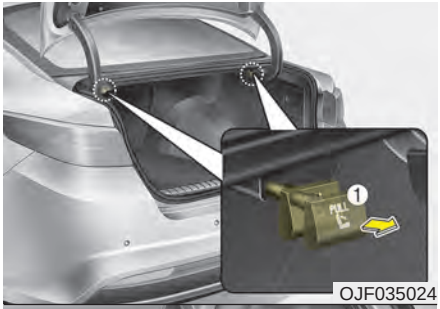



**To fold down the rear seatback:**

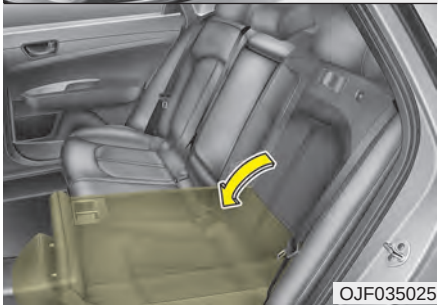
1. Make sure the rear seat belt webbing is in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.

**⚠ WARNING - Objects**

**Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**



OJF035024


OJF035025

4. Pull out the seatback locking knob(1) in the trunk, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.
5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unless the driver's position is properly set according to the driver's physical figure, do not fold the rear seat. It may increase body injuries in a sudden stop or collision.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward, resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ WARNING - Rear Seatback**

**To ensure maximum protection in the event of an accident or sudden stop, when returning the rear seat to the upright position:**

- **Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to become pinched or caught in the rear seat.**
- **Ensure the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback.**

**Failure to adhere to any of these instructions could result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles**

***When you fold the rear seatback, insert the buckle between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts**

***When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position.***

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo**

**Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.**

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading**

**Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle / dual clutch transmission is in P (Park) and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**

# SEAT BELTS

## Seat belt restraint system

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the vehicle is moving. A properly positioned shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.
- Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. See child restraint system section for further discussion.

**⚠ WARNING - Twisted seat belt**

**Make sure your seat belt is not twisted when worn. A twisted seat belt may not properly protect you in an accident and could even cut into your body.**

**⚠ WARNING - Shoulder Belt**

- **Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt cannot protect the occupant in a crash.**
- **Always wear both the shoulder portion and lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.**

**⚠ WARNING - Damaged seat belt**

**Replace the entire seat belt assembly if any part of the webbing or hardware is damaged as you can no longer be sure that a damaged seat belt will provide protection in a crash.**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which would either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.
- When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of another seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.
- Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly while driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.

**⚠ WARNING - Seat belt buckle**

**Do not allow foreign material (gum, crumbs, coins, etc.) to obstruct the seat belt buckle. This may prevent the seat belt from fastening securely.**



OJF035091L

**Driver's seat belt warning**

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate and warning chime will sound for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON if the seat belt is unfastened.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 6mph (9km/h), the warning light will stay illuminated until you drive under 4mph (6km/h). (if equipped)

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 12mph (20km/h) the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink. (if equipped)

If you unfasten the seat belt while driving under 12mph (20km/h), the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you unfasten the seat belt while driving over 12mph (20km/h), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.



OJF035092L

**Front passenger's seat belt warning**

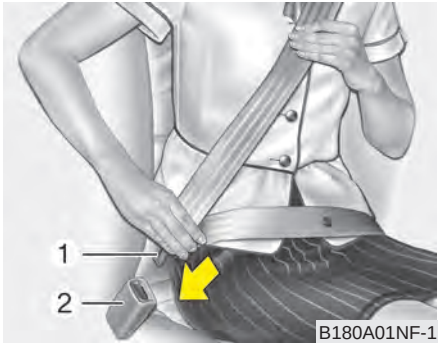
As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 6mph (9km/h), the warning light the warning light will stay illuminated.

If you unfasten the seat belt while driving in case of under 12mph (20km/h) the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

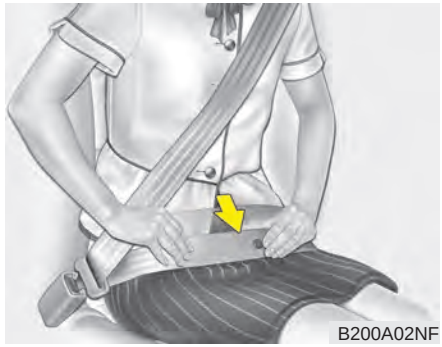
If you unfasten the seat belt while driving over 12mph (20km/h), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

### *Seat belt - Driver's 3-point system with emergency locking retractor*




**To fasten your seat belt:**

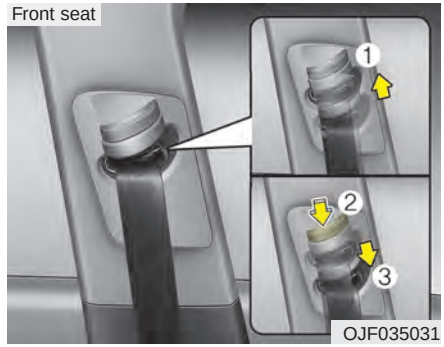
To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.




The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.**




**Height adjustment**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belt positioning**

**Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.**

**⚠ WARNING - Seat belt replacement**

**Replace your seat belts after being in an accident. Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision.**

***Seat belts - Front passenger and rear seat 3-point system with combination locking retractor***

**To fasten your seat belt:**

Combination retractor type seat belts are installed in the rear seat positions to help accommodate the installation of child restraint systems. Although a combination retractor is also installed in the front passenger seat position, it is strongly recommended that children always be seated in the rear seat. NEVER place any infant restraint system in the front seat of the vehicle.

This type of seat belt combines the features of both an emergency locking retractor seat belt and an automatic locking retractor seat belt. To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab into the buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle. When not securing a child restraint, the seat belt operates in the same way as the driver's seat belt (Emergency Locking Retractor Type).

It automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion of the seat belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips.

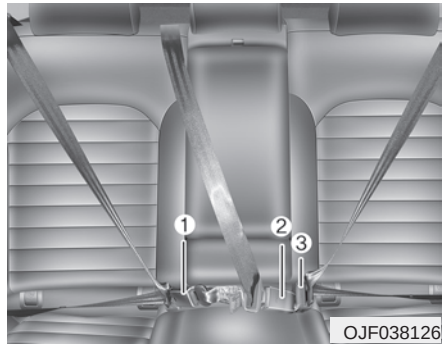
When the seat belt is fully extended from the retractor to allow the installation of a child restraint system, the seat belt operation changes to allow the belt to retract, but not to extend (Automatic Locking Retractor Type). Refer to “Using a child restraint system” in this section.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Although the combination retractor provides the same level of protection for seated passengers in either emergency or automatic locking modes, have the seated passengers use the emergency locking feature for improved convenience. The automatic locking function is intended to facilitate child restraint installation. To convert from the automatic locking feature to the emergency locking operation mode, allow the unbuckled seat belt to fully retract.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do NOT fold down the left portion of the rear seat back when the rear center seat belt is buckled. ALWAYS UNBUCKLE the rear center seat belt before folding down the left portion of the rear seat back. If the rear center seat belt is buckled when the left portion of the rear seat back is folded down, distortion and damage to the top portion of the seat back and seat belt garnish may result, causing the seat back to lock into the folded down position.***

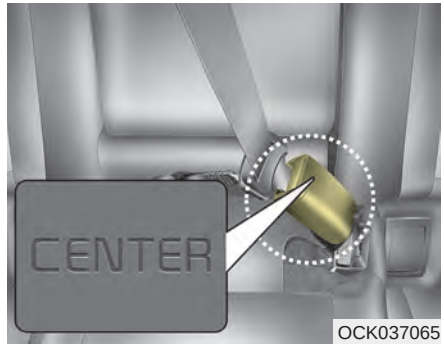



The seat belt should be locked into the buckle on each seat cushion to be properly fastened.

① : Rear right seat belt fastening buckle

② : Rear center seat belt fastening buckle

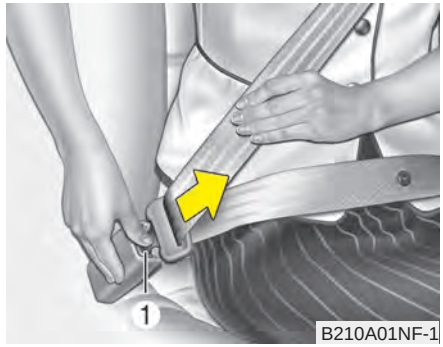
③ : Rear left seat belt fastening buckle




When using the rear center seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Prior to fastening the rear seat belts, ensure the latch matches the seat belt buckles. Forcefully fastening the left or right seat belt to the center buckle can result in an improper fastening scenario that will not protect you and/or your passengers in an accident.**




**To release the seat belt:**

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) on the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

## Pre-tensioner seat belt




Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts (retractor pretensioner and EFD (Emergency Fastening Device)). The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated, when a frontal collision is severe enough, together with the air bags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor may lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

(1) Retractor Pretensioner

The purpose of the retractor pretensioner is to make sure that the shoulder belts fit in tightly against the occupant's upper body in certain frontal collisions.

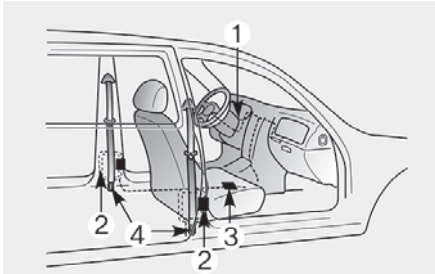
(2) EFD (Emergency Fastening Device)

The purpose of the EFD is to make sure that the pelvis belts fit in tightly against the occupant's lower body in certain frontal collisions.

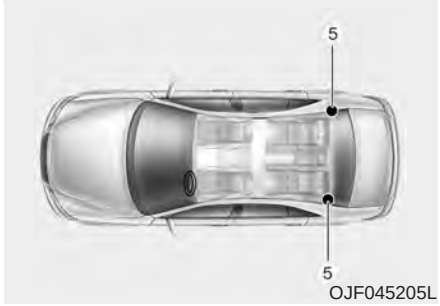
If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

## ✻ NOTICE

**When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**




OJF045207L




OJF045205L

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

(1) SRS air bag warning light
(2) Front retractor pre-tensioner assembly
(3) SRS control module
(4) Emergency fastening device (EFD)
(5) Rear retractor pre-tensioner assembly (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING - Skin Irritation**

**Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated. The fine dust from the pre-tensioner activation may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Both the driver's and front passenger's seat belt pre-tensioner system may be activated not only in certain frontal collision, but also in certain side collisions or rollovers, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the ON position, and then it should turn off.**

If the pre-tensioner seat belt system is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is not a malfunction with the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized Kia dealer inspect the pre-tensioner seat belt and SRS air bag system as soon as possible.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. This must be done by an authorized Kia dealer.**

**⚠ WARNING - Hot pretensioner**

**Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism fires during a collision the pre-tensioner becomes hot and can burn you.**

Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. If the pre-tensioner must be replaced, contact an authorized Kia dealer.

## Seat belt precautions

### *Infant or small child*

All 50 states have child restraint laws. You should be aware of the specific requirements in your state. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.**

### *Larger children*

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips as low as possible. Check periodically to insure that the belt fits. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are given the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING - Small children**

**Do not allow small children to ride in the vehicle without an appropriate child restraint system. If the shoulder belt comes in contact with your child's neck or face your child is too small to ride in the vehicle. In a crash the seat belt will inflict injury to your child's neck, throat and face.**

### *Restraint of pregnant women*

Pregnant women should wear lap/shoulder belt assemblies whenever possible according to specific recommendations by their doctors. The lap portion of the belt should be worn AS SECURELY AND LOW AS POSSIBLE.

**⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women**

**Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the seat belt above or on the abdomen where the fetus is located. The force of the seat belt during a collision will crush the fetus.**

### *Injured person*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

### *One person per belt*

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

### *Do not lie down*

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front and rear seats should be in an upright position when the vehicle is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front and rear seats are in a reclined position.

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

**⚠ WARNING - Pinched seat belt**

**Make sure that the webbing and/or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat when returning the rear seatback to its upright position. A caught or pinched webbing/ buckle may become damaged and could fail during a collision or sudden stop.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather. They could burn infants and children.**

### *Periodic inspection*

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

### *Keep belts clean and dry*

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

### *When to replace seat belts*

The entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. Additional questions concerning seat belt operation should be directed to an authorized Kia dealer.

# CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

## Children Always in the Rear

**⚠ WARNING - Restraint Location**

**Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating airbag and seriously injured.**

**⚠ WARNING - Hot Child Restraint**

**A child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day. Be sure to check the seat cover, buckles and latches before placing a child in the restraint system.**

Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Even with air bags, children can be seriously injured or killed. Children too large for a child restraint must use the seat belts provided.

All 50 states have child restraint laws which require children to travel in approved child restraint devices. The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of child restraints differs among states, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your state, and where you are travelling.

Child restraint systems must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).

Child restraint systems are generally designed to be secured in a vehicle seat by lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a LATCH system in the rear seats of the vehicle.

*Child restraint system (CRS)*

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rear-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the rear seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.

**⚠ WARNING**
**- Child Restraint Installation**

**An improperly secured child restraint can increase the risk of serious injury or death in an accident. Always take the following precautions when using a child restraint system:**

- **Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Always properly restrain your child in the child restraint.**
- **If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a child seat (as described in the child restraint system manual), the head restraint of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**After an accident, have a Kia dealer check the child restraint system, seat belts, tether anchors and lower anchors.**

## Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a CRS for your child, always:

- Make sure the CRS has a label certifying that it meets applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 213).
- Select a child restraint based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a child restraint that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided instructions with the child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING - Holding Children**

**Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior. Always use a child restraint system which is appropriate for your child's height and weight.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended Children**

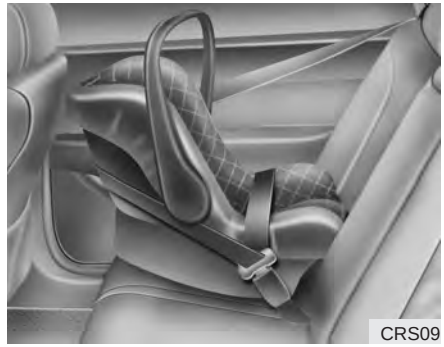
**Never leave children unattended in a vehicle. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in injuries to the child in the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING - Seat Belt Use**

**Do not use one seat belt for two occupants at the same time. This will eliminate any safety benefit provided by the seat belt to the occupants.**

### *Child restraint system types*

There are three main types of child restraint systems: rear-facing seats, forward-facing seats, and booster seats. They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.


CRS09

**Rear-facing child seats**

A rear-facing child seat provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the seat and reduces the stress to the neck and spinal cord.

All children under age one must always ride in a rear-facing infant child restraint.

Convertible and 3-in-1 child seats typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.

Continue to use a rear-facing child seat for as long as your child will fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the child seat manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rear-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a forward-facing child restraint with a harness.


OJF035032

**Forward-facing child restraints**

A forward-facing child seat provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing child seat with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your child restraint's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a booster seat.

**Booster seats**

A booster seat is a restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the lap of your child.

Keep your child in a booster seat until they are big enough to sit in the seat without a booster and still have the seat belt fit properly. For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snug across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury.

## Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

After selecting a proper child seat for your child, check to make sure it fits properly in your vehicle. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child seat. Note these general steps when installing the seat to your vehicle:

- **Properly secure the child restraint to the vehicle.** All child restraints must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH system.
- **Make sure the child restraint is firmly secured.** After installing a child restraint to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A child restraint secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.
- **Secure the child in the child restraint.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint according to the manufacturer instructions.

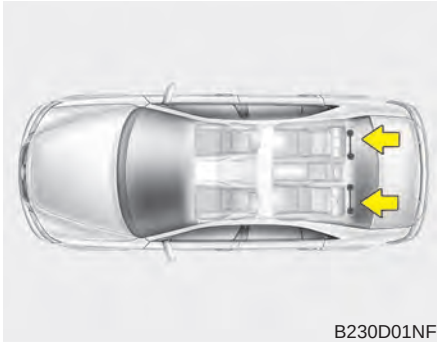
### *Lower Anchors and Tether for Children (LATCH) System*

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the child restraint easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your child restraint. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint. The LATCH system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the child restraint to the rear seats.

Lower anchors are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments.

To use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you must have a child restraint with LATCH attachments.

The child seat manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child seat with its attachments for the LATCH lower anchors.

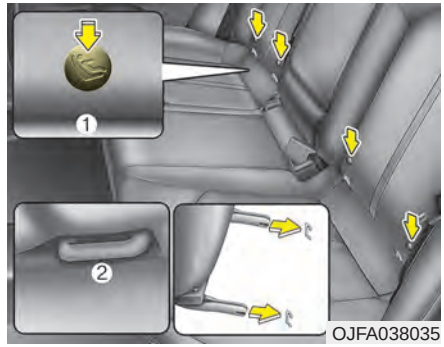


B230D01NF

LATCH anchors have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration. There are no LATCH anchors provided for the center rear seating position.

**⚠ WARNING - LATCH Lower Anchors**

**Never attempt to attach a LATCH equipped seat in the center seating position. LATCH lower anchors are only to be used in the left and right rear outboard seating positions. You may damage the anchors or the anchors may fail and break in a collision.**




OJFA038035

The lower anchor position indicator symbols are located on the left and right rear seat backs to identify the position of the lower anchors in your vehicle (see arrows in illustration).

The LATCH anchors are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions.

❈ (1) : Lower Anchor position indicator
(2) : Lower Anchor

### *Securing a child restraint with the LATCH anchors system*

To install a LATCH-compatible child restraint in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the lower anchors.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child restraint and the lower anchors.
3. Place the child restraint on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer.
4. Follow the child restraint instructions for properly adjusting and tightening the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the LATCH system:**

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your child restraint system.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of the unused seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts before the child is placed into the vehicle. Lock each unused seatbelt following the instructions in the "Automatic locking mode" subsection, and place the webbing behind the child seat or against an unused seatback. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**

**(Continued)**

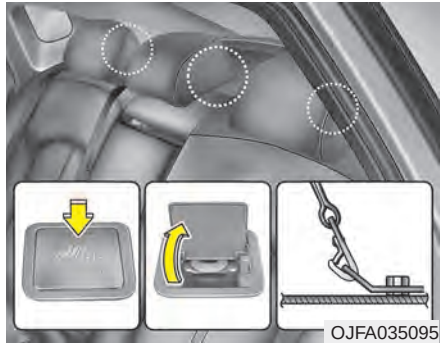
**(Continued)**

- **NEVER attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Always have the LATCH system inspected by your authorized Kia dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the LATCH system and may not properly secure the child restraint.**

## ✻ NOTICE

**The recommended maximum weight for the LATCH system is 65 lbs. (30 kg). When selecting a proper child restraint, consider that the maximum total weight of the child plus the child restraint should be less than 65 lbs (30 kg).**
**As a guide, the MAX child restraint weight should be determined by the following calculation:**
**Child Restraint Weight =**
**65 - (child's total weight in lbs.)**

***Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system***




First secure the child restraint with the LATCH lower anchors or the seat belt. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether strap be attached, attach and tighten the top tether strap to the top tether strap anchor.

Child restraint hook holders are located on the shelf behind the rear seats.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Take the following precautions when installing the tether strap:**

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your child restraint system.**
- **NEVER attach more than one child restraint to a single tether anchor. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**
- **Do not use the tether anchors for adult seat belts or harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **Always fasten the seatbelts behind the child restraint seat when they are not used to secure the child seat. Failure to do so may result in child strangulation.**

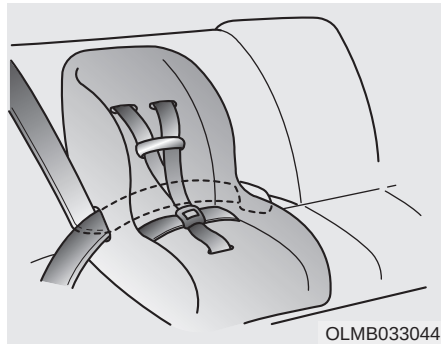

OJF035034

To install the tether anchor:

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the child restraint seatback. Route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, or route the tether strap over the top of the vehicle seatback. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the tether anchor, then tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions to firmly secure the child restraint to the seat.
3. Check that the child restraint is securely attached to the seat by pushing and pulling the seat forward and from side-to-side.

### *Securing a child restraint with a lap belt or lap/shoulder belt*

When not using the LATCH system, all child restraints must be secured to a vehicle rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.


OLMB033044

**Automatic locking mode**

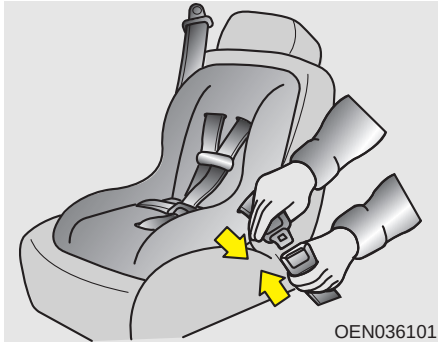
Since all passenger seat belts move freely under normal conditions and only lock under extreme or emergency conditions (emergency locking mode), you must manually pull the seat belt all the way out to shift the retractor to the "Automatic Locking" mode to secure a child restraint.

The "Automatic Locking" mode will help prevent the normal movement of the child in the vehicle from causing the seat belt to loosen and compromise the child restraint system. To secure a child restraint system, use the following procedure.

To install a child restraint system on the rear seats, do the following:

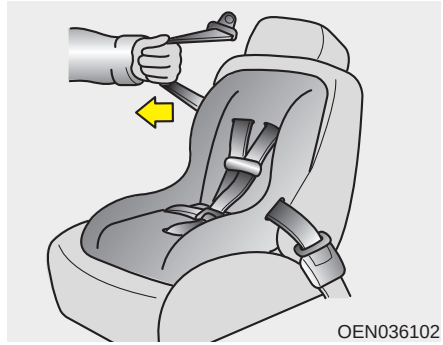
1. Place the child restraint system on a rear seat and route the lap/ shoulder belt around or through the child restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions.

   Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

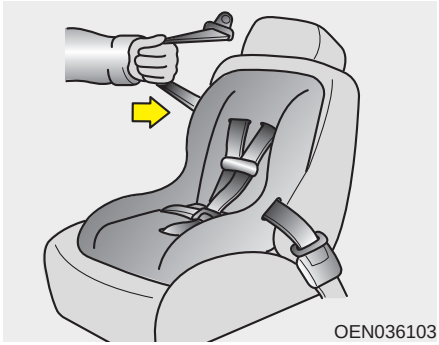

OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

   Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.


OEN036102

3. Pull the shoulder portion of the seat belt all the way out. When the shoulder portion of the seat belt is fully extended, it will shift the retractor to the "Automatic Locking" (child restraint) mode.


OEN036103

4. Slowly allow the shoulder portion of the seat belt to retract and listen for an audible "clicking" or "ratcheting" sound. This indicates that the retractor is in the "Automatic Locking" mode. If no distinct sound is heard, repeat steps 3 and 4.
5. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the child restraint system while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
6. Push and pull on the child restraint system to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place. If it is not, release the seat belt and repeat steps 2 through 6.
7. Double check that the retractor is in the "Automatic Locking" mode by attempting to pull more of the seat belt out of the retractor. If you cannot, the retractor is in the "Automatic Locking" mode.

If your CRS manufacturer instructs or recommends you to use a tether anchor with the lap/shoulder belt, refer to the previous pages for more information.

### ✻ NOTICE

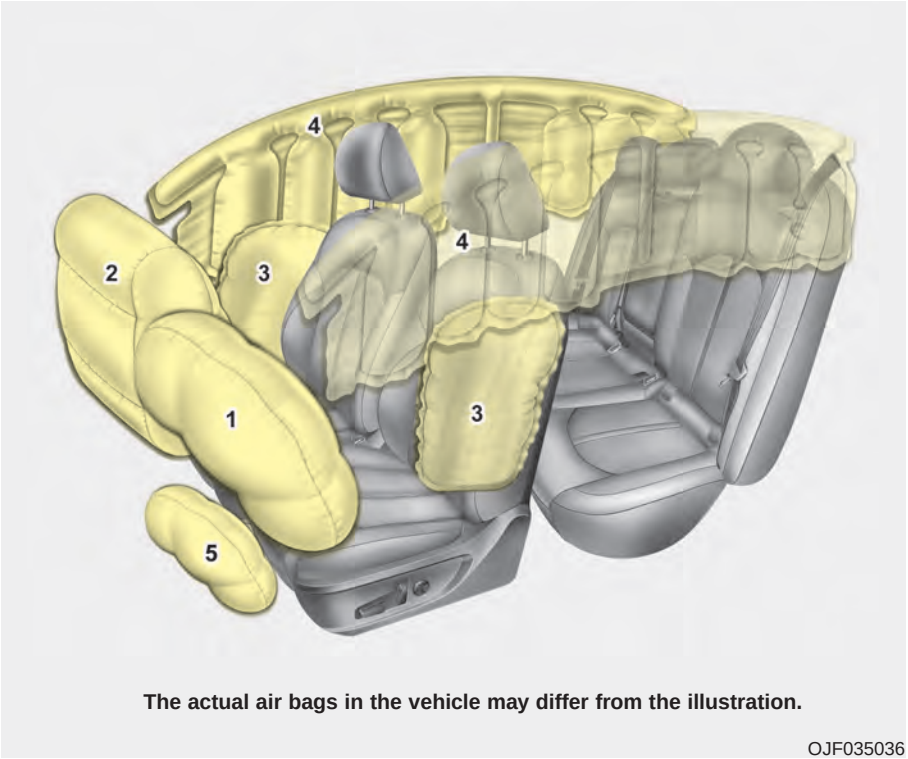
**When the seat belt is allowed to retract to its fully stowed position, the retractor will automatically switch from the "Automatic Locking" mode to the emergency lock mode for normal adult usage.**

**⚠ WARNING - Auto lock mode**

**Set the retractor to Automatic Lock mode when installing any child restraint system. If the retractor is not in the Automatic Locking mode, the child restraint can move when your vehicle turns or stops suddenly.**

To remove the child restraint, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the restraint and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

## AIR BAG - ADVANCED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM




**The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.**

OJF035036

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag
(3) Side air bag
(4) Curtain air bag
(5) Driver's knee air bag

Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.

### How does the air bag system operate?

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- The appropriate air bags inflate instantly in the event of a serious frontal collision or side collision in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact, and, the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident.

  It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, side and/or curtain air bags will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.
- When a rollover is detected, side and/or curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts.
- In order to help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of the air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of the air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel or passenger air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel or passenger air bag.**

**⚠ WARNING - Airbag inflation**

**Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining comfortable control of your vehicle. A distance of at least 10" from your chest to the steering wheel is recommended. Failure to do so can result in airbag inflation injuries to the driver.**

*Noise and smoke*

When inflated, the air bags make a loud noise and leave smoke and powder in the air inside the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are nontoxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult a doctor if the symptom persists.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot components**

**Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after airbag inflation. The air bag related parts in the steering wheel, instrument panel and the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. Hot components can result in burn injuries.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not install or place any accessories near air bag deployment areas, such as the instrument panel, windows, pillars, and roof rails.**

**Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the airbag inflates.**

***Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger's seat.***




Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

**⚠ WARNING - Air bag deployment**

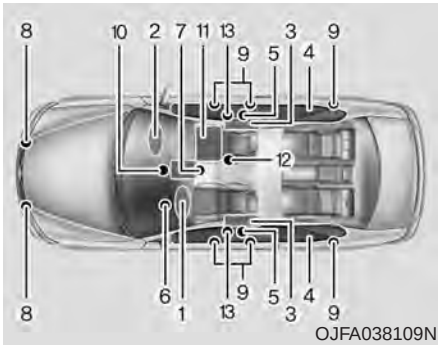
**When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible. Inflation of the side and/or curtain air bags could impact the child.**

## Air bag warning light




The purpose of air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection.

## SRS components and functions



OJFA038109N

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side air bag modules
4. Curtain air bag modules
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)/Rollover sensor
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors
10. PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator (Front passenger’s seat only)
11. Occupant detection system (Front passenger’s seat only)
12. Front passenger’s seat belt buckle sensor
13. Emergency fastening device (EFD)

*: if equipped


W7-147

If the air bag warning light is illuminated for more than 6 seconds after the ignition is turned on, or of it illuminates during vehicle operation, an SRS component may not be functioning properly and you should have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

If any of the following conditions occur, this indicates a malfunction in the air bag system. Have an authorized Kia dealer inspect the air bag system as soon as possible.

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

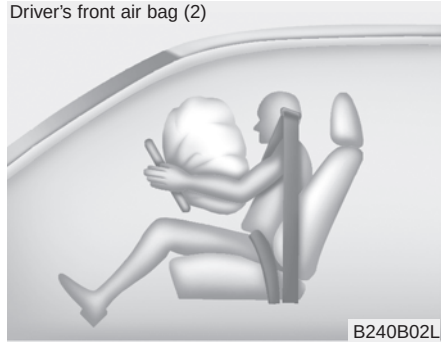
Driver's front air bag (1)



B240B01L

The front air bag modules are located both in the center of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)




A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag




**⚠ WARNING - Air bag obstructions**

**Do not install or place any accessories on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the air bag deploys.**

**⚠ WARNING - Flying objects**

**Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the side airbag inflates.**

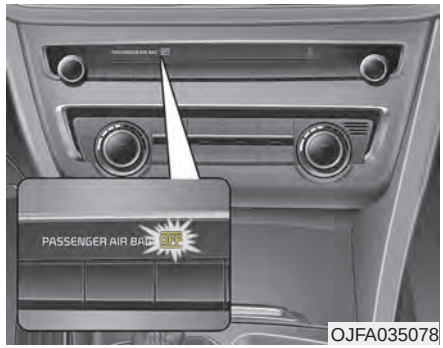
- If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.

- The SRS can function only when the ignition switch is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition switch. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

## Occupant Detection System (ODS)




Your vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system in the front passenger's seat.

The occupant detection system is designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated front passenger and determine if the passenger's front air bag should be enabled (may inflate) or not. Only the front passenger front air bag is controlled by the Occupant Detection System.

Do not put anything in front of the passenger air bag OFF indicator.

***Main components of the occupant detection system***

- An detection device located within the front passenger seat cushion.
- An electronic system which determines whether the passenger air bag systems should be activated or deactivated.
- An indicator light located on the instrument panel which illuminates the words PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicates the front passenger air bag system is deactivated.
- The instrument panel air bag warning light is interconnected with the occupant detection system.

If the front passenger seat is occupied by a person that the system determines to be of appropriate size, and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator will turn off and the front passenger's air bag will be able to inflate, if necessary, in frontal crashes.

You will find the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator on the center facia panel. This system detects the conditions 1~4 in the following table and activates or deactivates the front passenger air bag based on these conditions.

Always be sure that you and all vehicle occupants are seated and restrained properly (sitting upright with the seat in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended, feet on the floor, and wearing the safety belt properly) for the most effective protection by the air bag and the safety belt.

- The ODS (Occupant Detection System) may not function properly if the passenger takes actions which can defeat the detection system. These include:

(1) Failing to sit in an upright position.

(2) Leaning against the door or center console.

(3) Sitting towards the sides or the front of the seat.

(4) Putting legs on the dashboard or resting them on other locations which reduce the passenger weight on the front seat.

(5) Improperly wearing the safety belt.

(6) Reclining the seat back.

### *Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant detection system*

| Condition detected by the occupant classification system | Indicator/Warning light | | Devices |
|---|---|---|---|
| | "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator light | SRS warning light | Front passenger air bag |
| 1. Adult*1 | Off | Off | Activated |
| 2. Child restraint system with child under 12 months old *2 *3 *4 | On | Off | Deactivated |
| 3. Unoccupied | On | Off | Deactivated |
| 4. Malfunction in the system | Off | On | Activated |

*1 The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2 Do not allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending upon his/her physique or sitting position.

*3 Never install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*4 The PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator may turn on or off when a child above 12 months to 12 years old (with or without child restraint system) sits in the front passenger seat. This is a normal condition.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install a child restraint seat in the passenger seat when the seat is heavily soaked with any type of liquid.***
- ***Do not alter or remodel the ODS (Occupant Detection System). This may damage the system and prevent its proper function in a collision.***

### ✻ NOTICE

- Do not use car seat cushions that cover up the surface of the seat and aftermarket manufactured passenger seat heaters.
- After the passenger seat has been removed or installed for repair purposes, check for normal operation of the “PASS AIR BAG “OFF”” and air bag warning lights with a person seated or not seated in the passenger seat.
- After conducting car interior cleaning using steam or detergent, the seat should be dried properly. Afterward, check for normal operation of the “PASS AIR BAG “OFF”” and air bag warning lights.
- Any service related to the passenger seat and the ODS must be done at Kia service center.

### ⚠ WARNING - ODS system

Riding in an improper position or placing items on or under the passenger seat may interfere with the normal operation of the ODS (Occupant Detection System). It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.

### ✻ NOTICE

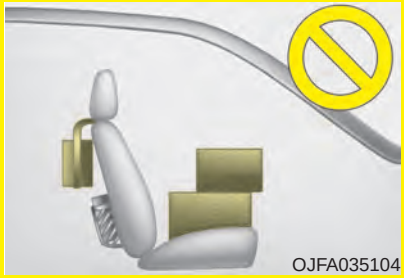
When the “PASS AIR BAG “OFF”” symbol is illuminated, the passenger air bag system will not operate. The passenger air bag system will operate when necessary if the symbol is not illuminated.

### ✻ NOTICE

Do not modify or replace the front passenger seat. Don't place anything on or attach anything such as a blanket, front seat cover or after market seat heater to the front passenger seat. This can adversely affect the occupant detection system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding in an improper position adversely affects the Occupant Detection System and may result in the deactivation of the front passenger airbag. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.**




- **Do not place a heavy load in the front passenger seatback pocket or on the front passenger seat.**




- **Do not place feet on the front passenger seatback.**




- **Never sit with hips shifted towards the front of the seat.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**




- **Never excessively recline the front passenger seatback.**



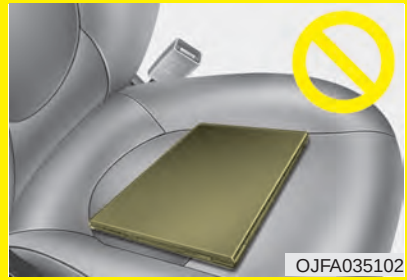

- **Never place feet on the dashboard.**




- **Do not use car seat accessories such as thick blankets and cushions which cover up the car seat surface.**




- **Never lean on the door or center console.**
- **Never sit on one side of the front passenger seat.**

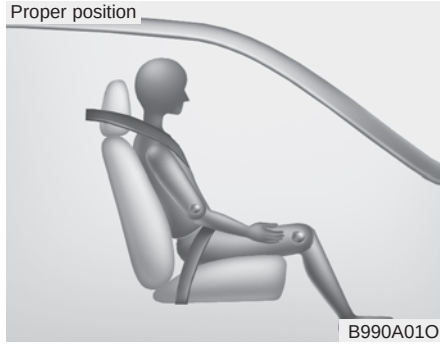



- **Do not place electronic devices such as laptops, DVD player, or conductive materials such as water bottles on the passenger seat.**

**Do not use electronic devices such as laptops and satellite radios which use inverter chargers.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**- Wet Passenger Seat**

**Do not spill liquid in the passenger seat. Spilled liquid on the passenger seat may cause the air bag warning light to illuminate or malfunction. If any liquid is spilled, make sure the seat has been completely dried before driving the vehicle.**




When an adult is seated in the front passenger seat, if the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator is on, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and ask the passenger to sit properly (sitting upright with the seat back in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor). Restart the engine and have the person remain in that position. This will allow the system to detect the person and to enable the passenger air bag.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator is still on, ask the passenger to move to the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING - "AIR BAG OFF" light**

**Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a crash. The driver must instruct the passenger to reposition himself in the seat. Failure to properly position yourself may lead to air bag deactivation resulting in air bag non-deployment in a collision. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator remains illuminated after the passenger repositions themselves properly and the car is restarted, it is recommended that passenger move to the rear seat because the passenger's front air bag will not deploy.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or after the engine is started. If the front passenger seat is occupied, the occupant detection sensor will then classify the front passenger after several more seconds.**

- Even though your vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system, never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A deploying air bag can forcefully strike a child resulting in serious injuries or death. Any child age 12 and under should ride in the rear seat. Children too large for child restraints should use the available lap/shoulder belts. No matter what type of crash, children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator is illuminated when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), have that person sit in the rear seat.

Any child age 12 and under should ride in the rear seat. Children too large for child restraints should use the available lap/shoulder belts. No matter what type of crash, children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat.

If the occupant detection system is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate because the passenger's front air bag is connected with the occupant detection system. If there is a malfunction of the occupant detection system, the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator will not illuminate and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if there is no occupant in the front passenger's seat.

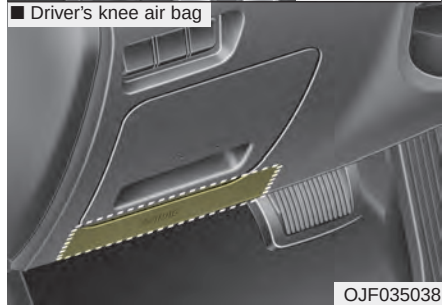
## Driver's and passenger's front air bag

■ Driver’s front air bag




OJFA038110MX

■ Driver’s knee air bag



OJF035038

■ Passenger’s front air bag




OJF035039

Your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating position.

The indication of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" located on the air bag pad cover on the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity. The SRS uses sensors to gather information about the driver's and front passenger's seat belt usage and impact severity.

The seat belt buckle sensors determine if the driver and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

These sensors provide the ability to control the SRS deployment based on whether or not the seat belts are fastened, and how severe the impact is.

The advanced SRS offers the ability to control the air bag inflation with two levels. A first stage level is provided for moderate-severity impacts. A second stage level is provided for more severe impacts.

The passenger’s front air bag is designed to help reduce the injury of children sitting close to the instrument panel in low speed collisions. However, children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

According to the impact severity and seat belt usage, the SRSCM (SRS Control Module) controls the air bag inflation. Failure to properly wear seat belts can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident.

Additionally, your vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system in the front passenger's seat. The occupant detection system detects the presence of a passenger in the front passenger's seat and will turn off the front passenger's air bag under certain conditions. For more detail, see "Occupant detection system" in this chapter.

Modification to the seat structure can cause the air bag to deploy at a different level than should be provided.

Manufacturers are required by government regulations to provide a contact point concerning modifications to the vehicle for persons with disabilities, which modifications may affect the vehicle's advanced air bag system. That contact is Kia's toll-free Customer Assistance center at 1-800-333-4Kia. However, Kia does not endorse nor will it support any changes to any part or structure of the vehicle that could affect the advanced air bag system, including the occupant detection system.

**⚠ WARNING - Replacement / modifications**

**The front passenger seat, dashboard or door should not be replaced except by an authorized Kia dealer using original Kia parts designed for this vehicle and model. Any other such replacement or modification could adversely affect the operation of the occupant detection system and your advanced air bags.**

Advanced air bags are combined with pre-tensioner seat belts to help provide enhanced occupant protection in frontal crashes. Front air bags are not intended to deploy in collisions in which sufficient protection can be provided by the pre-tensioner seat belt.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Air bags can only be used once – have an authorized Kia dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment.**

Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. However, when frontal deployment threshold is satisfied at side-impact, front air bags may deploy. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.

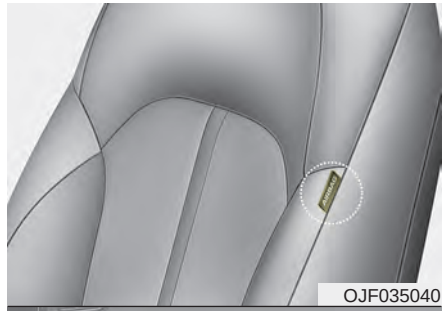
**⚠ WARNING - SRS Wiring**

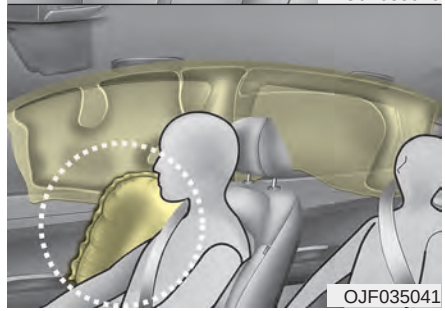
**Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**

**⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects**

**No objects (such as crash pad cover, cellular phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy. Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**

## Side air bag




❉ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

- The side air bags are designed to deploy during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy.
- The side air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both sides.
- The side and/or curtain air bags on both sides of the vehicle will deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.
- The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

**⚠ WARNING - Unexpected deployment**

**Avoid impact to the side impact airbag sensor when the ignition switch is ON to prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag.**

- The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in operation.
- For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.

**⚠ WARNING - Deployment**

**Do not install any accessories including seat covers, on the side or near the side air bag as this may affect the deployment of the side air bags.**

- If seat or seat cover is damaged, have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer. Inform the dealer that your vehicle is equipped with side air bags and an occupant detection system.

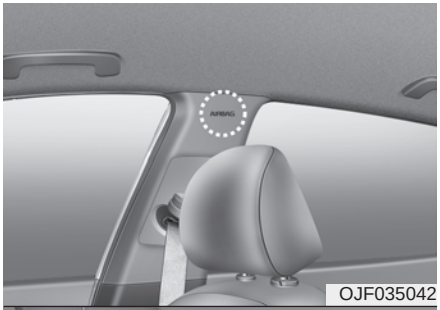
**⚠ WARNING - Flying objects**

**Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles if the side airbag inflates.**

**⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects**

- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.**
- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Never place or insert any object into any small opening near side airbag labels attached to the vehicle seats. When the air bag deploys, the object may affect the deployment and result in unexpected accident or bodily harm.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**

## Curtain air bag




❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect occupants in certain side impacts and to help prevent them from ejecting out of the vehicle as a result of a rollover, especially when the seatbelts are also in use.

- The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy.
- The curtain air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both sides.
- Also, the curtain air bags on both sides of the vehicle will deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies against the doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side impact and/or curtain air bags.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never try to open or repair any components of the side and curtain air bag system. This should only be done by an authorized Kia dealer.**

**⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects**

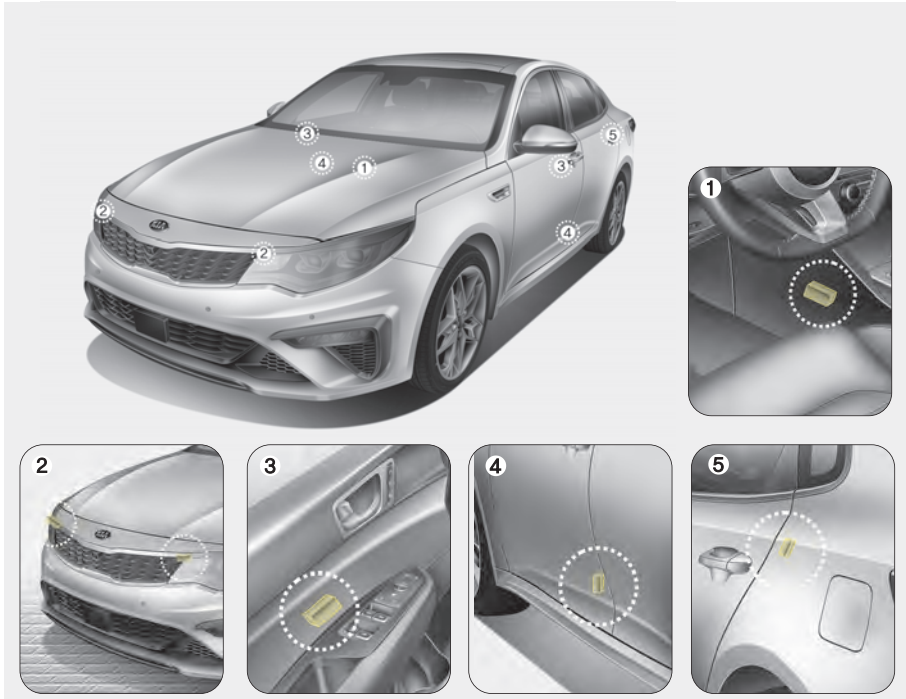
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.**
- **Do not hang hard or breakable objects on the coat hook.**
- **Do not hang heavy items on the coat hooks for safety reasons.**

**Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)**

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

***Air bag collision sensors***




OJF038045/OJF038064/OJF038047/OJF035048/OJF035049/OJF038084

(1) SRS control module/ Rollover sensor
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor
(4) Side impact sensor
(5) Side impact sensor

**⚠ WARNING - Air bag sensors**

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**

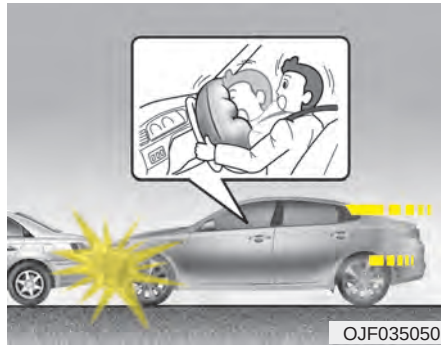
  **This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should.**

  **Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.**

Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, front end module, body or front doors where side collision sensors are installed. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer.

Installing bumper guards (or side step or running board) or replacing a bumper (or front door module) with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicle's collision and air bag deployment performance.

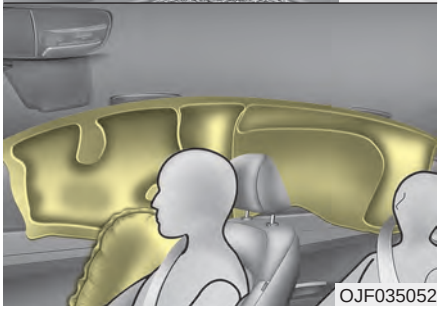
### *Air bag inflation conditions*




**Front air bags**

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.




❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

**Side and/or curtain air bags**

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient frontal force in another type of impact. Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions. They may inflate in other types of collisions where a side force is detected by the sensors. Side air bag and/or curtain air bags may also inflate where rollover sensors indicate the possibility of a rollover occurring (even if none actually occurs) or in other situations, including when the vehicle is tilted while being towed.

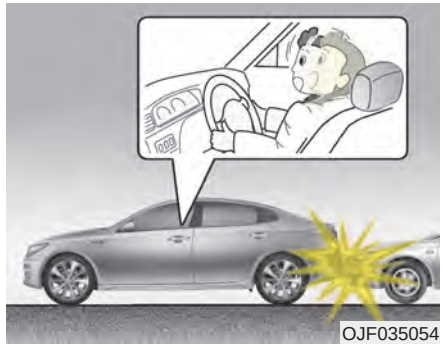
Even where side and/or curtain air bags would not provide impact protection in a rollover, however, they will deploy to prevent ejection of occupants, especially those who are restrained with seat belts.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

### *Air bag non-inflation conditions*



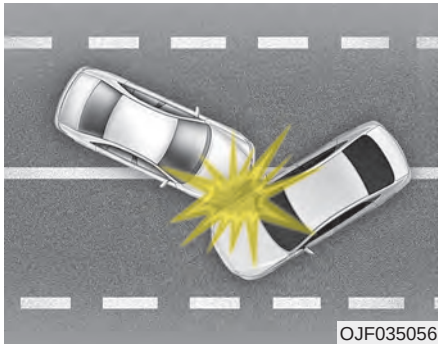

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.




- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



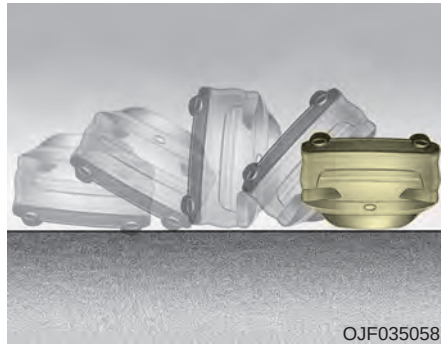

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.


OJF035056

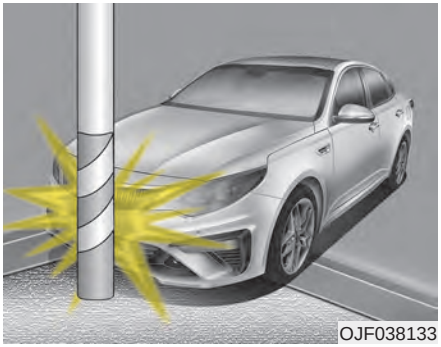
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.


OJF035057

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.


OJF035058

- Front air bags may not inflate in all rollover accidents where the SRSCM indicates that the front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.




- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

## SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

Any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails must be performed by an authorized Kia dealer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.

If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Tampering with SRS**

**Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in the accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**

**⚠ WARNING - Towing Vehicle**

**Always have the ignition off when your vehicle is being towed. The side air bags may inflate if the vehicle is tilted such as when being towed because of the rollover sensors in the vehicle.**

## Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

## Air bag warning label




Air bag warning labels, some required by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), are attached to the sunvisor to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Folding key . . . . . 4-5
- Record your key number . . . . . 4-5
- Key operations . . . . . 4-5
- Transmitter precautions . . . . . 4-7
- Battery replacement . . . . . 4-8
- Immobilizer system . . . . . 4-9

Smart key . . . . . 4-11
- Record your key number . . . . . 4-11
- Smart key function . . . . . 4-11
- Loss of the smart key . . . . . 4-14
- Smart key precautions . . . . . 4-14
- Battery replacement . . . . . 4-15
- Smart key immobilizer system . . . . . 4-15

Theft-alarm system . . . . . 4-17
- Armed stage . . . . . 4-17
- Theft-alarm stage . . . . . 4-18
- Disarmed stage . . . . . 4-18

Door locks . . . . . 4-20
- Operating door locks from outside the vehicle . . . . . 4-20
- Operating door locks from inside the vehicle . . . . . 4-21
- Impact sensing door unlock system . . . . . 4-23
- Child-protector rear door lock . . . . . 4-24

Trunk . . . . . 4-25
- Opening the trunk . . . . . 4-25
- Closing the trunk . . . . . 4-26
- Emergency trunk safety release . . . . . 4-26

Smart trunk . . . . . 4-27

Windows . . . . . 4-31
- Power windows . . . . . 4-32

Hood . . . . . 4-36
- Opening the hood . . . . . 4-36
- Hood open warning . . . . . 4-36
- Closing the hood . . . . . 4-37

Fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-38
- Opening the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-38
- Closing the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-38
- Emergency fuel filler lid release . . . . . 4-41

Panoramic sunroof . . . . . 4-42
- Sunroof open warning . . . . . 4-43
- Sunshade . . . . . 4-44
- Sliding the sunroof . . . . . 4-45
- Tilting the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
- Closing the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
- Resetting the sunroof . . . . . 4-47

Steering wheel . . . . . 4-49
• Electric Power Steering (EPS) . . . . . 4-49
• Tilt and telescopic steering . . . . . 4-50
• Heated steering wheel . . . . . 4-51
• Horn . . . . . 4-52
Mirrors . . . . . 4-53
• Inside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-53
• Outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-55
Instrument cluster . . . . . 4-59
• Instrument cluster control . . . . . 4-60
• LCD display control . . . . . 4-60
• Gauges . . . . . 4-61
• Transmission shift indicator . . . . . 4-64
LCD display . . . . . 4-65
• LCD modes . . . . . 4-65
• User settings mode . . . . . 4-68
Trip modes (Trip computer) . . . . . 4-74
• Trip modes . . . . . 4-74
• Fuel economy . . . . . 4-75
• Warning messages . . . . . 4-78
Warning and indicator lights . . . . . 4-85
• Warning lights . . . . . 4-85
• Indicator lights . . . . . 4-93
Parking distance warning-reverse . . . . . 4-98
• Operation of the parking distance warning-reverse . 4-98
• Non-operational conditions of parking distance warning-reverse . . . . . 4-99
• Parking distance warning-reverse precautions . . . 4-100
• Self-diagnosis . . . . . 4-100
Rear view monitor . . . . . 4-101
Surround view monitoring system (SVM) . . . . . 4-102
Lighting . . . . . 4-103
• Battery saver function . . . . . 4-103
• Daytime running light . . . . . 4-103
• Lighting control . . . . . 4-103
• High beam operation . . . . . 4-105
• High beam assist . . . . . 4-106
• Turn signals and lane change signals . . . . . 4-109
• Check headlight . . . . . 4-110
• Front fog light . . . . . 4-110
• Headlight leveling device . . . . . 4-111
• Dynamic Bending Light (DBL) . . . . . 4-111
Wipers and washers . . . . . 4-113
• Windshield wiper/washer . . . . . 4-113
• Windshield wipers . . . . . 4-113
• Front windshield washers . . . . . 4-114

**Interior lights . . . . . 4-116**
- Automatic turn off function . . . . . 4-116
- Room lamp . . . . . 4-116
- Map lamp . . . . . 4-117
- Trunk room lamp. . . . . 4-118
- Vanity mirror lamp . . . . . 4-118
- Glove box lamp . . . . . 4-118

**Welcome system . . . . . 4-119**
- Headlight (Headlamp) escort function . . . . . 4-119
- Interior light. . . . . 4-119
- Pocket lamp . . . . . 4-119

**Defroster . . . . . 4-120**
- Rear window defroster . . . . . 4-120

**Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-121**
- Heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-122
- System operation . . . . . 4-127
- Climate control air filter. . . . . 4-129
- Air conditioning refrigerant label . . . . . 4-129
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant. . . . . 4-130

**Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-131**
- Automatic heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-132
- Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-133
- System operation . . . . . 4-139
- Climate control air filter. . . . . 4-141
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant. . . . . 4-141
- Air conditioning refrigerant label . . . . . 4-142

**Windshield defrosting and defogging. . . . . 4-143**
- Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-143
- Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-144
- Defogging logic. . . . . 4-145

**Storage compartments . . . . . 4-148**
- Center console storage . . . . . 4-148
- Glove box . . . . . 4-148
- Sunglass holder . . . . . 4-149

**Interior features . . . . . 4-150**
- Cup holder . . . . . 4-150
- Bottle holder. . . . . 4-150
- Seat warmer . . . . . 4-151
- Air ventilation seat . . . . . 4-152
- Sunvisor . . . . . 4-152
- Power outlet . . . . . 4-153
- USB charger. . . . . 4-154
- Coat hook . . . . . 4-155
- Floor mat anchor (s) . . . . . 4-155
- Side curtain . . . . . 4-156

**Audio system** . . . . . 4-157
- **Antenna** . . . . . 4-157
- **How vehicle radio works** . . . . . 4-158

**Declaration of Conformity** . . . . . 4-161
- **FCC** . . . . . 4-161

4

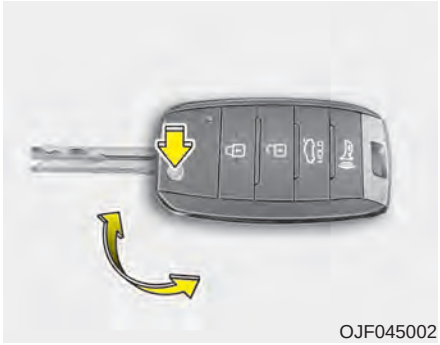
## FOLDING KEY

### Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, this number will enable an authorized Kia dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place.(not in the vehicle)

### Key operations



OJF045002

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically. To fold the key, fold the key manually while pressing the release button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.***

**⚠ WARNING - Aftermarket key**

**Use only Kia original parts for the ignition key in your vehicle. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.**

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (smart key)**

**Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with a manual ignition key or a smart key is dangerous. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the start button. The key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or death.**

### *Door Lock (1)*



OYDDCO2003

1. Close all doors, engine hood and trunk.
2. Press the lock button(1).
3. All doors and trunk will lock. The hazard warning lights will blink once.
4. If the lock button is pressed once more within 4 seconds, the hazard warning lights will blink and the horn will sound once.
5. Make sure that doors are locked by checking the door lock button inside or pulling the outside door handle.

### *Door Unlock (2)*

1. Press the unlock button(2).
2. The driver's door will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.
3. Press the unlock button(2) twice within 4 seconds and all doors and trunk will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.

### ✻ NOTICE

**You can activate or deactivate the Two Press Unlock function. Refer to "User settings" in this chapter.**

***Trunk open (3)***

The trunk is opened if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.

***Panic (4)***

The horn sounds and hazard warning lights flash for about 27 seconds if this button is pressed for more than 0.5 second. To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the transmitter.

## Transmitter precautions

- The transmitter will not work if any of following occur:
  - The ignition key is in the ignition switch.
  - You exceed the operating distance limit (about 30 feet [10 m]).
  - The battery in the transmitter is weak.
  - Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
  - The weather is extremely cold.
  - The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio substation or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phones normal operational signals. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the transmitter and your mobile phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and always try to maintain an adequate distance between the two devices.

**⚠ CAUTION - Transmitter**

***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid as, it can become damaged and not function properly.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.**

### Battery replacement




OYDDCO2005

The transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter center cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery is positioned correctly.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For replacement transmitters, see an authorized Kia dealer for transmitter reprogramming.

- The transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use; however, it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.
- To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.
-  An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and may cause harm to human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

**⚠ CAUTION - Transmitter damage**

***Do not drop, wet or expose the keyless entry system transmitter to heat or sunlight.***

## Immobilizer system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON or whenever the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, it checks and verifies if the ignition key is valid.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To activate the immobilizer system:***

Turn the ignition key or change the engine start/stop button from the ON position to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobilizer system:***

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position or change the engine start/stop button to the ON position.

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your Immobilizer password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

**When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise, the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfunction.**

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.

Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you need additional keys or lose your keys, contact an authorized Kia dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION - Immobilizer damage

***Do not expose your immobilizer system to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. This may damage your immobilizer.***

### ⚠ CAUTION - Adjusting alarm system

***Do not change, alter or adjust the theft alarm system in your vehicle. Improper installation of the alarm system could damage the vehicle or cause the system to malfunction.***

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.**

# SMART KEY

## Record your key number



The key code number is stamped on the bar code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, this number will enable an authorized Kia dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the bar code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

## Smart key function




To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button(1) and remove the mechanical key (2).

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and trunk) and start the engine.

Refer to the following for more details.

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (smart key)**

**Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with a manual ignition key or a smart key is dangerous. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the start button. The key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or death.**

### *Locking*




OYDDCO2004



OJF045003

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and trunk) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and trunk).

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and trunk) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 28 ~ 40 in (0.7 ~ 1 m) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the trunk is opened.

### *Unlocking*

Pressing the button of the driver's (or front passenger's) outside door handle with all doors closed and locked, unlocks the driver's door.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the driver's door is unlocked. Also, the outside rearview mirrors will automatically unfold if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 28 ~ 40 in. (0.7 ~ 1 m) from the outside door handle.

When Two press unlock function is activated,

- If you press the driver's outside door handle button, the driver's door will unlock.
- If you press the driver's outside door handle button within four seconds again, then all the doors will unlock.

### ✻ NOTICE

**You can activate or deactivate the Two Press Unlock function. Refer to "User settings" in this chapter.**

***Trunk unlocking***

If you are within 28 ~ 40 in (0.7 ~ 1 m) from the outside trunk handle, with your smart key in possession, the trunk will unlock and open when you press the trunk handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the trunk is unlocked.

Also, once the trunk is opened and then closed, the trunk will lock automatically.

***Panic***

1. Press the panic button (4) for more than 1 second.
2. The horn sounds and hazard warning light flash for about 27 seconds.

### ✻ NOTICE

**To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the smart key.**

***Start-up***

You can start the engine without inserting the key.

❉ For detailed information refer to the "Engine start/stop button" in chapter 5.

### Loss of the smart key

A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle.

If you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. You should immediately take the vehicle and remaining key to your authorized Kia dealer (tow the vehicle, if necessary) to protect it from potential theft.

### Smart key precautions

- The smart key will not work if any of the following occur:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a cellular phone.
  - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- If the smart key does not work correctly, you may lock and unlock the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making a call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

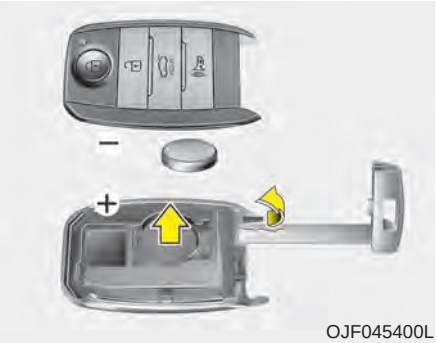
**⚠ CAUTION - Transmitter**

***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid, as it can become damaged and not function properly.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.**

## Battery replacement




A smart key battery should last for several years, but if the smart key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one. If you are unsure how to use your smart key or replace the battery, contact an authorized Kia dealer.

1. Remove the mechanical key.
2. Pry open the rear cover.
3. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery is in the correct position.
4. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

- The smart key is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, contact an authorized Kia dealer.
- Using the wrong battery can cause the smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.
- To avoid damaging the smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.
-  An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

**⚠ CAUTION - Smart key damage**

***Do not drop, get wet or expose the smart key to heat or sunlight, or it will be damaged.***

## Smart key immobilizer system

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the smart key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you turn the engine start/stop button to the ON position by pressing the button while carrying the smart key, it verifies if the smart key is valid. If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobilizer system:***

Turn the engine start/stop button to the ON position by pressing the button while carrying the smart key.

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.

***To activate the immobilizer system:***

Turn the engine start/stop button to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

### ✻ NOTICE

**When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfunction.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you need additional keys or lose your keys, contact an authorized Kia dealer.**

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.**

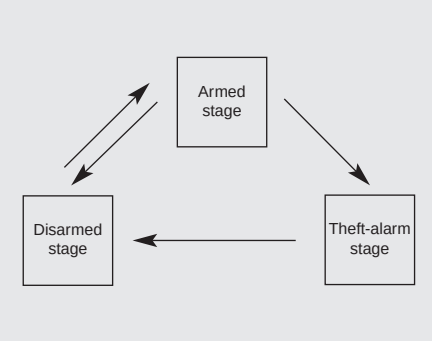
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.**

## THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM




This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the vehicle. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

### Armed stage

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch and exit the vehicle.
2. Make sure that all doors (and trunk) and engine hood are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors using the transmitter of the keyless entry system (or smart key) or ignition key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink (for smart key, the chime also sounds) once to indicate that the system is armed.

If any door (or trunk) or engine hood remains open, the hazard warning lights and the chime will not operate and the theft-alarm will not arm. If all doors and trunk and engine hood are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

The system can also be armed by locking the doors with the key from the front doors; however, the hazard warning lights will not blink using this method.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The theft-alarm system can be deactivated by an authorized Kia dealer. If you want this feature, consult an authorized Kia dealer.**

**Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed while a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door (or trunk) or engine hood is opened within 30 seconds after the system enters the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent an unnecessary alarm.**

### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs while the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using the ignition key or transmitter (or smart key).
- The trunk is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine hood is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 27 seconds, and repeat the horn 3 times unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the ignition key or transmitter (or smart key).

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when

- The doors (and trunk) are unlocked with the transmitter (or smart key) or the ignition key.

After depressing the unlock button, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound twice (in smart key) to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After depressing the unlock button, if any door (or trunk) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Avoid trying to start the engine while the alarm is activated. The vehicle starting motor is disabled during the theft-alarm stage.**
  - **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then, the system will be disarmed.**
  - **If the system is not disarmed with the smart key, press the engine start/stop button with the smart key. The side with the lock button should contact the engine start/stop button directly.**
- **If you lose your keys, consult your authorized Kia dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION - Adjusting alarm system

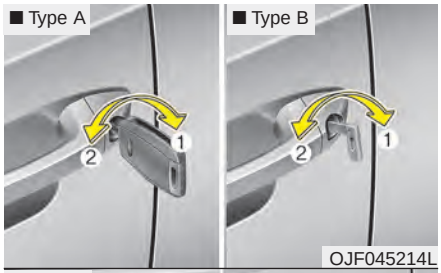
***Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and should only be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.***

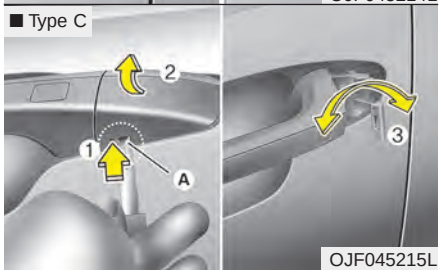
### ✻ NOTICE

**Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.**

## DOOR LOCKS

### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle




To remove the cover (For Type C):

1. Pull out the door handle.
2. Press the lever (3) located inside the bottom part of the cover with a key or flat-head screwdriver.
3. Push out the cover while pressing the lever.

- Turn the key clockwise to lock (1) and counterclockwise to unlock (2).
- If you lock the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock automatically.
- From the driver's door, turn the key to the right once to unlock the door and once more within 4 seconds to unlock all doors.
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

### ✻ NOTICE

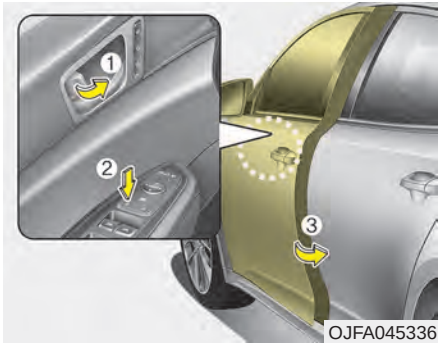
- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not open and close the door repeatedly if unnecessary or with excessive force. Such action can damage the vehicle door.***



OJFA045336

- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) or central door lock switch (2) to the “Lock” position when the ignition switch is in the OFF position and close the door (3).
- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch (2), all vehicle doors will lock automatically.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows, and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

***With the door lock button***



OJF045004

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark on the door lock button will not be visible.

- To open a door, pull the door handle (2) outward.
- If the inner door handle of the driver's (or front passenger's) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open.
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and a door is open.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not pull the inner door handle while the vehicle is moving.**

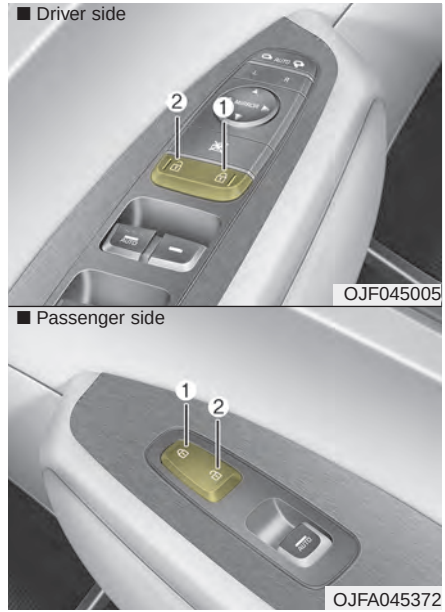
If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.
- Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not pull the inner door handle of driver's (or passenger's) door while the vehicle is moving.**

### *With central door lock switch*




Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- When pressing the right portion(1) for driver side or the upper portion(1) for passenger side of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.

- When pressing the left portion(2) for driver side or the lower portion(2) for passenger side of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- If the key is in the ignition switch (or if the smart key is in the vehicle) and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the right portion(1) for driver side or upper portion(1) for passenger side of the central door lock switch is pressed.

**⚠ WARNING - Doors**

**The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended children/animals**

**Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle.**

### Impact sensing door unlock system

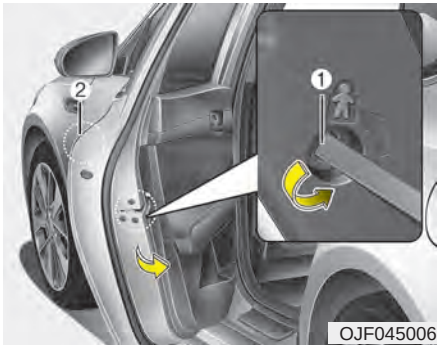
In the event of air bag deployment resulting from a vehicle impact, all doors will automatically unlock.

### ✻ NOTICE

**You can select some auto door lock/unlock features in "User Settings"**

**❋ For more information, refer to "User Settings" in this chapter.**

## Child-protector rear door lock




The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Turn the child safety lock (1) located on the rear edge of the door to the lock ( ) position. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open even when the inner door handle is pulled.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle (2).

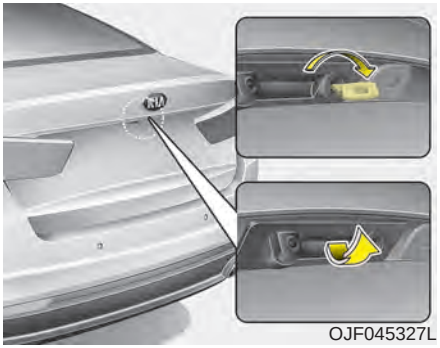
Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle until the rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

**⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks**

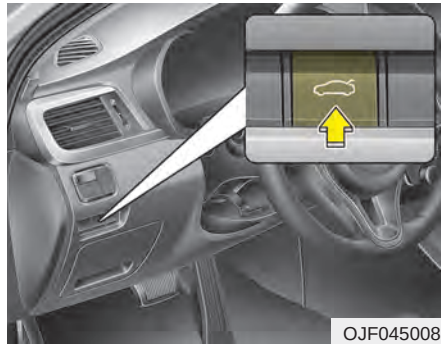
**Use the rear door safety locks whenever children are in the vehicle. If a child accidently opens the rear doors while the vehicle is moving, they may fall out.**

## TRUNK

### Opening the trunk


OJF045327L

1. Make sure the shift lever is in P (Park, for automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission) or first gear and set the parking brake.
2. Then do one of the following :
   - Press the Remote key or Smart Key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the trunk itself with the Smart Key in your possession.
   - Use the mechanical key.


OJF045008

- To open the trunk from inside the vehicle, push the trunk lid release button.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**The trunk swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the trunk.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the trunk lift cylinders and attached hardware if the trunk is not closed prior to driving.***

## Closing the trunk

To close, lower the trunk lid, then press down on it until it locks. To be sure the trunk lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

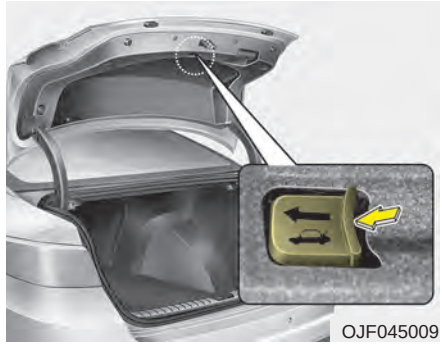
**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust Fumes**

**The trunk lid should always be kept completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car and serious illness or death may result.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the trunk.**

## Emergency trunk safety release



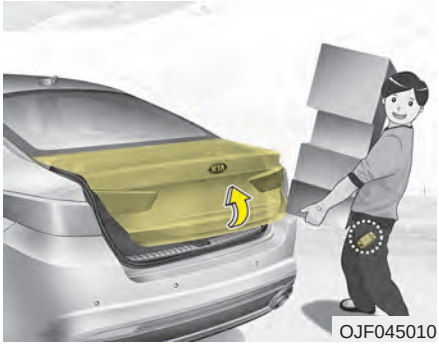
OJF045009

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency trunk release lever located inside the trunk. If someone is inadvertently locked in the trunk, moving the handle in the direction of the arrow will release the trunk latch mechanism and open the trunk.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **No one should be allowed to occupy the trunk at any time. The trunk is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

## SMART TRUNK (IF EQUIPPED)


OJF045010

On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the trunk lock is released with no-touch activation using the Smart Trunk system.

***How to use the Smart Trunk***

The trunk can be opened with no-touch activation if the following conditions are met:

- It has been over 15 seconds since all doors closed and locked
- The smart key is positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

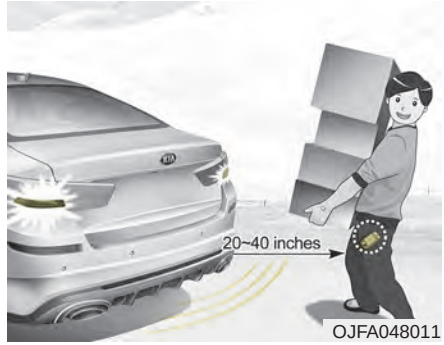
### ✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Trunk does not operate when:**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 60 inches (1.5 m) from the front door handles (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light).**
  - **A door is not locked or closed.**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**

1. Setting

To activate the Smart Trunk, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Trunk on the LCD display.

✻ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.




2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (20 ~ 40 inches (50 ~100 cm) behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the trunk will open.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the trunk to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The trunk will stay closed.**


OJF048012

3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound 2 times and then the trunk lock will be released.

Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle.

Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk before opening or closing the trunk.

Make sure to deactivate the Smart trunk function when washing your vehicle.

Otherwise, the trunk may open inadvertently.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not come out when opening the trunk as this could cause serious injury.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Trunk while playing around the rear area of the vehicle.**

***How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key***



OYDDCO2004

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Trunk open
4. Panic

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Trunk function for emergency situations.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart trunk function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the trunk open button (3) for more than 1 second, the trunk opens.**
- **If you press the door lock button (1) or trunk open button (3) when the Smart Trunk function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the smart trunk function will not be deactivated.**
- **If you have deactivated the Smart Trunk function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart trunk function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

***Detecting area***

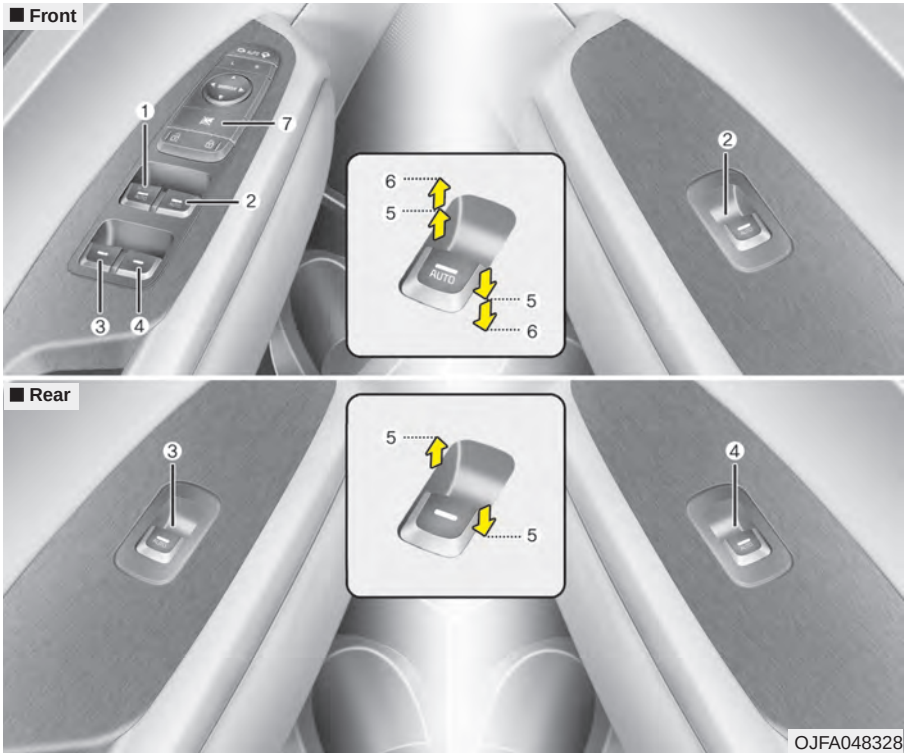



- The Smart Trunk operates a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 20 ~ 40 inches (50 ~ 100 cm) from the trunk.
- The alert stops if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Trunk function will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a cellular phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The detecting range may decrease or increase when :**
  - **One side of the vehicle is raised to replace a tire or to inspect the vehicle.**
  - **The vehicle is parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.**

## WINDOWS




(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing*
(6) Automatic power window up/down* (Driver's and Passenger's window)
(7) Power window lock button

* if equipped

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

## Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or is set to the ACC or LOCK (or OFF) position. If the front doors are opened; however, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

If the window cannot be closed because it is blocked by objects, remove the objects and close the window.

### ✻ NOTICE

**While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open) position, your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.**

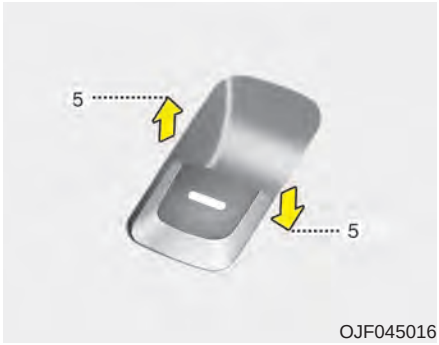
### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not install any accessories in the area of windows. It may impact jam protection.***

### ⚠ WARNING - Power Windows

**Do not extend your face or arms outside of the window opening while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so could result in significant injury.**

### *Window opening and closing*

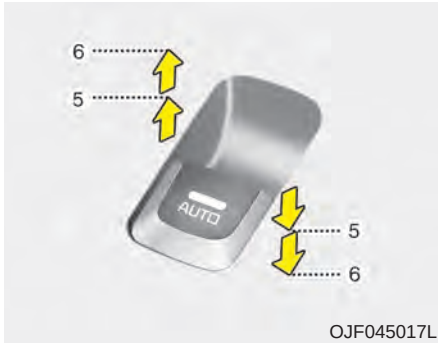



OJF045016

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).

### *Auto up/down window (if equipped)*

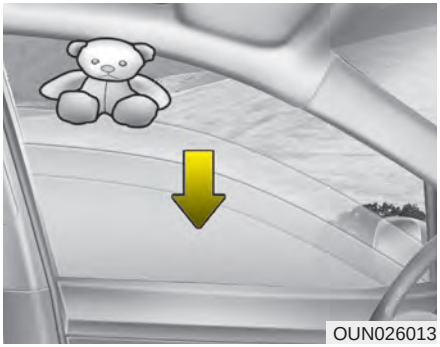



OJF045017L

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the driver's and passenger's window and continue pulling up the driver's power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.




**Automatic reversal (for Auto up/down window)**

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 11.8 in. (30 cm) to allow the object to be cleared.

The distance may vary based on the size or position of the window. If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 1 in. (2.5 cm).

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

The automatic reverse feature for the driver's window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The automatic reverse feature doesn't active while resetting power window system.**

**Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not install any accessories in the vehicle that extend into the open window area. Such objects could prevent the automatic reverse feature from functioning.**

***Power window lock button***




- The driver can disable the power window switches on the passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button located on the driver's door to the LOCK position (pressed).

- **When the power window lock button is pressed :**
  - The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
  - The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
  - The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

**⚠ CAUTION - Opening /closing Window**

***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***

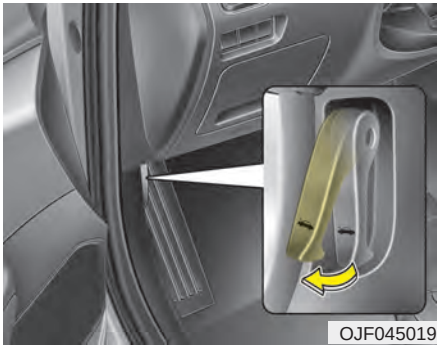
Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.

**⚠ WARNING - Power windows**

**Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the power window lock button (on the driver's door) in the LOCK (pressed) position.**

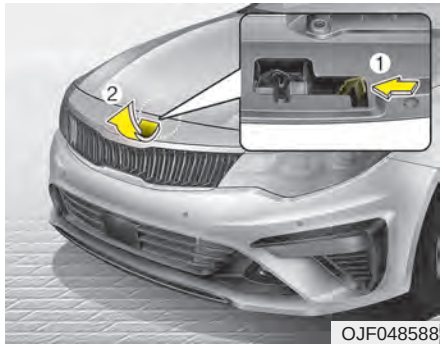
# HOOD

## Opening the hood


OJF045019

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.

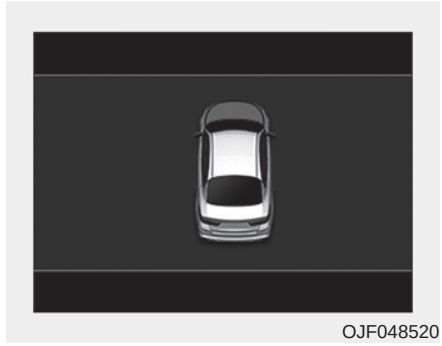
Only open the hood with the vehicle on a flat surface, engine is turned off, shift lever placed in P (Park) position and setting the parking brake.



OJF048588

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, push the secondary latch (1) upward inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2).
3. Raise the hood. It will completely rise by itself after it has been raised about halfway.

## Hood open warning


OJF048520

The hood warning message will appear on the LCD display when hood is open.

The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 2 mph (3 km/h) with the hood open.

## Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the hood until it is about 30 cm above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.
3. Check that the hood has engaged properly. If the hood can be raised slightly, it is not properly engaged.

   Open it again and close it with a little more force.

**⚠ CAUTION - Hood obstruction**

***Before closing the hood, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the hood opening. Closing the hood with an obstruction present in the hood opening may result in property damage.***

**⚠ WARNING - Fire risk**

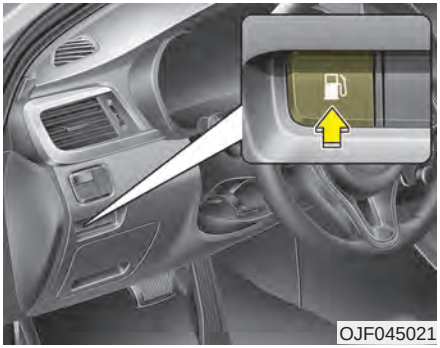
**Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unsecured engine hood**

**Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could fly open while the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**

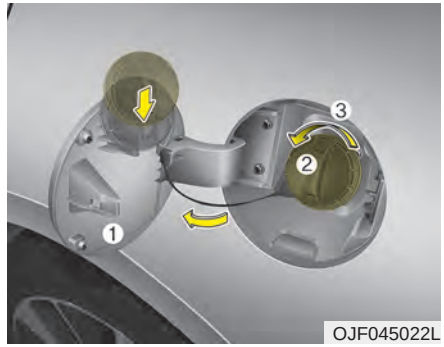
## FUEL FILLER LID

### Opening the fuel filler lid




The fuel filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pressing the fuel filler lid opener button.

If the fuel filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.




1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, push the fuel filler lid opener button.
3. Pull open the fuel filler lid (1).
4. To remove the cap, turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise(3).
5. Refuel as needed.

### Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks” once. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it in lightly making sure that it is securely closed.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**There may be an intermittent noise near the refueling hole while the engine is idling if the fuel cap is not closed securely. This occurs normally with the OBD system.**

#### ✻ NOTICE

**When refueling on unlevel ground, the fuel gauge may not point to the F position.**
**It is not a malfunction. If you move your vehicle to a level ground, the fuel gauge will move to the full position.**

**⚠ WARNING - Refueling**

**Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap. If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and subject you to the risk of fire and burns.**

Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Tighten the cap until it clicks once, otherwise the fuel cap open warning indicator light will illuminate.**

**⚠ WARNING - Fire/explosion risk**

**Read and follow all warnings posted at the gas station facility. Failure to follow all warnings may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death due to fire or explosion.**

**⚠ WARNING - Static electricity**

- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**
- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors resulting in rapid burning. If you must reenter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source.**

**⚠ WARNING - Portable fuel container**

**When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete. Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.**

**⚠ WARNING - Cell phone fires**

**Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**

**⚠ WARNING - Smoking**

**DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station especially during refueling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

**⚠ WARNING - Refueling & Vehicle fires**

**When refueling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**

Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the “Fuel requirements” suggested in chapter 1.

If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine Kia cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.

**⚠ CAUTION - Exterior paint**

***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***

## Emergency fuel filler lid release




If the fuel filler lid does not open using the fuel filler lid opener button, you can open it manually. Remove the panel in the cargo area. Pull the handle out slightly.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not pull the handle excessively, otherwise the luggage area trim or release handle may be damaged.***

## PANORAMIC SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)


OJF045024

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK (or OFF) position.

However, if the front door is opened, the sunroof cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

**⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof motor damage**

***To prevent damage to the sunroof, periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***

In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

**⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof control lever**

***Do not continue to press the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.***

The sunroof cannot slide when it is in the tilt position nor can it be tilted while in an open or slide position.

**⚠ WARNING - Roof cargo**

**Do not operate the sun roof while using the roof rack to transport cargo. This may cause the cargo to come loose and distract the driver.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade while driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.**

**⚠ CAUTION**
***Do not extend any luggage outside the sunroof while driving.***

**⚠ WARNING**
**In order to prevent accidental operation of the sunroof, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the sunroof.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause vehicle damage.**

**⚠ WARNING**
**A panorama sunroof is made of glass, therefore it may break in an accident. If you do not have your seat belt on, you may stick out of the broken glass and get injured or killed. For all passengers safety, have an appropriate protection on (ex. seat belt, CRS, etc.).**

### Sunroof open warning (if equipped)


OJF048535

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for a few seconds and the above message will appear on the LCD display or the warning indicator will illuminate.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Make sure the sunroof is fully closed when leaving your vehicle. If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as allow theft to occur.***

## Sunshade




***To open the sunshade***

Push the sunroof control lever backward to the 1st detent position.

***To close the sunshade when the sunroof glass is closed***

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the 1st detent position.

To stop the sliding at any point, press the sunshade control switch momentarily.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Wrinkles formed on the sunshade as material characteristic are normal.**

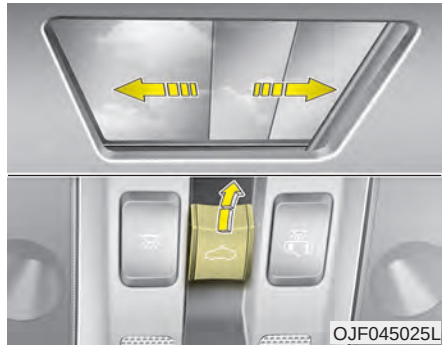
⚠ **CAUTION - Automatic sunroof shade**

- ***Do not pull or push the sunshade by hand as such action may damage the sunshade or cause it to malfunction.***
- ***Close the sunroof when driving in dusty environments. Dust may cause a malfunction of the vehicle system.***

## ✻ NOTICE

**Only the front glass of the panorama sunroof opens and closes.**

## Sliding the sunroof




### *When the sunshade is closed*

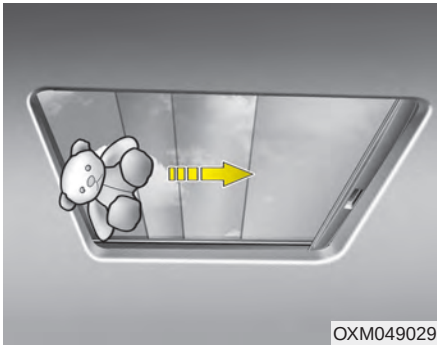
Push the sunroof control lever backward to the 2nd detent position, and both the sunshade and sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control glass lever momentarily.

### *When the sunshade is opened*

Push the sunroof glass control lever backward to the 1st or 2nd detent position, the sunroof glass will be opened.

To stop the sunroof glass movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

***Automatic reversal***




If an object or part of the body is detected while the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function may not work if a tiny obstacle is lodged between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

Objects less than 0.16 inch (4 mm) in diameter caught between the sunroof glass and the front glass channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse glass and the glass will not stop and reverse direction.

**⚠ WARNING - Sunroof**

**Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sunroof Operation**

**When closing the sunroof, make sure there are no body parts in the movement range of the sliding roof. Parts of the body could become trapped or crushed.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the sunroof, periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***

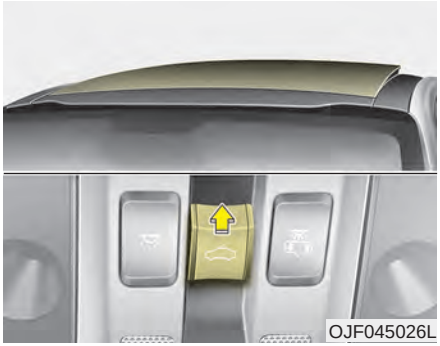
**✻ NOTICE**

**If you drive with the sunroof opened right after a vehicle wash or rain, water may get inside the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Sunroof motor damage**

***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***

## Tilting the sunroof




***When the sunshade is closed***

Push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunshade will slide halfway open then the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

***When the sunshade is opened***

Push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunroof glass will tilt.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

## Closing the sunroof

***To close the sunroof glass with the sunshade***

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the 2nd detent position. The sunroof glass and sunshade will close automatically.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

***To close the sunroof glass only***

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the 1st detent position. The sunroof glass will close automatically.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

## Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Start the engine.
2. Close the sunshade and sunroof completely if opened.
3. Release the sunroof control lever.
4. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunshade slightly moves. Then, release the lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close, until the sunroof operates as follows again:

   Sunshade Open → Glass Tilt Open → Glass Slide Open → Glass Slide Close → Sunshade Close

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset and one touch open and close should be restored.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the Resetting the Sunroof procedure is not correctly followed, the sunroof may not operate properly.**

## STEERING WHEEL

### Electric power steering (EPS)

The power steering uses a motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The electric power steering is controlled by a power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for optimum steering control.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the power steering checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

- When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, noise may occur. If temperature rises, the noise will likely disappear. This is a normal condition.
- When the vehicle is stationary, and the steering wheel is turned all the way to the left or right continuously, the steering wheel becomes harder to turn. The power assist is limited to protect the motor from overheating.

  As time passes, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:**

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering gets heavy immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK (OFF) position.**
- **A motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **If the Electric Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When the charging system warning light comes on due to low voltage (when the alternator or battery do not operate normally or malfunction), the steering wheel may require increased steering effort.**

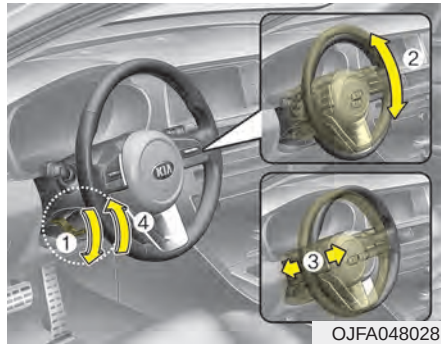
## Tilt and telescopic steering

Tilt and telescopic steering allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, while permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

**⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel adjustment**

**Never adjust the angle and height of the steering wheel while driving. You may lose steering control.**

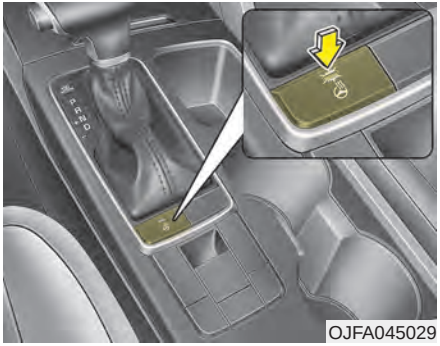



To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock-release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3, if equipped) then pull up the lock-release lever to lock (4) the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

### ✻ NOTICE

**After adjustment, sometimes the lock release lever may not lock the steering wheel. It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears are not engaged correctly. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.**

## Heated steering wheel (if equipped)




With the ignition switch in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the steering wheel becomes too warm, turn the system off. The heated steering wheel may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not install any type of grip cover for the steering wheel, it may impair the function of the heated steering wheel system.***
- ***When cleaning the heated steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the steering wheel.***
- ***If the surface of the steering wheel is damaged by a sharp object, damage to the heated steering wheel components could occur.***

## Horn




To sound the horn, press the horn symbols on your steering wheel. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.**

# MIRRORS

## Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the center view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision through the rear window.

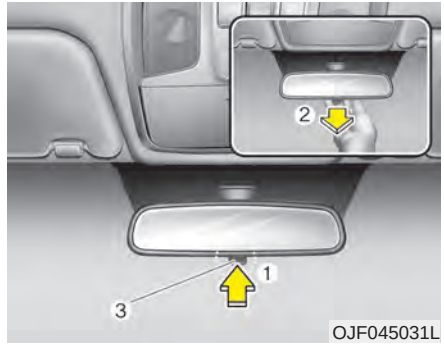
**⚠ WARNING - Mirror adjustment**

**Do not adjust the rearview mirror while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not modify the inside mirror and don't install a wide mirror. It could result in injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag.**

### *Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)*




Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever (3) is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever (3) toward you to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

*Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.*

❈ (1) : Day, (2) : Night

***Electric chromatic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)***

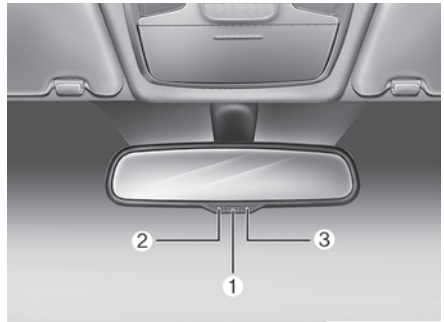
The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION - Cleaning mirror**

***When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. It may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***



OJF045227L

**To operate the electric rearview mirror:**

- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.
- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light (2) will turn off.

  Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light (2) will illuminate.

❈ (2) : Indicator, (3) : Sensor

## Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic vehicle wash or when passing through a narrow street.

The right outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.

**⚠ CAUTION - Rearview mirror**

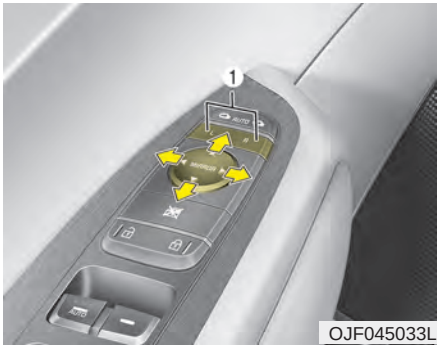
***Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.***

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

**⚠ WARNING - Mirror adjustment**

**Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control.**

### *Adjusting outside rearview mirror*




The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror, press the R or L button (1) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point (▲) on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

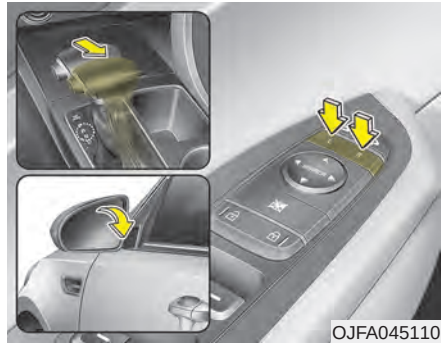
After adjustment, press the R or L button again to prevent the inadvertent adjustment.

**⚠ CAUTION - Outside rearview mirrors**

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed.***

  ***Do not press the switch longer than necessary, as it may damage the motor.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***

### *Reverse parking aid function (if equipped)*




While the vehicle is moving in reverse, the outside rearview mirror(s) will move downward to aid reverse parking. According to the position of the outside rearview mirror switch (1), the outside rearview mirror(s) will operate as follows:

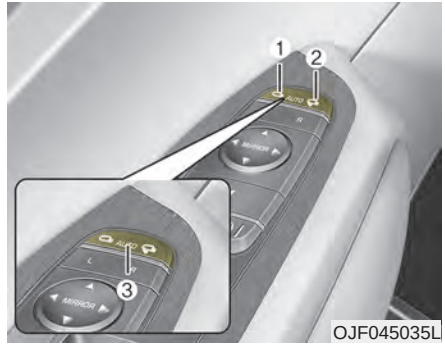
**L/R** : When the remote control outside rearview mirror switch (1) is selected to the L (left) or R (right) position, both outside rearview mirrors will move downward.

**Neutral** : When the remote control outside rearview mirror switch is placed in the middle position, the outside rearview mirrors will not operate while the vehicle is moving rearward.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions under the following conditions:

1. The ignition switch is in the OFF position.
2. Shift lever is moved to any position except R (Reverse).
3. Remote control outside rearview mirror switch is placed in the middle position.

***Folding the outside rearview mirror (if equipped)***




**Electric type**

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch when the ignition switch is ACC or ON position as below.

**Left (1)** : The mirror will unfold.

**Right (2)** : The mirror will fold.

**Center (AUTO, 3)** :

The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

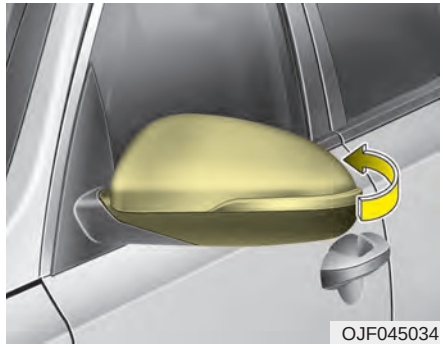
- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the folding key or smart key.
- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
- The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession. (if equipped)

**⚠ CAUTION - Electric type outside rearview mirror**

***Do no fold an electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so could cause motor failure.***

### ✻ NOTICE - Electric type outside rearview mirror

**The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary while the engine is not running. Do not fold an electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. This could cause motor failure.**




**Manual type**

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

# INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**



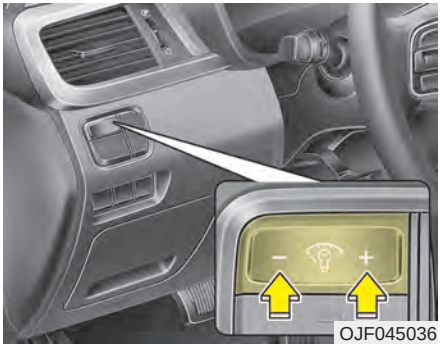

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the "Gauges" in this chapter.

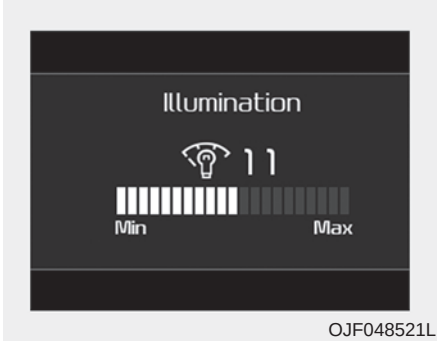
OJFA048100/OJFA048101

## Instrument Cluster Control

### *Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination*



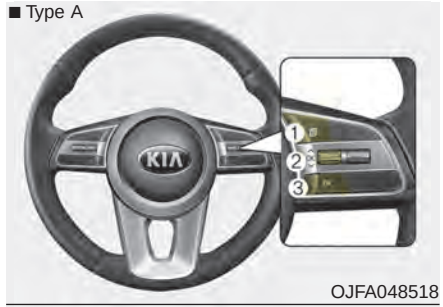

The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is changed by pressing the illumination control button (“+” or “-”) when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON, or the taillights are turned on.




- If you hold the illumination control button (“+” or “-”), the brightness will be changed continuously.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.

## LCD Display Control

■ Type A




■ Type B




The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the steering wheel.

(1) : MODE button for changing the LCD MODES

(2) ∧/∨ : MOVE scroll switch for selecting the items

(3) OK : SET/RESET button for setting the items or resetting the items

✻ For the LCD modes, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.

## Gauges

### *Speedometer*




OJF048543L

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in miles per hour (mph) and/or kilometers per hour (km/h).

### *Tachometer*




OJF045103

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

**⚠ CAUTION - Red zone**

***Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.***

### *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge*




OJF048134L

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON.

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “H” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the Engine Overheats” in chapter 6.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot radiator**

**Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.**

### *Fuel Gauge*




OJFA048135

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 8.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

### ✻ NOTICE - Fuel gauge

**Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger. You must obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "E (Empty)" level.**

### ⚠ CAUTION - Low fuel

***Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**The fuel display may not be accurate if the vehicle is on an incline.**

***Odometer***

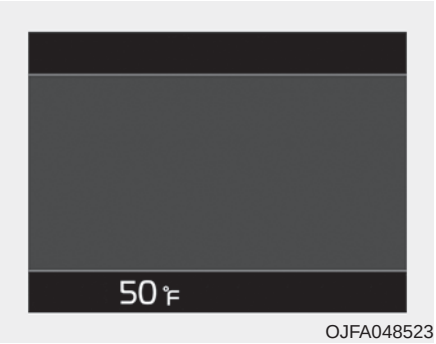



OJFA048522

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 999999 miles or 0 ~ 1599999 km.

### *Outside Temperature Gauge*




OJFA048523

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°F (1°C).

- Temperature range : -40°F ~ 211°F (-40°C ~ 85°C)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being distracted.

The temperature unit can be changed from °C to °F or from °F to °C by using the “User Settings” mode of the LCD display.

❈ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.

## Transmission Shift Indicator

### *Automatic Transmission Shift Indicator (if equipped)*




OJF048524

This indicator displays which automatic transmission shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

### *Dual clutch transmission shift indicator (if equipped)*




OJF048547L

This indicator displays which shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : D1, D2, D3, D4, D5, D6, D7

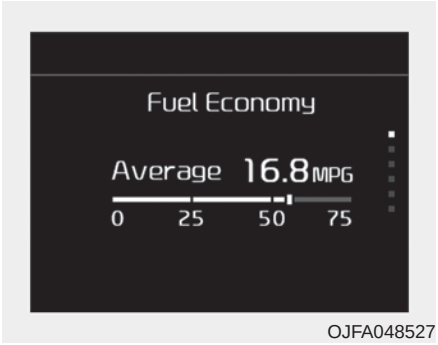
## LCD DISPLAY

### LCD Modes

| Modes | Symbol | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Trip Computer |  | This mode displays driving information such as the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on.<br>❈ For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter |
| Turn by Turn mode (if equipped) |  | This mode displays the state of the navigation. |
| Assist mode (if equipped) |  | This mode displays the state of below systems.<br>- SCC with S&G (Refer to “Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go system” in chapter 5)<br>- Lane Keeping Assist (Refer to “Lane keeping Assist (LKA) system” in chapter 5)<br>- Driving Attention Warning (Refer to “Driving Attention Warning (DAW) system” in chapter 6)<br>- Tire Pressure(Refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 6)<br>❈ For more details, refer to chapter 5 and 6. |
| User Settings |  | On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps and so on. |
| Master warning mode |  | This mode informs of warning messages related to Low tire pressure or malfunction of Blind-spot Collision Warning and so on. |

❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

### *Trip computer mode*

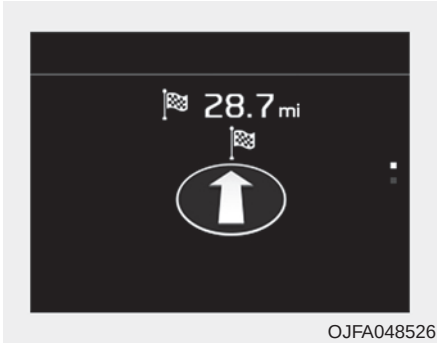



OJFA048527

This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on.

❊ For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.

### *Turn By Turn mode (if equipped)*

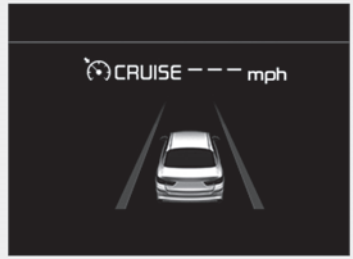



OJFA048526

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

### *Assist mode (if equipped)*

■ SCC with S&G




OJFA048549

■ LKA




OJF048551L

■ DAW




OJF048552L

■ TPMS

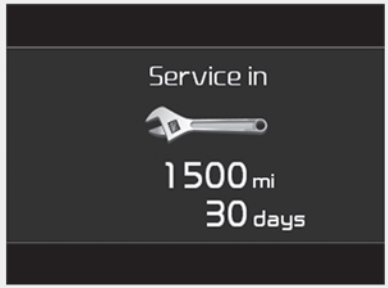



OJF068263L

Assist mode displays the state of below systems.

- SCC with S&G(if equipped)
- Lane keeping Assist(if equipped)
- Driver Attention Warning (if equipped)
- Tire Pressure (if equipped)

***Service mode***




OJFA048529

When Service Required is set, the remaining distance/time before service is required appears on the LCD screen.

From the point at which the remaining distance to drive amounts to 900 mi (1,500 km) or the remaining time amounts to 3 days, The Service Required message automatically displays and remains on the LCD screen for a number of seconds every time the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button is ON.

When Service Required is set a Service Required Alarm message pops up when an aggregated amount of miles/time driven reaches a certain point.

With Service Required mode, press OK button for more than 1 sec. The values will return to initial setting values.

❈For more details about Service Required Setting refer to user Settings Mode in this chapter.

❈Service Required Setting

In the event of Battery Cable Disconnection or Fuse Switch turned OFF, the Service Required Setting values (an amount of miles/time driven) may change. In such cases, re-enter Service Required Setting values.

### *Master warning mode (if equipped)*

- This warning light informs the driver of the following situations

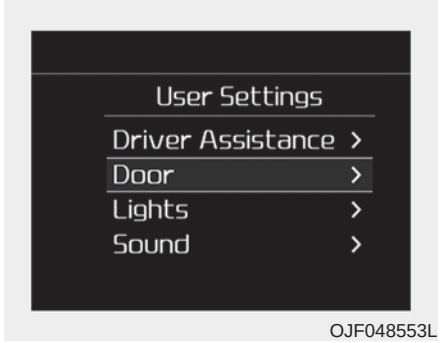
- LED head lamp malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go radar blind (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning radar blind (if equipped)
- Lamp malfunction
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction (if equipped)
- Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) malfunction (if equipped)

The Master Warning Light illuminates if one or more of the above warning situations occur.

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will be turned off.

## User Settings Mode

### *Description*




OJF048553L

On this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lamps, and so on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the User Setting while driving.**

**You may lose your steering control which could cause an accident and bodily injury.**

***Shift to P to edit settings***




OJF048554L

This warning message appears if you try to adjust the User Settings while driving.

For your safety, change the User Settings after parking the vehicle, applying the parking brake and moving the shift lever to P (Park).

*Driver Assistance (if equipped)*

- SCC Reaction (if equipped) :
  - Choose the sensitivity (fast, normal, slow) of the smart cruise control.

❈For more details, refer to “Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go” in chapter 5.

- Highway Auto Speed(if equipped)
  - If this item is checked, the Highway Auto Speed function will be activated.
- Driver Attention Warning (if equipped) :
  - Choose the alert stage (High sensitivity/Normal sensitivity/Off) of the Driver Attention Warning.

❈For more details, refer to “Driver Attention Warning (DAW)” in chapter 5.

- Lane Safety (if equipped) :
  - Active LKA : To activate the active LKA mode.
  - Standard LKA : To activate the standard LKA mode.
  - Lane Departure Warning : To activate the lane departure warning function.

❈For more details, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System” in chapter 5.

- Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA,if equipped) :
  - To activate or deactivate the FCA system.

❈For more details, refer to “Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA)” in chapter 5.

- Forward Collision Warning (if equipped) :
  - Choose the inital warning alert time of the forward collision warning. (Late/Normal/Early)

❈For more details, refer to “Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA)” in chapter 5.

- Blind-Spot Collision Warning Timing (if equipped) :
  - Choose the initial warning alert time of the blind-spot collision warning timing. (Normal/Late)

❈For more details, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision Warning” in chapter 5.

- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the rear cross-traffic collision Warning function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Blind-spot Collision Warning” in chapter 5.

***Door***

- Automatically Lock :
  - Enable on Speed : All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 9.3 mph (15 km/h).
  - Enable on Shift : All doors will be automatically locked if the transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.
- Automatically Unlock :
  - Disable : The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.
  - Vehicle Off/On key out : All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch or the Engine Start/Stop button is set to the OFF position.
  - On Shift to P : All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transmission shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.
- Two Press Unlock :
  - If this item is checked, the two press unlock will be activated.
- Horn Feedback (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the horn feedback function will be activated.
- Smart Trunk (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the smart trunk function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Smart Trunk” in this chapter.

*Lights*

- One Touch Turn Signal :
  - Off: The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated.
  - 3, 5, 7 Flashes : The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

❈For more details, refer to “Lighting” in this chapter.

- Ambient Light Brightness (if equipped) :
  - To select the brightness of the ambient light. (Level 1 ~ 4)
- Ambient Light Color (if equipped) :
  - To select the color of the ambient light. (White / Orange / Red / Green / Blue / Violet / Link to Driver Mode)
- Headlight Delay :
  - If this item is checked, the head lamp delay function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Lighting” in this chapter.

- Welcome Light(if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the welcome light function will be activated.

*Sound*

- Parking Distance Warning Volume (if equipped) :
  - Adjust the Park Assist System volume. (Level 1 ~ 3)
- Welcome Sound (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the welcome sound function will be activated.

*Convenience*

- Seat Easy Access (if equipped) :
  - Off : The seat easy access function will be deactivated.
  - Normal/Extended : When you turn off the engine, the driver's seat will automatically move rear 3 in. (7.6 cm) (Enhanced) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably.

  If you change the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button from OFF position to the ACC position, the driver's seat will return to the original position.

❈For more details, refer to "Driver Position Memory System" in chapter 3.

- Welcome Mirror/Light (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the welcome mirror/light function will be activated.
- Wiper/Light Display (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the wiper/light display will be activated.
- Gear Position Pop-up (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the gear position pop-up display will be activated.
- Icy Road Warning (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the icy road warning display will be activated.

*Service interval*

- Enable Service Interval :
  - To activate or deactivate the service interval function.
- Adjust Interval :
  - To adjust the interval by mileage and period.
- Reset :
  - To reset the service interval function.

*Other*

- Fuel Economy Reset :
  - If this item checked, the average fuel economy will reset automatically after refueling or after ignition.
- Fuel Economy Unit :
  - Choose the fuel economy unit. (US gallon, UK gallon)
- Temperature Unit :
  - Choose the temperature unit. (°C,°F)
- Tire Pressure Unit (if equipped) :
  - Choose the tire pressure unit. (psi, kPa, bar)

*Language (if equipped)*

Choose the language.

*Reset*

You can reset the menus in the User Settings Mode. All menus in the User Settings Mode are initialized, except language and service interval.

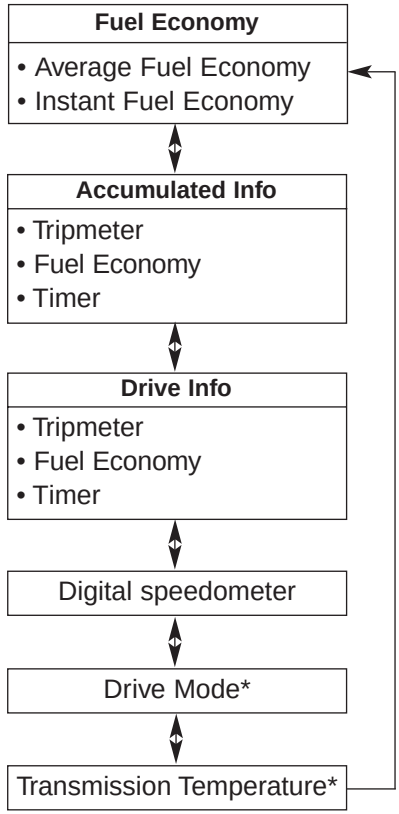
## TRIP MODES (TRIP COMPUTER)

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.**

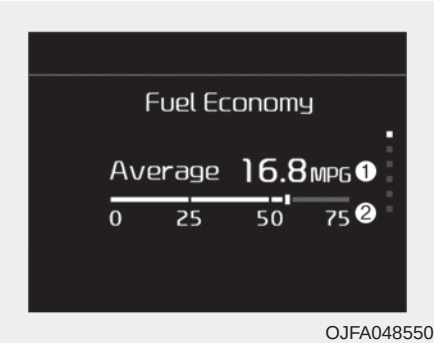
### Trip Modes




* : if equipped

To change the trip mode, scroll the TRIP scroll switch (∧/∨) in the trip computer mode.

## Fuel Economy




OJFA048550

***Average Fuel Economy (1)***

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range : 0 ~ 99.9 MPG or L/100km
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The fuel economy may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

**Manual reset**

To reset average fuel economy manually, press the OK button (reset) on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

**Automatic reset**

To make the average fuel economy reset automatically whenever refueling, select the “Auto Reset” mode in User Setting menu of the LCD display (Refer to “LCD Display”).

- OFF - You may set to default manually by using the trip switch reset button.
- After ignition - The vehicle will automatically set to default once 4 hours pass after the Ignition is in OFF.
- After refueling - After refueling more than 6 liters and driving over 1km/h, the vehicle will reset to default automatically.

## ✻ NOTICE

**For a more accurate calculation of the average fuel economy, the vehicle must be continuously driven more than 10 seconds and 0.03 miles (50 meters).**

***Instant Fuel Economy (2)***

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 5 MPH (8 km/h).
  - Fuel economy range: 0 ~ 50 MPG or 0 ~ 30 L/100km

***Accumulated driving information mode***

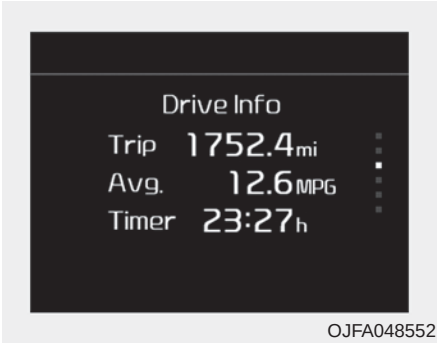



OJFA048551

Displays accumulated information starting from mileage/fuel efficiency/time default point.

- Accumulated information is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters.
- If you press “OK” button for more than 1 second after the Cumulative Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

### *One time driving information mode*

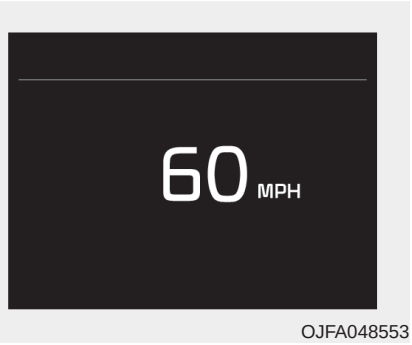



OJFA048552

The vehicle will display Driving Information once per one ignition cycle.

- Fuel efficiency is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters.
- The Driving Information will be reset 4 hours after ignition has been turned off. So, when the vehicle ignition is turned on within 4 hours, the information will not be reset.
- If you press “OK” button for more than 1 second after the Driving Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

### *Digital speedometer*




OJFA048553

This mode displays the current speed of the vehicle.

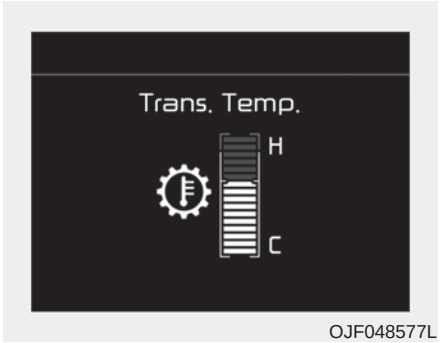
### *Smart Shift (if equipped)*




OJF048558L

This mode displays the currently selected drive mode.

### *Transmission Temperature (for dual clutch transmission, if equipped)*




OJF048577L

This mode displays the temperature of the dual clutch transmission.

## Warning Messages

### *Shift to P position (for smart key system)*

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).

### *Low Key Battery (for smart key system)*

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

***Press start button while turn steering (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button while turning the steering wheel right and left.

***Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

***Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

***Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

***Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

***Key not detected (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.

***Press start button again (for smart key system)***

- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

***Press start button with key (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button while the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

***Check fuse BRAKE SWITCH (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is blown.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

***Shift to P or N to start engine (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

## ✻ NOTICE

**You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position; however; we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position for your safety.**

### *Door / Hood / Trunk Open*

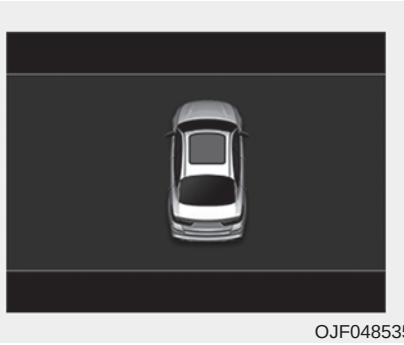


OJF048534

- It means that a door, hood, or trunk is open.
- The hood warning message will appear on the LCD display when hood is open.

  The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 2 mph (3 km/h) with the hood open.

### *Sunroof Open (if equipped)*



OJF048535

- The warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine and then open the driver's door when the sunroof is open.

### *Window Open (if equipped)*



OJF048576L

- This warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine when any window is open.

### *Icy Road Warning (if equipped)*




OJFA048575L

- This warning pop-up message and light are to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the Outside Temperature is below approximately 39°F (4°C),

- The warning light (including Outside Temperature) blinks 5 times and then illuminates.
- The warning pop-up message displays, and the warning chime sounds once at the same time only once for each ignition cycle.

If this item is checked in “User settings”, this function will be activated.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the icy road warning light appears while driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.**

### *Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)*

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

### *Turn on FUSE SWITCH*

- This warning message illuminates if the fuse switch on the fuse box is OFF.
- It means that you should turn the fuse switch on.

❈For more details, refer to “Fuses” in chapter 7.

***Low Fuel***

- This warning message illuminates if the fuel tank is nearly empty.
  - When the low fuel level warning light is illuminated, add fuel as soon as possible.
  - When the trip computer displays "--- mile (or km)" as range.

***Check high beam assist system (if equipped)***

- This warning message illuminates if the high beam assist system has a malfunction. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

***Check headlight***

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burned-out bulb except LED lamp or circuit malfunction) with the headlamp. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When replacing the bulb, use the same wattage bulb.**
  **For more information, refer to "BULB WATTAGE" in chapter 8.**
- **If different wattage bulb is equipped with the vehicle, this warning message is not displayed.**

***Check Forward Collision-avoidance Assist system (if equipped)***

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA) system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

✻For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-avoidance Assist(FCA) system" in chapter 5.

***Battery discharging due to external electrical devices(if equipped)***

- This message is displayed when an excessive current draw is being detected. Be aware that battery discharge may occur if aftermarket accessories are installed (i.e. device charging adapters, vehicle locators, video players, etc.).

  If aftermarket devices are not installed or have been removed and the warning message remains, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

# WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

## Warning lights

### ✻ NOTICE - Warning lights

**Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.**

### *Air bag Warning Light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

  Recommend you have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Seat Belt Warning Light*



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

✻ For more details, refer to the “Seat Belts” in chapter 3.

### *Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light*




**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
- When the parking brake is applied, the warning light will remain on.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

**If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to “Brake Fluid” in chapter 7).

   Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leaks in the brake system are still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.

   In this case, have your vehicle towed to an authorized Kia dealer and inspected.

**Dual-diagonal braking system**

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, greater pedal pressure will be required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will require increased stopping distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminate with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light*




**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS the warning light will remain on. The braking system will be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light*




**These two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving:**

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

**When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking thereby increasing the risk of a crash and injury. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking. Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.**

### ✻ NOTICE - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

**When the ABS Warning Light is on or both the ABS and the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. Recommend to have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.**

### *Electronic Power Steering (EPS) Warning Light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPS.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION - Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)**

***Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control systems which could affect drivability and/or fuel economy.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Catalytic Converter Damage**

***If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.***

***In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.***

### *Charging System Warning Light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

**If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

   If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

   In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

### *Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

**If the engine oil pressure is low:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to “Engine Oil” in chapter 7). If the level is low, add oil as required.

   If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION - Engine damage**

***If the engine is not stopped immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated and stays on while the engine is running, serious engine damage may result.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Engine Overheating**

***Do not continue driving with the engine overheated. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.***

If the warning light stays on while the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case,

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.
3. Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Low Tire Pressure Warning Light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated.

✻For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 6.

**This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeats blinking on and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:**

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

✻For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 6.

**⚠ WARNING - Low tire pressure**

- **Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.**
- **Continued driving on low pressure tires will cause the tires to overheat and fail.**

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

### *Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light (if equipped)*

EPB

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**✻ NOTICE - Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light**

**The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).**

### *Master Warning light (if equipped)*



- This warning light informs the driver of the following situations
  - Blind Spot Detection (BSD) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Forward Collision-avoidance Assist malfunction(if equipped)
  - High Beam Assist(HBA) malfunction (if equipped)
  - Lamp malfunction and so on.

The Master Warning Light illuminates when more than one of the above warning situations occur. At this time, the LCD Modes Icon will change from (⚙) to (⚠).

If the warning situation is resolved, the master warning light will turn off and the LCD Modes Icon will be changed back to its previous icon (⚙).

### *Forward Collision-avoidance Assist Warning light (FCA, if equipped)*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When there is a malfunction with the FCA.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Dynamic Bending Light (DBL) Warning Light (if equipped)*



**This warning light blinks:**

- When there is a malfunction with the Dynamic Bending Light (DBL).

**If there is a malfunction with the Dynamic Bending Light(DBL):**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *LED Headlamp Warning Light (if equipped)*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**This warning light blinks:**

- When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION - LED Headlamp Warning Light**

***Continuous driving with the LED Headlamp Warning Light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp (low beam) life.***

## Indicator Lights

### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**This indicator light blinks:**

While the ESC is operating.

❈For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.

### *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light*




**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

❈For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 5.

### *Immobilizer Indicator Light (Without Smart Key) (if equipped)*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the vehicle detects the immobilizer in your key properly while the ignition switch is ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Immobilizer Indicator Light (With Smart Key) (if equipped)*



**This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:**

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

**This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:**

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.

**This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:**

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON.

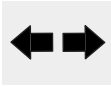
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in chapter 5).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Turn Signal Indicator Light*



**This indicator light blinks:**

- When you turn the turn signal light on.

If any of the following occurs, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

- The indicator light does not blink but illuminates.
- The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
- The indicator light does not illuminate at all.

### *High Beam Indicator Light*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

### *High beam assist indicator (if equipped)*




**This warning light illuminates :**

- When the high-Beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the High beam assist system will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

❈For more details, refer to "High beam assist" in this chapter.

### *Front Fog Indicator Light (if equipped)*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the front fog lights are on.

### *Light ON Indicator Light*



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the tail lights or headlights are on.

### *Cruise Indicator Light (if equipped)*

CRUISE

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the cruise control system is enabled.

❈For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 5.

### *Cruise SET Indicator Light (if equipped)*

SET

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the cruise control speed is set.

❈For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 5.

### *AUTO HOLD Indicator Light (if equipped)*

AUTO HOLD

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- [White] When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD button.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the auto hold system activated.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the auto hold system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

❈For more details, refer to “Auto Hold” in chapter 5.

### *LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) System Indicator (if equipped)*



**This indicator light illuminates :**

- When you turn the lane keeping assistant system on by pressing the LKA button.

  If there is a problem with the system, the yellow LKA indicator will illuminate.

❈For more details, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System” in chapter 5.

**⚠ WARNING - Distracted driving**

**Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.**

### *ECO Indicator Light (if equipped)*




**This indicator light illuminates :**

- When the Active ECO system is activated by pressing the DRIVE mode button.
- The ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.

❈For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

### *SPORT Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)*

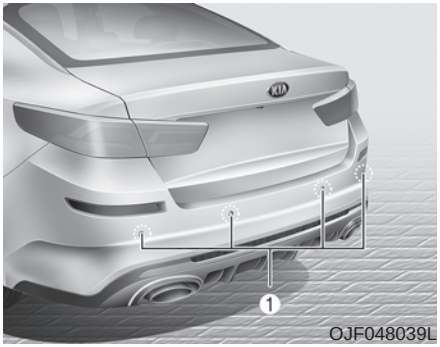



**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When you select “SPORT” mode as drive mode.

❈For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 5.

## PARKING DISTANCE WARNING-REVERSE (IF EQUIPPED)




The parking distance warning-reverse assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 47 in. (120 cm) behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors (①) are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a parking distance warning-reverse.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking distance warning-reverse**

**Never rely solely on the parking distance warning-reverse. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction. Stop immediately if you are aware of a child anywhere near your vehicle. Some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's size or material.**

### Operation of the parking distance warning-reverse

*Operating condition*

- This system will activate when the indicator on the parking distance warning-reverse OFF button is not illuminated. If you desire to deactivate the parking distance warning-reverse, press the parking distance warning-reverse OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 3 mph (5 km/h), the system may not be activated.
- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 3 mph (5 km/h), the system may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance while the back-up warning system is in operation is approximately 47 in. (120 cm) at the rear bumper center area, 23.5 in. (60 cm) at the rear bumper side area.

- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

***Types of warning sound***

- When an object is 47 in. to 24 in. (120 cm to 61 cm) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 24 in. to 12 in. (60 cm to 31 cm) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 16 in. (40 cm) of the rear bumper:

  Buzzer sounds continuously.

## Non-operational conditions of parking distance warning-reverse

**The parking distance warning-reverse may not operate properly when:**

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally once the moisture clears.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing

**The detecting range may decrease when:**

1. The sensor is covered with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

**The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:**

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, sound absorbent material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 40 in. (1 m) in height and narrower than 6 in. (14 cm) in diameter.

### Parking distance warning-reverse precautions

- The parking distance warning-reverse may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The parking distance warning-reverse may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 15 in. (40 cm) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or covered with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the material is removed using a soft cloth.
- To prevent damage, do not push, scratch or strike the sensor.

### ✻ NOTICE

**This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors. It cannot detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.**
**Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.**
**Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.**

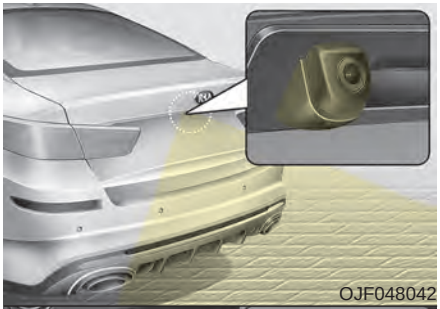
### Self-diagnosis

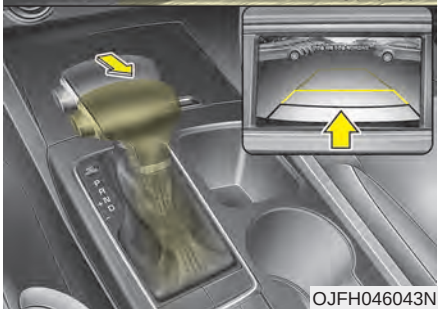
If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the parking distance warning-reverse. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a parking distance warning-reverse malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

## REAR VIEW MONITOR




The rear view monitor will activate with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

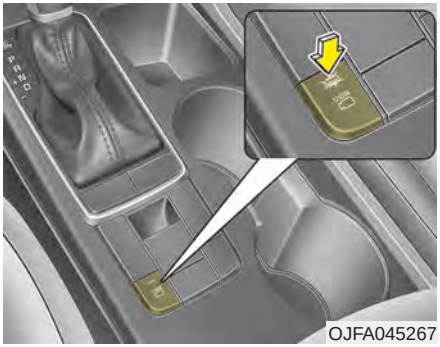
The system is a supplemental system that shows the area behind the vehicle through the audio screen while backing up.

- This system is a supplemental system only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirrors and the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.

**⚠ WARNING - Backing & using camera**

**Never rely solely on the rear view camera. You must always use methods of viewing the area behind you including looking over both shoulders as well as continuously checking all three rear view mirrors. Due to the difficulty of ensuring that the area behind you remains clear, always back-up slowly and stop immediately if you suspect that a person, and especially a child, might be behind you.**

## SURROUND VIEW MONITORING SYSTEM (SVM) (IF EQUIPPED)




The Surround View Monitoring System (SVM) is not a substitute for proper and safe parking procedures. The Surround View Monitoring System (SVM) may not detect every object surrounding the vehicle. Always drive safely and use caution when parking.

The Surround View Monitoring System (SVM) can assist in parking by allowing the driver to see around the vehicle. Push the button into the [ON] position to operate the system.

To cancel the system, push the button again.

Operating conditions

- When the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON position
- When the transaxle is on D, N or R
- When the vehicle speed is not over 9 mph (15 km/h)

- When the vehicle speed is over 9 mph (15 km/h), the SVM system is turned off. If the vehicle speed then decreases below 9 mph (15 km/h), the SVM will not automatically turn on again. To operate again, push the SVM button.
- When the vehicle moves backwards, regardless of On/Off of button and vehicle speed, the SVM operates automatically.
- When the trunk and driver/passenger door are opened and the outside mirror is folded, a warning is illuminated in the SVM system.
- If the SVM system is not operating normally, the system should be checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**This system is a supplemental system only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area around the vehicle before and while moving.**

# LIGHTING

## Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged if the lights are left in the ON position. The system automatically shuts off the parking lights 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened and closed.
- With this feature, the parking lights will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of the road at night and opens the driver's side door.

  If necessary, to keep the parking lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following:

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

## Daytime running light (if equipped)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system turns OFF when:

1. The headlight switch is ON.
2. The engine is OFF.
3. The front fog light is ON.
4. Engaging the parking brake.

## Lighting control




The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position

(2) Auto light position

(3) Parking & Tail light

(4) Headlight position

### *Parking & Tail light ( )*




When the light switch is in the parking light position, the tail, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

### *Headlight position ( )*

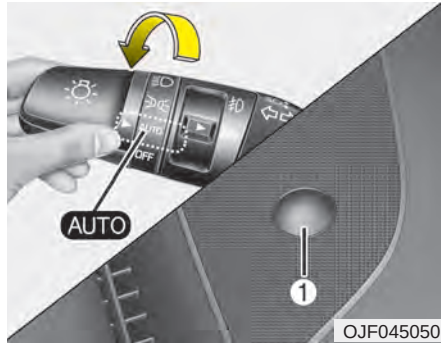



When the light switch is in the headlight position, the head, tail, license lights will turn ON.

**✻ NOTICE**

**The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.**

### *Auto light position*




When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will turn ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel as this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner as the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with the sensor's operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windshield, the Auto light system may not work properly.***

## High beam operation



OJF045054

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

To turn off the high beam headlamps, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.

### ⚠ WARNING - High beams

**Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles in front of your vehicle. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.**




OJF045052

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

## High Beam Assist (if equipped)



OJFA048376N

The High Beam Assist is a system that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) according to the brightness of other vehicles and road conditions.

### *Operating condition*

1. Place the light switch in the AUTO position.
2. Turn on the high beam by pushing the lever away from you.
3. The High Beam Assist ( AUTO ) indicator will illuminate.
4. The High Beam Assist will turn on when vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).
5. The details of operation with the light switch while the High Beam Assist is on are below.
   (1) If the light switch is pushed away, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the high beam will be on.
   (2) If the light switch is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will be on without cancellation of the High Beam Assist. (When you hands off, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.)

(3) If the light switch is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by the High Beam Assist, the low beam will be on and the High Beam Assist will turn off.

(4) If the light switch is turned to the headlamp position ( ) from AUTO position, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the low beam will be on.

When the High Beam Assist is operating, the high beam switches to low beam in the following conditions.

- When the headlamp is detected from the on-coming vehicle.
- When the tail lamp is detected from the front vehicle.
- When headlamp/tail lamp of bicycle/motorcycle is detected.
- When the surrounding is so bright that high beams are not needed.
- When streetlights or other lights are detected.
- When the light switch is not in the AUTO position.
- When the High Beam Assist is off.
- When vehicle speed is below 15 mph (24 km/h).

***Warning light and message***




OJF045194L

When the High Beam Assist System is not working properly, the warning message will come on for a few second. After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

### ⚠ CAUTION

*The High Beam Assist system may not work properly in the following situations:*

- *When the light from on-coming or front vehicle is poor*
  - *When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, hidden from sight, etc.*
  - *When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.*
  - *When the front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps on and etc.*
- *When external condition is intervened*
  - *When there is a similar shape lamp with the front vehicle's lamps.*
  - *When the headlamp is not repaired or replaced at an authorized dealer.*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *When headlamp aiming is not properly adjusted.*
- *When driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, downhill or uphill.*
- *When only part of the vehicle in front is visible on a cross-road or curved road.*
- *When there is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.*
- *When there is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).*
- *When the road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.*
- *When a vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.*
- *When the vehicle is tilted from a flat tire or being towed.*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *When front visibility is poor*
  - *When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.*
  - *When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.*
  - *When the front window is covered with foreign matters.*
  - *When it is hard to see because of fog, heavy rain or snow and etc.*

### ✻ NOTICE

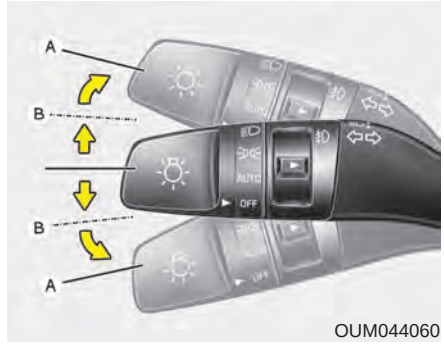
- **Do not disassemble a front view camera temporarily for tinted window or attaching any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble the camera and assemble it again, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked to need a calibration.**
- **When you replace or reinstall the windshield glass or front view camera, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**
- **Be careful that water doesn't get into the High Beam Assist unit and do not remove or damage parts of the High Beam Assist system.**
- **Do not place objects on the dash board that reflect light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may not be able to function if sunlight is reflected.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **At times, the High Beam Assist may not operate due to system limitations. The system is for your convenience only.**
  **It is the responsibility of the driver to drive safely and always check the road conditions.**
- **When the system does not operate normally, change the lamp position manually between the high beam and low beam.**

## Turn signals and lane change signals




OUM044060

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating.

They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.**

## Check headlight




OJFA055274

This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burned-out bulb except LED lamp or circuit malfunction) with the headlamp. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When replacing the bulb, use the same wattage bulb.**
  **For more information, refer to "BULB WATTAGE" in chapter 8.**
- **If a different wattage bulb is installed on the vehicle, this warning message is not displayed.**

## Front fog light (if equipped)




OJF045058

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned to the on position after the headlights are turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the switch (1) to the off position.

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

## Headlight leveling device (if equipped)

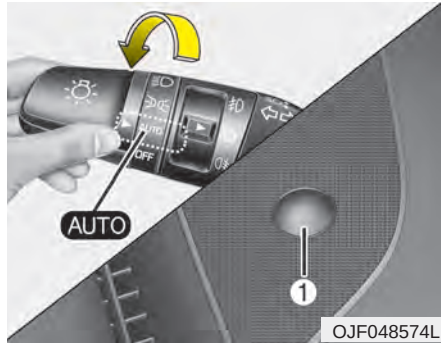
### *Automatic type*

To ensure the proper headlight beam is used under various conditions, the headlight beam levels are automatically adjusted depending on the number of passengers, the weight in the trunk, and other driving conditions.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the headlight beam is irradiated to the high or low position, have the system be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**
**Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.**

## Dynamic Bending Light (DBL) (if equipped)



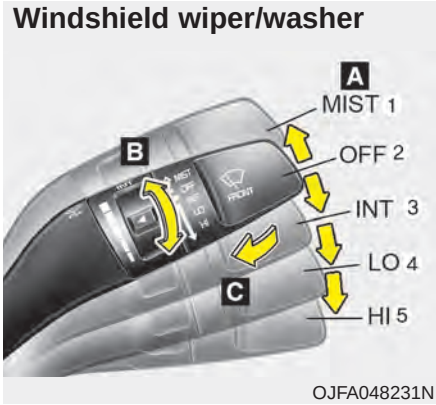

Dynamic Bending Light (DBL) uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and leveling the headlamp.

Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The dynamic Bending Light (DBL) will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the DBL, change the switch to other positions. After turning the DBL off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but leveling operates continuously.

If the DBL malfunction indicator comes on, the DBL is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorized Kia dealer/service partner.

## WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield wiper/washer




OJFA048231N

**A : Wiper speed control (front)**

- MIST – Single wipe
- OFF – Off
- INT – Intermittent wipe
- LO – Low wiper speed
- HI – High wiper speed

**B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment**

**C : Wash with brief wipes (front)***

### Windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

MIST : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this (MIST) position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

OFF : Wiper is not in operation

INT : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

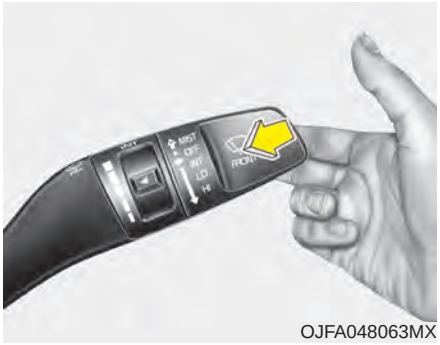
LO : Normal wiper speed

HI : Fast wiper speed

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.**
**If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.**

## Front windshield washers



OJFA048063MX

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windshield is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger side.

**⚠ CAUTION - Washer pump**

***To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.***

**⚠ WARNING - Obscured visibility**

**Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windshield with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windshield and obscure your vision.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Wipers & windshields**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

## INTERIOR LIGHTS

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

It may cause battery discharge.

**⚠ WARNING - Interior Lights**

**Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.**

### Automatic turn off function

The interior lights automatically turn off approximately 20 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off, if the lights are in the ON position.

If your vehicle is equipped with the theft alarm system, the interior lights automatically turn off approximately 5 seconds after the system is armed.

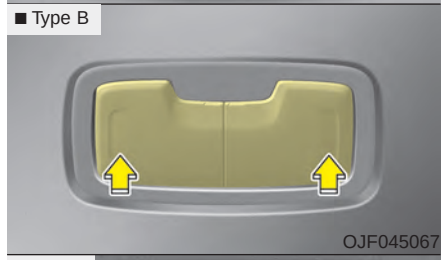
### Room lamp

■ Type A



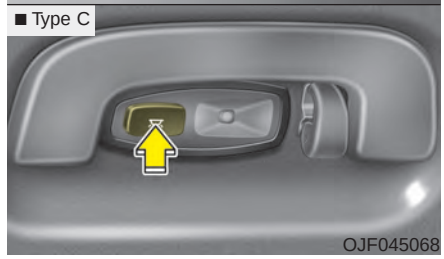
OJF045066

■ Type B



OJF045067

■ Type C

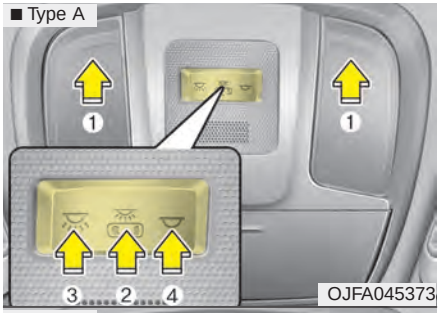


OJF045068

• : The light stays on at all times.

## Map lamp

■ Type A




■ Type B




- Press the lens (1) to turn ON the map lamp.

  To turn the map lamp OFF press the lens (1) again.

- (2) : DOOR mode

- The map lamp and room lamp come on when a door is opened. The lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
- The map lamp and room lamp come on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will go out immediately if the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
- To turn off the DOOR mode, press the DOOR button (2) once again (not pressed).

### ✻ NOTICE

**The DOOR mode and ROOM mode can not be selected at the same time.**

**Front Room Lamp:**

• Type A

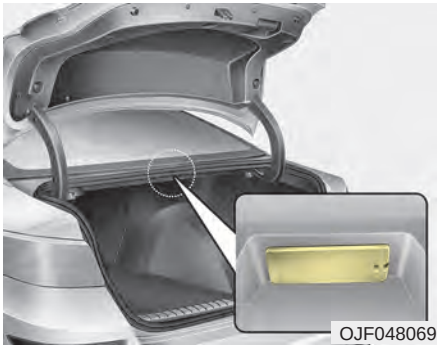
(3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on.

(4): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps off.

• Type B

(3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on and off.

### Trunk room lamp (if equipped)

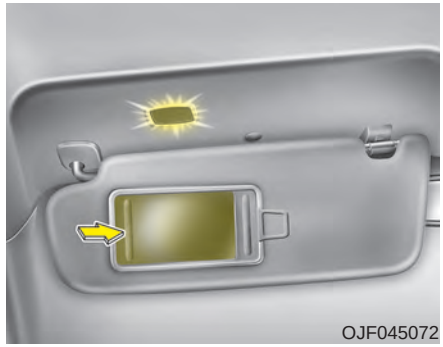



The trunk room lamp comes on when the trunk is opened.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**The trunk room lamp comes on as long as the trunk lid opens. To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the trunk lid securely after using the trunk room.**

### Vanity mirror lamp



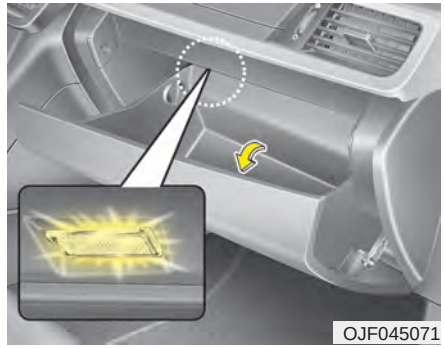

Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror light.

* The actual sunvisor lamp in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

#### ⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp

***Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sunvisor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sunvisor.***

### Glove box lamp (if equipped)




The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.

## WELCOME SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

### Headlight (Headlamp) escort function

The headlights (and/or taillights) remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or smart key twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

### Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and trunk) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- Without smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the transmitter.
- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

### Pocket lamp (if equipped)

When all doors are locked and closed, the pocket lamp will come on for 15 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

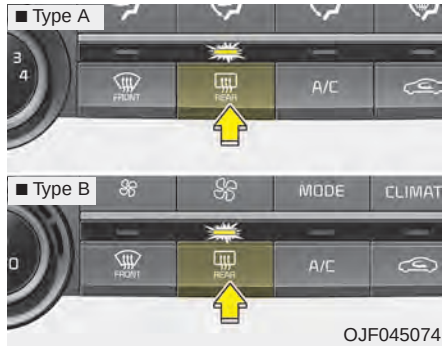
## DEFROSTER

### ⚠ CAUTION - Conductors

***To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.***

If you want to defrost and defog the front windshield, refer to “Windshield defrosting and defogging” in this section.

### Rear window defroster




The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, while the engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

#### *Outside rearview mirror defroster*

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. Fan speed control knob
2. Front windshield defroster button
3. Rear window defroster button
4. Air conditioning button
5. Air intake control button
6. Mode selection button
7. Temperature control button

### ✻ NOTICE

**Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.**

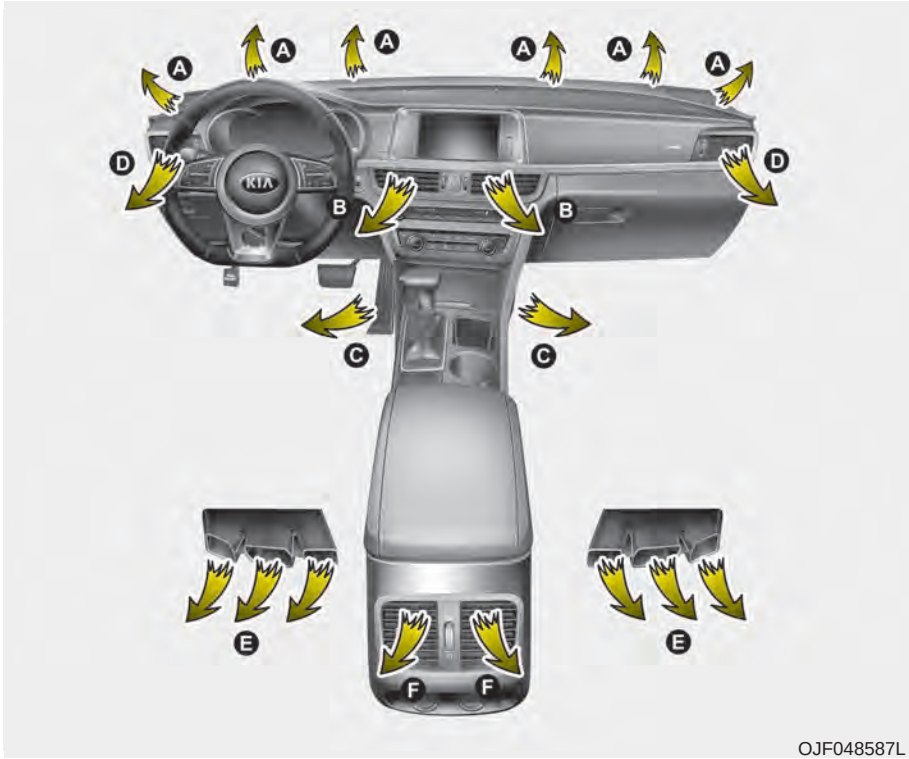
OJF045059

## Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

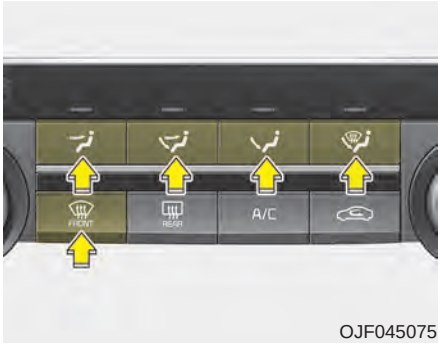
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position (if equipped).
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.




OJF048587L

### *Mode selection*




The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Five symbols are used to represent MAX A/C, Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Bi-Level (B, C, D, E, F)**

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

**Floor-Level (A, C, D, E, F)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

**Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E, F)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

### *MAX A/C selection*




OJF045077

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.



OJF048078

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel (if equipped).

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

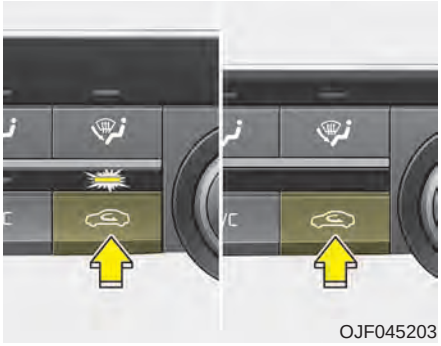
### *Temperature control*




OJF045079

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right for warm and hot air or to the left for cooler air.

### *Air intake control*




The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

### *Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)*

If the sunroof opens while the heater or Air Conditioning system operates, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically for ventilating the car. Then, if you select the recirculated air position, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically after 3 minutes.

If you close the sunroof, the intake mode will be changed to the previous selected mode.

**⚠ WARNING - Reduced visibility**

**Continued use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sleeping with A/C on**

**Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on as this may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**

**⚠ WARNING - Recirculated air**

**Continued use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**

### *Fan speed control*



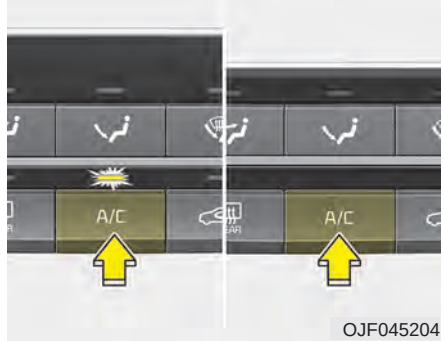

OJF045081

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

### *Air conditioning*




OJF045204

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

## System operation

### *Ventilation*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

### *Heating*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

### Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

### *Air conditioning*

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.
- The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.
- The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators should be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

### ⚠ CAUTION - Excessive A/C

***When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.***

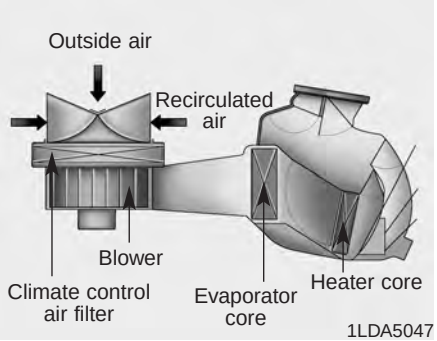
### ⚠ CAUTION

***When opening the windows in humid weather, air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.***

**Air conditioning system operation tips**

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

## Climate control air filter (if equipped)



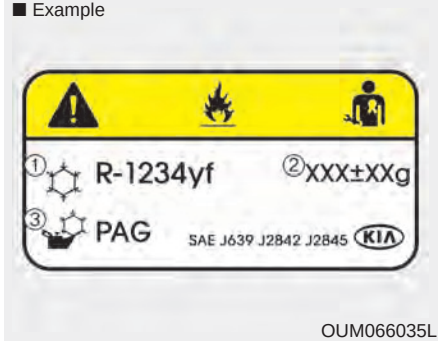

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, we recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  **If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent climate control air filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system should be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**

## Air Conditioning refrigerant label

■ Example




✻ The actual Air Conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbol and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label inside of the engine room.

❊ Refer to chapter 9 for more detail on the location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

## Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf**



**Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.**

**Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The oil and refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is under very high pressure. If proper service procedures are not followed an explosion may result. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.**

**⚠ CAUTION - A/C Repair**

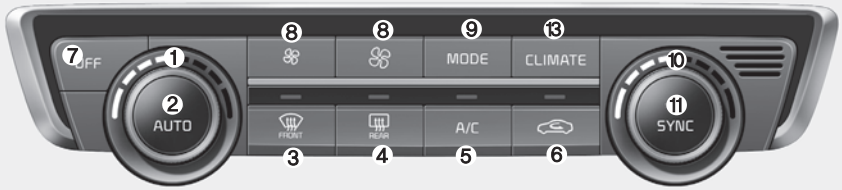
***It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.***

# AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**




■ **Type B**




1. Driver's temperature control knob
2. AUTO (automatic control) button
3. Front windshield defroster button
4. Rear window defroster button
5. Air conditioning button
6. Air intake control button
7. OFF button
8. Fan speed control button
9. Mode selection button
10. Passenger's temperature control knob
11. Dual temperature control selection button
12. Climate control display
13. Climate information screen selection button

## ✻ NOTICE

**Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.**

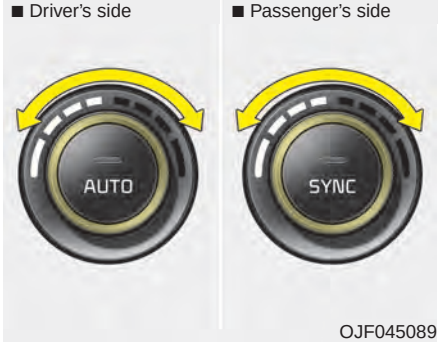
OJF045083/OJF045084

## Automatic heating and air conditioning



OJF045085

1. Press the AUTO button. The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.



OJF045089

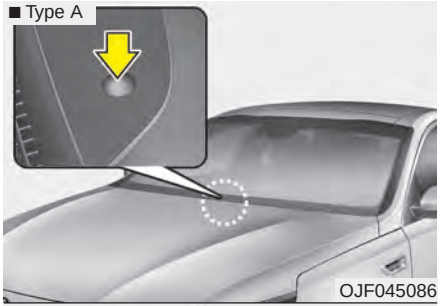
2. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Air conditioning button**
  - **Front windshield defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windshield defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)**
  - **Air intake control button**
  - **Fan speed control switch**

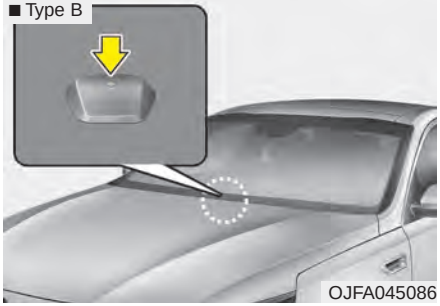
  **The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.**
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 73°F (23°C).**

■ Type A



OJF045086

■ Type B



OJFA045086

## ✻ NOTICE

**Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.**

## Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

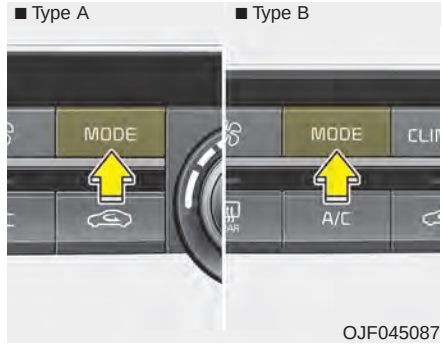
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.

### *Mode selection*

■ Type A ■ Type B




OJF045087

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:



Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

### Face-Level

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

### Bi-Level

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

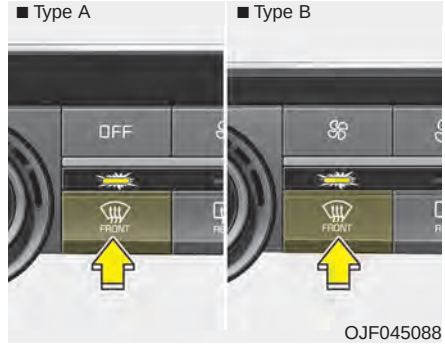
### Floor-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

### Floor/Defrost-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

■ Type A ■ Type B




OJF045088

### Defrost-Level

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

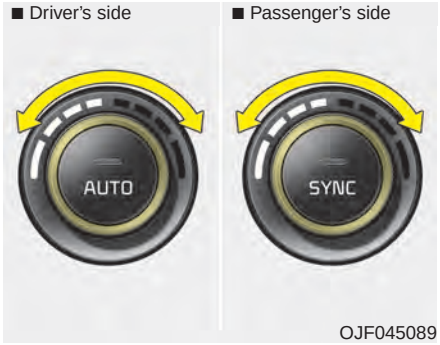

OJF048078

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel (if equipped).

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

### *Temperature control*



OJF045089

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the extreme right.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the extreme left.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 1°F/0.5°C. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.



OJF045090

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally**

- Press the “SYNC” button to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature equally.

  The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side temperature.
- Turn the driver side temperature control knob. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually**

- Press the “SYNC” button again to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature individually. The illumination of button turns off.
- Operate the driver side temperature control knob to adjust the driver side temperature.
- Operate the passenger side temperature control knob to adjust the passenger side temperature.

**Temperature conversion**

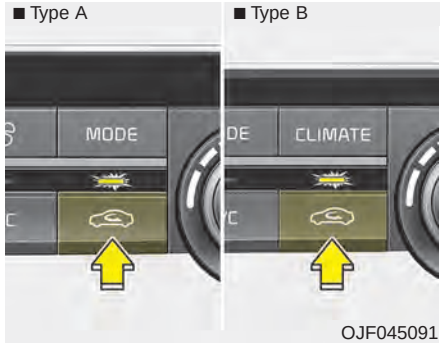
You can switch the temperature mode from Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

While pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Fahrenheit.

### *Air intake control*




This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

**Outside (fresh) air position**



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Recirculated air position**



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

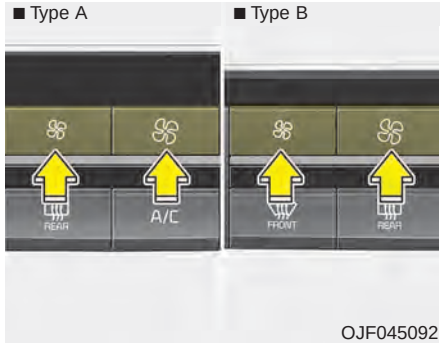
In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

### *Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)*

If the sunroof opens while the heater or Air Conditioning system operates, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically for ventilating the car. Then, if you select the recirculated air position, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically after 3 minutes.

If you close the sunroof, the intake mode will be changed to the previous selected mode.

### *Fan speed control*

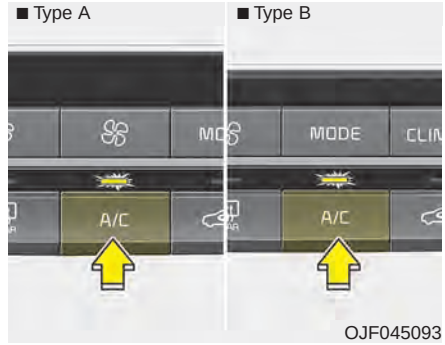



OJF045092

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed, press (✤) the button for higher speed, or push (✤) the button for lower speed. To turn the fan speed control off, press the front blower OFF button.

### *Air conditioning*




OJF045093

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

**⚠ WARNING - Reduced Visibility**

**Continuous use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**

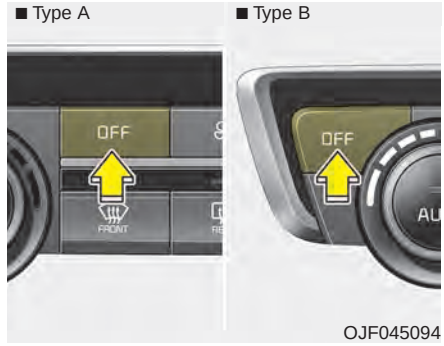
**⚠ WARNING - Recirculated Air**

**Continued use of the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sleeping with A/C on**

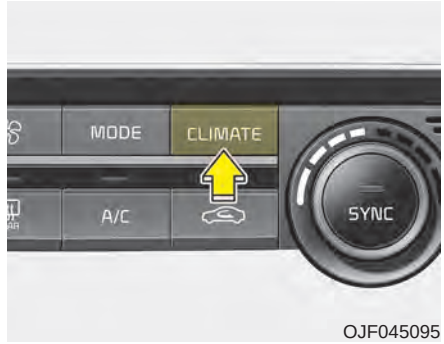
**Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating on as this may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**

### *OFF mode*




Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### *Climate information screen selection (if equipped)*




Press the climate information screen selection button to display climate information on the screen.

## System operation

### *Ventilation*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

### *Heating*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

### Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

### *Air conditioning (if equipped)*

All Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Press the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position, set the mode control to the MAX A/C position, then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

### ⚠ CAUTION - Excessive A/C Use

***When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.***

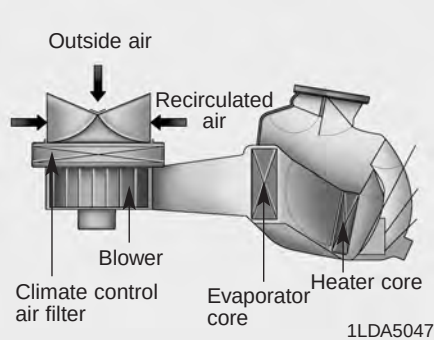
### ✻ NOTICE

**When opening the windows in humid weather, air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

**Air conditioning system operation tips**

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

## Climate control air filter (if equipped)




The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter every 15,000 miles or once a year.**
  **If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, the system should be checked at an authorized Kia dealer.**

## Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative impact on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf**





**Because the refrigerant is mildly inflammable and at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.**

**Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The oil and refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is under very high pressure. If proper service procedures are not followed an explosion may result. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used, otherwise damage to the vehicle may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.***

## Air Conditioning refrigerant label

■ Example




OUM066035L

❈ The actual Air Conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbol and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented below :

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant

❈ Refer to chapter 9 for more detail on the location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

## WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

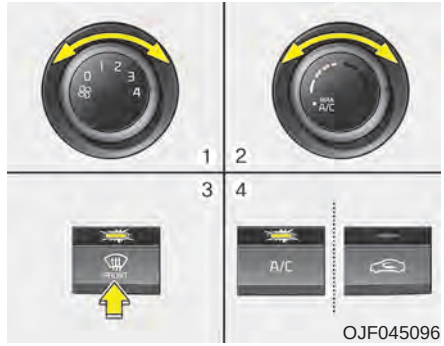
**⚠ WARNING - Windshield heating**

**Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.**

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.

### Manual climate control system

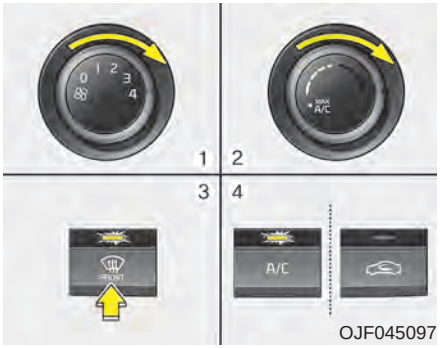
***To defog inside windshield***




1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the or position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

### *To defrost outside windshield*

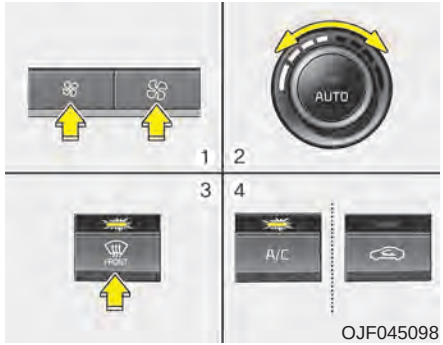



1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning is not selected automatically press the corresponding button manually.

## Automatic climate control system

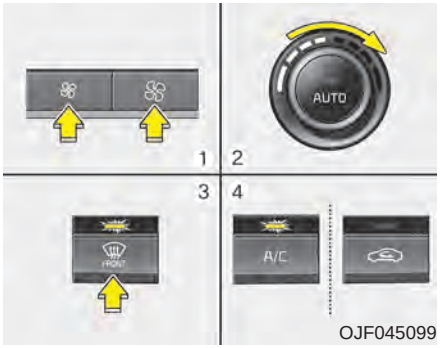
### *To defog inside windshield*




1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

### *To defrost outside windshield*

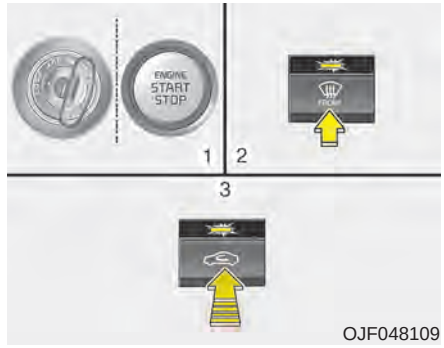



1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

## Defogging logic

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake or air conditioning is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel automatic defogging logic or return to the automatic defogging logic, do the following.

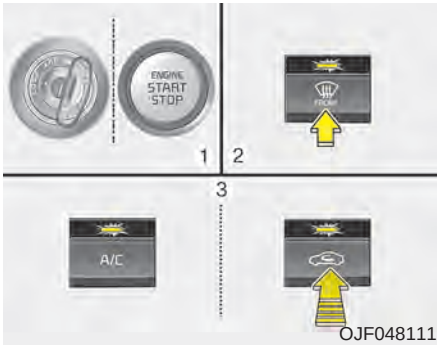
### *Manual climate control system*




1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. Within 3 seconds after pressing the defroster button, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

### *Automatic climate control system*

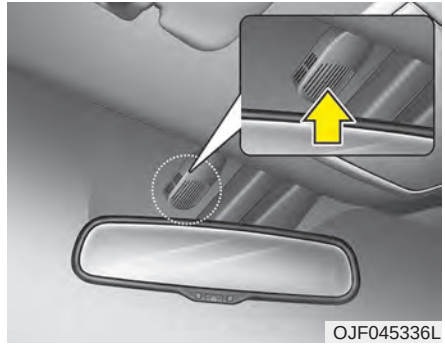



1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. While pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The recirculation indicator blinks 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

### *Auto defogging system (if equipped)*




Auto defogging reduces the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.




This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture on the inside of the windshield and operates.

The auto defogging system addresses excess moisture on the inside of the windshield in stages. For example if auto defogging does not defog inside the windshield at step 1 Outside air position, it tries to defog again at step 2 Operating the air conditioning.

Step 1 : Outside air position

Step 2 : Operating the air conditioning

Step 3 : Blowing air flow toward the windshield

Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windshield

**To cancel or reset the Auto Defogging System**

Press the front windshield defroster button for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is in the ON position. When the Auto Defogging System is canceled, ADS OFF symbol will blink 3 times and the ADS OFF will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the Auto Defogging System is reset, ADS OFF symbol will blink 6 times without a signal.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to the system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.***

***Automatic ventilation (if equipped)***

When the ignition is ON or when the engine is running and the outside temperature is below 59°F (15°C), the automatic ventilation feature will activate if the recirculated air intake position is selected for more than 5 minutes while A/C is off and floor mode is selected. In this condition the air intake position will automatically switch to the outside (fresh) air intake position.

**To cancel or reset the Automatic Ventilation**

When the air conditioning system is on, select Face Level mode and keep pressing the air intake control button more than 3 seconds.

When the automatic ventilation is canceled, the indicator blinks 3 times. When the automatic ventilation is activated, the indicator blinks 6 times.

## STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

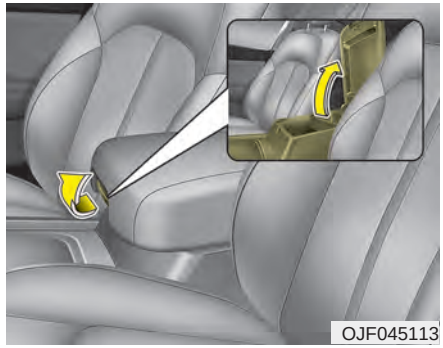
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.
- Always keep the storage compartment covers closed while driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover can not close securely.

**⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials**

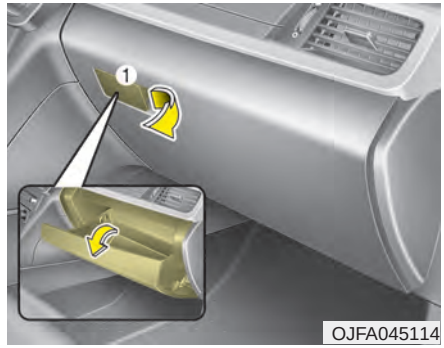
**Do not store, propane cylinders or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**

### Center console storage




To open the center console storage, pull up the lever.

### Glove box




The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a master key. (if equipped)

To open the glove box, pull the lever (1) and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

**⚠ WARNING - Glove Box**

**To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the temperature control knob is in the warm or hot position, warm or hot air will flow into the glove box.**

## Sunglass holder




To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses with the lenses facing out.

To close the sunglass holder push it up.

**⚠ WARNING - Sunglass holder**

**Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Heavier objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers.**

# INTERIOR FEATURES

## Cup holder

**⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids**

**Do not place uncovered cups with hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**

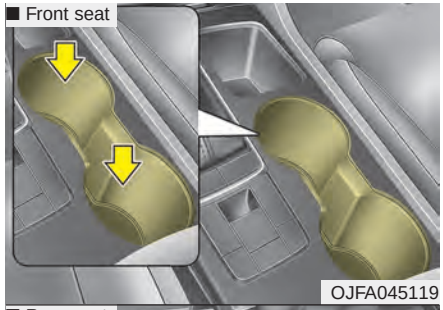
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Keep your drinks sealed while driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.***

**✻ NOTICE**

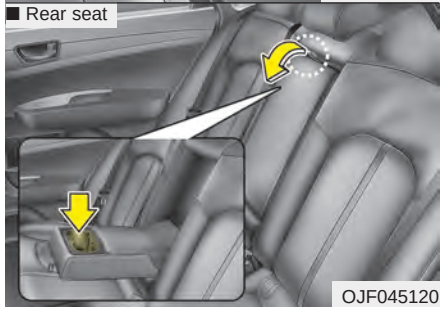
**When cleaning spilled liquids, do not use heat to dry the cup holders. This may damage the cup holder.**

■ Front seat



OJFA045119

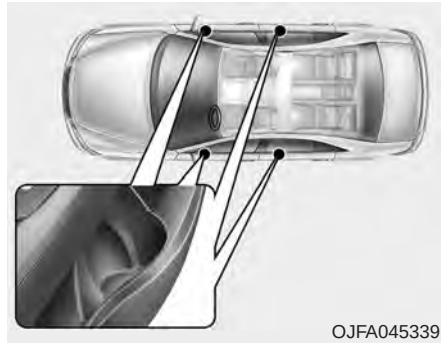
■ Rear seat



OJF045120

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

## Bottle holder



OJFA045339

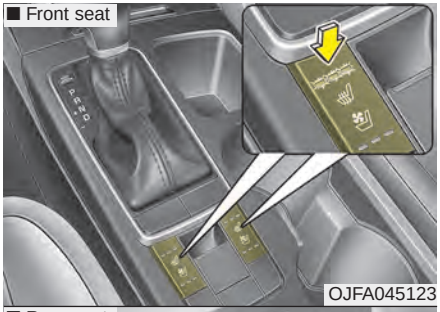
Bottles may be placed in the holder.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Only bottles should be placed in the holder labeled "Bottles Only."**

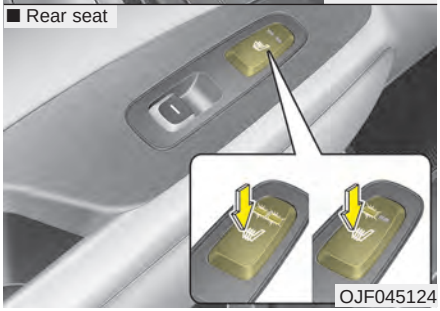
## Seat warmer (if equipped)

■ Front seat



OJFA045123

■ Rear seat



OJF045124

The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows :

■ Front seat

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

■ Rear seat

OFF→HIGH( )→LOW( )

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

### ✻ NOTICE

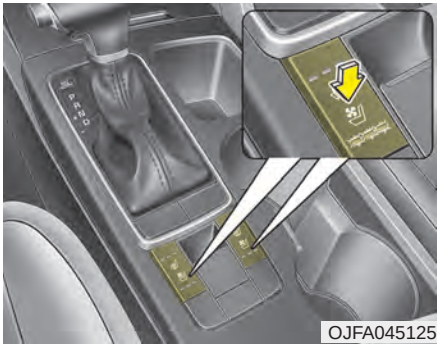
**With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

### ⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns

**The seat warmer may cause burns, even at low temperatures, if used over a long period of time. Never allow passengers who may not be able to take care of themselves to be exposed to the risk of seat heater burns. These include:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

## Air ventilation seat (if equipped)




The temperature setting of the seat changes according to the switch position.

- If you want to ventilate your seat cushion, press the switch (blue color).
- Each time you press the button, the airflow will change as follows:

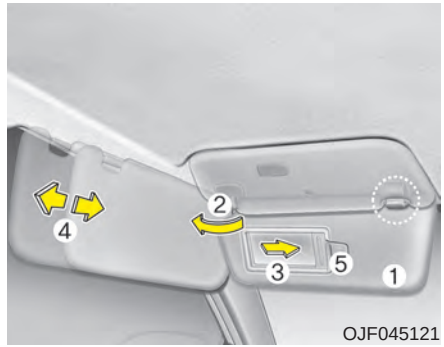
OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

- The seat warmer (with air ventilation) defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

**⚠ CAUTION - Seat damage**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the air ventilation seat.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat. Those things may damage the air ventilation seat.***
- ***Be careful not to spill liquid such as water or beverages on the seat. If you spill some liquid, wipe the seat with a dry towel. Before using the air ventilation seat, dry the seat completely.***

## Sunvisor




Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (4).

The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket.

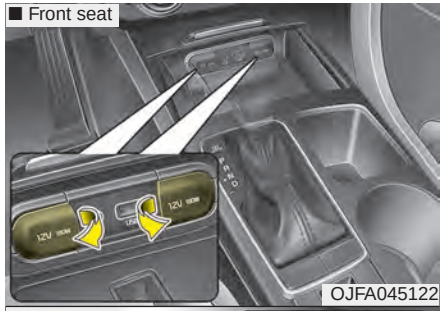
* The actual sunvisor lamp in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

**⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp**

***If you use the vanity mirror lamp, turn off the lamp before returning the sunvisor to its original position, otherwise it could result in battery discharge and possible sunvisor damage.***

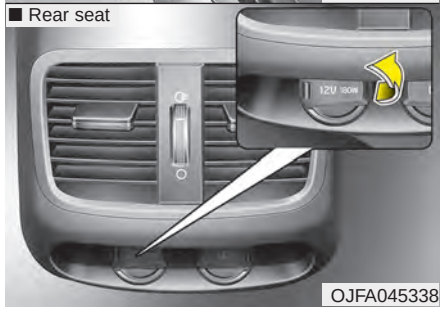
## Power outlet (if equipped)

■ Front seat




OJFA045122

■ Rear seat




OJFA045338

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

- Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.
- Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.
- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.

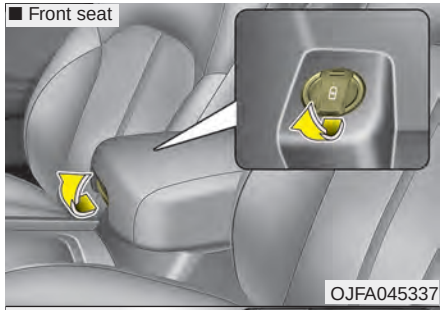
- Plug in battery equipped electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electri cal/electronic system and cause system malfunction.

**⚠ WARNING - Electric shock**

**Do not put a finger or a foreign object (pen, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may receive an electric shock.**

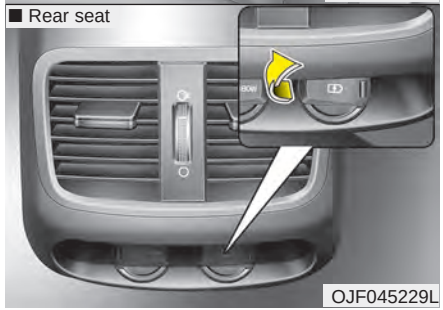
## USB charger (if equipped)

■ Front seat



OJFA045337

■ Rear seat



OJF045229L

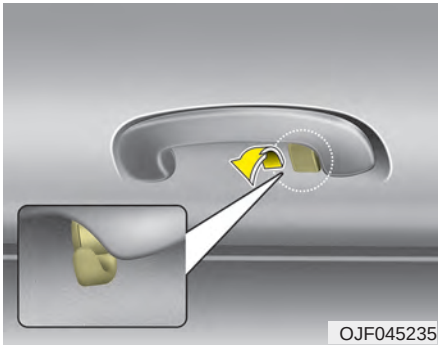
The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable. The electrical devices can be recharged when the Engine Start/Stop button is in ACC/ON/START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- Some devices are not supported for fast charging but will be charged with normal speed.
- Use the USB charger when the engine is running to prevent battery discharge.
- Only devices that fit the USB port can be used.
- The USB charger can be used only for battery charging purposes.
- A battery recharger may not be operated.

## Coat hook (if equipped)



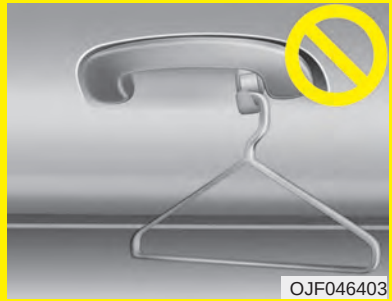

❊ This actual feature may differ from the illustration.

To use the coat hook, pull down the upper portion of coat hook.

**⚠ CAUTION - Hanging clothing**

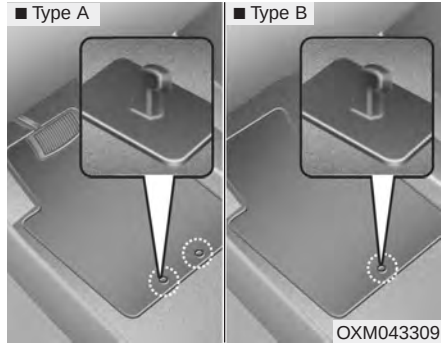
***Do not hang heavy clothes, since they may damage the hook.***

**⚠ WARNING**




**Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothing pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.**

## Floor mat anchor (s) (if equipped)




When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING - After market floor mat**

**Do not install aftermarket floor mats that are not capable of being securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.**

**Unsecured floor mats can interfere with pedal operation.**

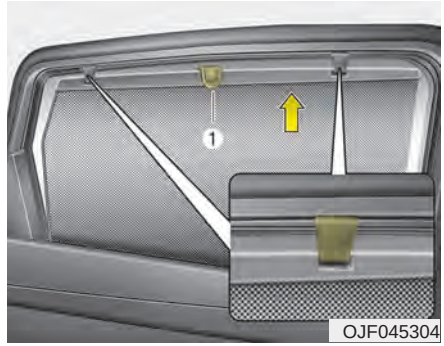
The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Kia recommends that only the Kia floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.**

## Side curtain (if equipped)




To use the side curtain:

1. Lift the curtain by the handle (1).
2. Hang the curtain on the hooks on both sides of the handle.

### ⚠ CAUTION

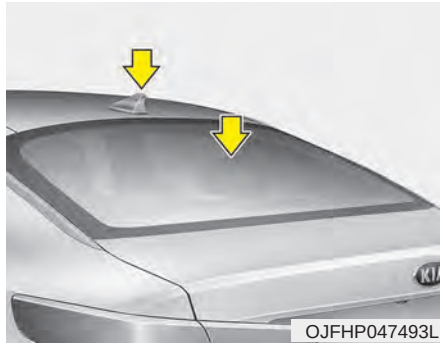
***To avoid injury or damage to the side curtain and door moldings, lower side curtain by the handle all the way back to the stowed position. Do not release handle after disengaging from the hooks on the door.***

## AUDIO SYSTEM

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**

### Antenna




***Glass antenna (if equipped)***

When the radio power switch is turned on while the ignition switch is in either the "ON" or "ACC" position, your car will receive both AM and FM broadcast signals through the antenna in the rear window glass.

***Shark fin antenna (if equipped)***

The shark fin antenna will receive the transmit data.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not clean the inside of the rear window glass with a cleaner or use a scraper to remove foreign deposits as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.***
- ***Avoid adding metallic coatings such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can disturb receiving AM and FM broadcast signals.***
- ***To prevent damage to the rear glass antenna, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window. Clean the inside surface of the rear glass window with a piece of soft cloth.***

***(Continued)***

***(Continued)***

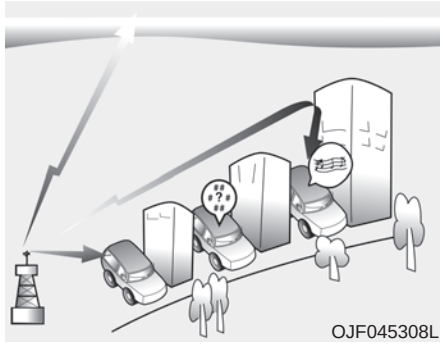
- ***When putting a sticker on the inside surface of the rear window, be careful not to damage to the rear glass antenna.***
- ***Do not put sharp instruments nearby the rear glass antenna.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**Tinted rear window may affect the proper functioning of the antenna.**

## How vehicle radio works

***FM reception***

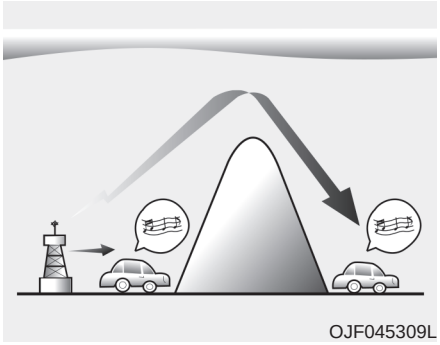



AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then processed by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

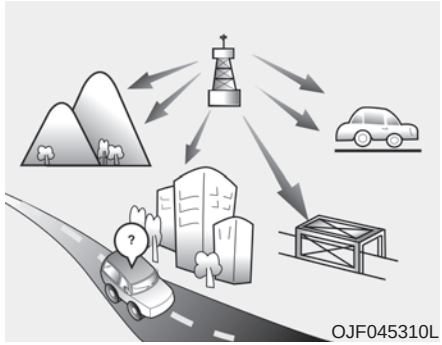
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

### *AM reception*

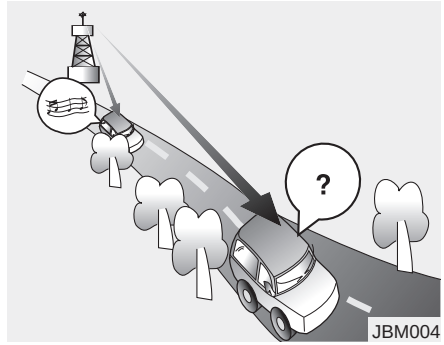



AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long distance,low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight. In addition, they curve around obstructions resulting in better signal coverage.

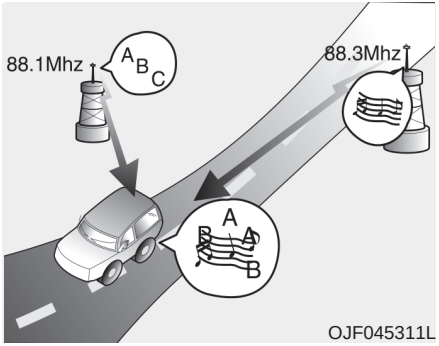
### *FM radio station*




FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade within short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, and obstructions. This can lead to undesirable or unpleasant listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:




- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another station with a stronger signal.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.




- Station Swapping - As an FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

### *Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio*

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, try to operate mobile devices as far from the audio equipment as possible.

When using a communication system such as a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Cell phone use**

**Do not use a cellular phone while driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.**

**⚠ WARNING - Distracted driving**

**Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe bodily injury, or death. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe and legal operation of the vehicle, and the use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention, and focus away from the safe operation of the vehicle, or which are not permissible by law, should never be used during the operation of the vehicle.**

## Declaration of Conformity

### FCC

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions,may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures :

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution: Any changes or modifications to this device not explicitly approved by manufacturer could void your authority to operate this equipment.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operatedwith minmum 20cm between the and your body. This transmitter must not be collocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter unless authorized to do so by the FCC.

# Driving your vehicle


Before driving . . . . . 5-5
- Before entering vehicle . . . . . 5-5
- Necessary inspections . . . . . 5-5
- Before starting . . . . . 5-5

key positions . . . . . 5-7
- Illuminated ignition switch . . . . . 5-7
- Ignition switch position . . . . . 5-7
- Starting the engine . . . . . 5-9

Engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-10
- Illuminated engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-10
- Engine start/stop button position . . . . . 5-10
- Starting the engine with a smart key . . . . . 5-12

Automatic transaxle . . . . . 5-14
- Automatic transaxle operation . . . . . 5-14
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-21

Dual Clutch Transmission (DCT) . . . . . 5-22
- Dual clutch transmission operation . . . . . 5-22
- LCD display for transmission temperature and warning message . . . . . 5-24
- Good driving practices . . . . . 5-33

Brake system . . . . . 5-36
- Power brakes . . . . . 5-36
- Parking brake – Foot type . . . . . 5-38
- Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) . . . . . 5-39
- Auto hold . . . . . 5-46
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . . 5-50
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . . 5-52
- Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) . . . . . 5-56
- Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) . . . . . 5-58
- Good braking practices . . . . . 5-58

Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA) (Camera type) . . . . . 5-60
- System setting and activation . . . . . 5-60
- FCA warning message and system control . . . . . 5-62
- Brake operation . . . . . 5-63
- FCA front radar/Camera sensor . . . . . 5-64
- System malfunction . . . . . 5-65
- Limitation of the system . . . . . 5-67

Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA) (Smart cruise control system equipped) . . . . . 5-72
- System setting and activation . . . . . 5-72
- FCA warning message and system control . . . . . 5-74
- Brake operation . . . . . 5-75
- FCA front radar/Camera sensor . . . . . 5-76
- System malfunction . . . . . 5-78
- Limitation of the system . . . . . 5-80
- Recognizing pedestrians . . . . . 5-84

Cruise control system. . . . . 5-87
• To set cruise control speed . . . . . 5-88
• To increase cruise control set speed. . . . . 5-88
• To decrease the cruising speed. . . . . 5-89
• To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on. 5-89
• To cancel cruise control . . . . . 5-89
• To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) . . . . . 5-90
• To turn cruise control off . . . . . 5-90
Smart cruise control with Stop & Go system . . . 5-91
• Smart cruise control switch . . . . . 5-93
• Smart cruise control speed. . . . . 5-93
• Vehicle to vehicle distance setting . . . . . 5-98
• When the lane ahead is clear . . . . . 5-99
• When there is a vehicle ahead of you in your lane 5-100
• To adjust the sensitivity of smart cruise control . . 5-104
• To convert to cruise control mode. . . . . 5-105
• Limitations of the system . . . . . 5-105
Drive mode integrated control system . . . . . 5-112
• Drive mode. . . . . 5-112
Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW). . . . . 5-115
• BCW (Blind-spot Collision Warning)/ LCA (Lane Change Assist). . . . . 5-116
• RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning) . . 5-119
• Driver's Attention . . . . . 5-123
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system . . . . . 5-125
• LKA operation. . . . . 5-126
• LKA malfunction. . . . . 5-132
• LKA function change . . . . . 5-133
Driver Attention Warning (DAW) . . . . . 5-134
• System setting and activation. . . . . 5-134
• Resetting the system . . . . . 5-136
• System disabled . . . . . 5-137
• System malfunction. . . . . 5-137
Economical operation . . . . . 5-139
Special driving conditions . . . . . 5-141
• Hazardous driving conditions . . . . . 5-141
• Rocking the vehicle . . . . . 5-141
• Smooth cornering . . . . . 5-142
• Driving at night . . . . . 5-142
• Driving in the rain. . . . . 5-143
• Driving in flooded areas . . . . . 5-144
• Driving off-road. . . . . 5-144
• Highway driving . . . . . 5-144
Winter driving . . . . . 5-145
• Snowy or icy conditions . . . . . 5-145
• Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant. . . . . 5-147
• Check battery and cables . . . . . 5-147
• Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary . . . . . 5-147
• Check spark plugs and ignition system. . . . . 5-147

• To keep locks from freezing . . . . . 5-148
• Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system . . . . . 5-148
• Don’t let your parking brake freeze . . . . . 5-148
• Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath . . . 5-148
• Carry emergency equipment . . . . . 5-148
Vehicle load limit . . . . . 5-149
• Tire and loading information label . . . . . 5-149
• Certification label . . . . . 5-153
Vehicle weight . . . . . 5-154
• Base curb weight . . . . . 5-154
• Vehicle curb weight . . . . . 5-154
• Cargo weight . . . . . 5-154
• GAW (Gross Axle Weight) . . . . . 5-154
• GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) . . . . . 5-154
• GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight). . . . . 5-154
• GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) . . . . . 5-154

**Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Engine exhaust**

**Do not inhale exhaust fumes or leave your engine running in a enclosed area for a prolonged time. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.**

**⚠ WARNING - Open trunk**

**Do not drive with the trunk open. Poisonous exhaust gases can enter the passenger compartment. If you must drive with the trunk open proceed as follows:**

1. **Close all windows.**
2. **Open side vents.**
3. **Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at the highest speed.**

# BEFORE DRIVING

## Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

## Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, at the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in chapter 8, “Maintenance”.

**⚠ WARNING - Distracted driving**

**Focus on the road while driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Use of any handled devices, other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the driver should not be used during vehicle operation.**

## Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Buckle your seat belt.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

**⚠ WARNING - Fire risk**

**When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**

**⚠ WARNING - Check surroundings**

**Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**

**⚠ WARNING - Loose objects**

**Securely store items in your vehicle. When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driving while intoxicated**

**Do not drive while intoxicated. Drinking and driving is dangerous. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment.**

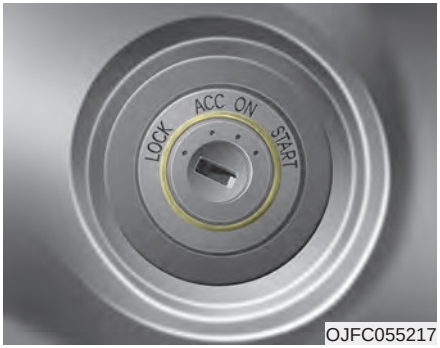
**Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving drunk.**

**⚠ WARNING - Proper footwear**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, sandals, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.**

# KEY POSITIONS (IF EQUIPPED)

## Illuminated ignition switch



OJFC055217

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will illuminate for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on. It will also go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

## Ignition switch position

### *LOCK*



OJF055172L

The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

### *ACC (Accessory)*

The electrical accessories are operative. If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

### *ON*

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

*Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.*

### *START*

Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked in this position.

The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park) for automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition switch**

**Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC while the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**

**⚠ WARNING - Key holder**

**Do not attach small purses, multiple keys, or any other heavy accessories to the driver's key chain used to start the vehicle. It is possible for the driver to accidently cause the key inserted in the vehicle to change the ignition position to the ACC position while the vehicle is moving thereby increasing the risk of an accident and causing the deactivation of several safety features.**

**⚠ WARNING - Leaving the Vehicle**

**To avoid unexpected or sudden vehicle movement, never leave your vehicle if the transmission is not locked in the P (Park) position and the parking brake is fully engaged. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off.**

## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING - Proper footwear**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, sandals, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.**

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

   *It should be started **without depressing the accelerator.***
4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

**⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel**

**Never reach for any controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control.**

If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

**⚠ CAUTION - Starter**

***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***

## ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)

### Illuminated engine start/stop button



OJFHP058004

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

When all entrances are closed, if you lock the vehicle by using the transmitter or the smart key, the light will go off immediately.

### Engine start/stop button position

***OFF***

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

In an emergency situation while the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

***ACC(Accessory)***



OJF058312

Press the engine start/stop button while it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal. Accessory is displayed on the LCD of the cluster. If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

***ON***

Press the engine start/stop button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

***START/RUN***

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/ STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle/dual clutch transmission vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:

OFF ➔ ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you leave the ENGINE START/ STOP button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.**

**⚠ WARNING - Starting vehicle**

**Never press the engine start/stop button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**

### Starting the engine with a smart key

1. Carry the smart key or place it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied
3. Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
4. Press the engine start/stop button while depressing the brake pedal.

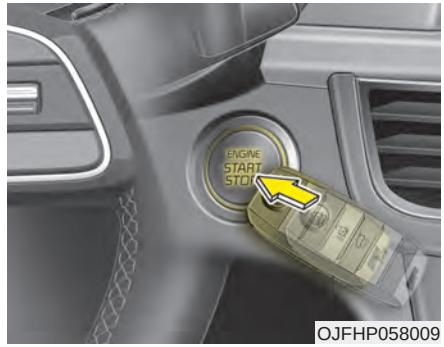
   *It should be started without depressing the accelerator.*
5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary.

   Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, a message "key is not in the vehicle" will appear on the LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off while the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

**⚠ WARNING - Unintended vehicle movement**

**Never leave the smart key in the vehicle with children or vehicle occupants who are unfamiliar with the vehicle operation. Pushing the engine start/stop button while the smart key is in the vehicle may result in unintended engine activation and/or unintended vehicle movement.**



OJFHP058009

- If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.

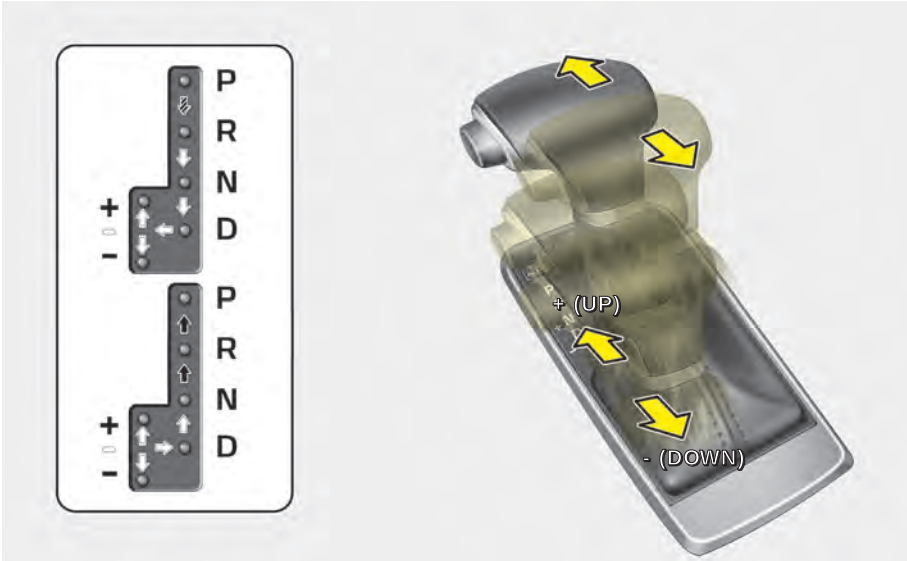
  The side with the lock button should contact the engine start/stop button directly.

  When you press the engine start/stop button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.

- When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you can't start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button for 10 seconds while it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.

Do not press the ENGINE START/ STOP button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE




Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJF055012

### Automatic transaxle operation

The automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).**

*For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.*

**⚠ WARNING - Leaving Vehicle**

**Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Do not use the P position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is locked in the P position and set the parking brake fully. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Transaxle**

***To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on. The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion.***

When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle with the engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.

### *Transaxle ranges*

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the drive wheels from rotating.

Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

### ⚠ CAUTION - Shifting

***Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion, except when "Rocking the vehicle" explained in this chapter.***

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

**- Parking in N (Neutral) gear**

Follow the steps below when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After stopping your vehicle, depress the brake pedal and move the transaxle shift lever to [P] with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied, release the parking brake.
   - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, depress the brake pedal with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If [AUTO HOLD] function is used while driving (If [AUTO HOLD] indicator is on in the cluster), press [AUTO HOLD] switch and [AUTO HOLD] function will be turned off.
3. While depressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button [OFF].
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to [OFF] only when the shift lever is in [P].
4. Change the gear shift lever to [N] (Neutral) while depressing the brake pedal and inserting a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

### ⚠ WARNING

- **With the exception of parking in neutral gear so that you can push the vehicle, always park the vehicle in [P] (Park) for safety and apply the parking brake.**
- **Before parking in [N] (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in [N] gear on any slopes or gradients.**

  **If parked and left in [N], the vehicle may move and cause serious damage or injury.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**After the ignition switch has been turned off, the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) cannot be released.**

For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with [AUTO HOLD] function used while driving, if the ignition button has been turned [OFF], the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will be engaged automatically. Therefore, [AUTO HOLD] function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.

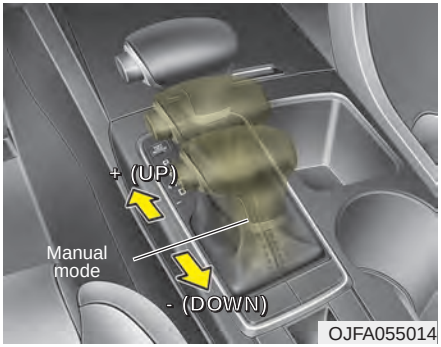
### ⚠ CAUTION - Starter

***If the engine stalls while the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.***

**D (Drive)**

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.




**Manual mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

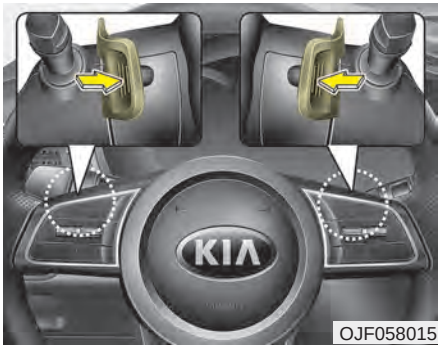
In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the manual mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

- In manual mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- In manual mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.
- In manual mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- In manual mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone, shift points are varied to upshift automatically.
- To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.
- When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.

### *Paddle shifter (if equipped)*




The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D position or the manual mode.

**With the shift lever in the D position**

The paddle shifter will operate when the vehicle speed is more than 6.2mph(10km/h).

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

When the vehicle speed is lower than 6.2mph(10km/h), if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds or if you shift the shift lever from D (Drive) to manual mode and shift it from manual mode to D (Drive) again, the system changes from manual mode to automatic mode.

**With the shift lever in the manual mode**

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you cannot shift the gear.**

### *Shift lock system*

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

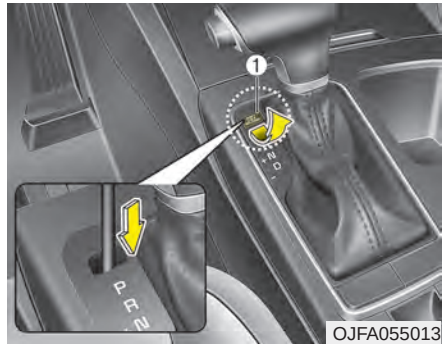
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. It is a normal condition.

**⚠ WARNING - Shifting from park**

**Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.**




**Shift-lock override**

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.
5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. Have the system inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Ignition key interlock system*

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position. Even if the ignition switch is in the LOCK position, the key cannot be removed.

If your vehicle is equipped with engine start/stop button, the button will not change to the OFF position unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

## Good driving practices

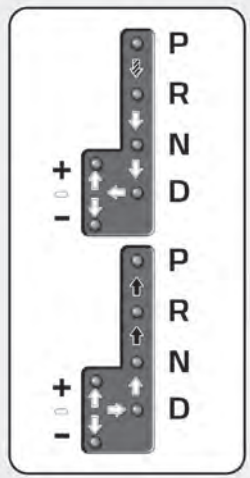
- Never move the gear shift lever from P (Park) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the gear shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

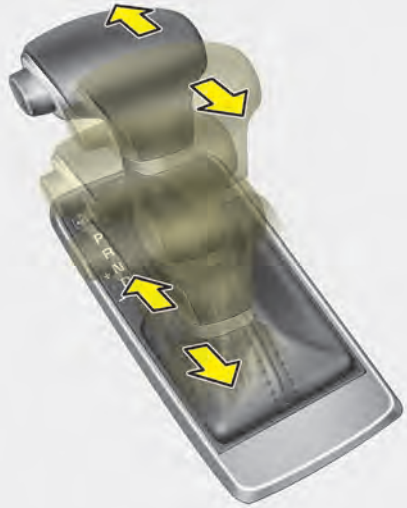
### *Moving up a steep grade from a standing start*

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.**

## DUAL CLUTCH TRANSMISSION (DCT) (IF EQUIPPED)



Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OJF055012

### Dual clutch transmission operation

The dual clutch transmission has seven forward speeds and one reverse speed.

The individual speeds are selected automatically when the shift lever is in the D (Drive) position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:**

- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**

- **Do not use engine braking (rapidly shifting from a high gear to lower gear) on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid damage to your transmission, do not try to accelerate with the shift lever in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brake engaged.***
- ***When stopped on a slope, do not hold the vehicle with accelerator pedal. Engage the service brake or the parking brake.***

- The dual clutch transmission can be thought of as an automatically shifting manual transaxle. It gives the driving feel of a manual transaxle, yet provides the ease of a fully automatic transaxle.
- When D (Drive) is selected, the transmission will automatically shift through the gears similar to a conventional automatic transaxle.

  Unlike a traditional automatic transaxle, the gear shifting can sometimes be felt and heard as the actuators engage the clutches and the gears are selected.
- The dual clutch transmission adopts a dry-type dual clutch, which is different from the torque converter of the automatic transaxle. It shows better acceleration performance and increased fuel efficiency while driving but initial launch might be little bit slower than the automatic transaxle.

  As a result, gear shifts are sometimes more noticeable than a conventional automatic transmission and a light vibration during launching can be felt as the transmission speed is matched with the engine speed. This is a normal condition of the dual clutch transmission.
- The dry-type clutch transfers torque more directly and provides a direct-drive feeling which may feel different from a conventional automatic transaxle with a torque converter. This may be more noticeable when launching the vehicle from a stop or when traveling at low, stop-and-go vehicle speeds.
- When rapidly accelerating at a low vehicle speed, the engine rpm may increase depending on the vehicle's driving condition.
- For smooth launch uphill, press down the accelerator pedal smoothly depending on the current conditions.

- If you release your foot from the accelerator pedal at low vehicle speed, you may feel strong engine braking, which is similar to manual transaxle.
- When driving downhill, you may use Sports Mode or press the paddle shifters (if equipped) to downshift to a lower gear in order to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively.
- When you turn the engine on and off, you may hear clicking sounds as the system goes through a self test. This is a normal sound for the Dual Clutch Transmission.
- During the first 1,500 km (1,000 miles), you may feel that the vehicle may not be smooth when accelerating at low speed. During this break-in period, the shift quality and performance of your new vehicle is continuously optimized.

### ✻ NOTICE

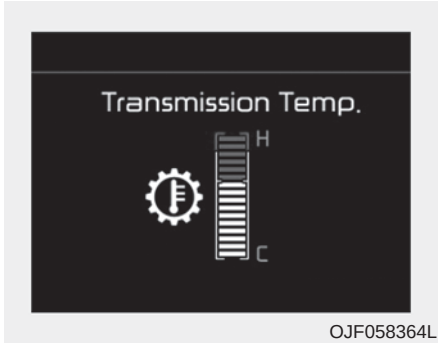
- **Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Do not put the shift lever in N (Neutral) while driving.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**If your transmission should fail, your gear shift lever may not move and the position indicator (D,R,N, etc.) will blink on the cluster. If this occurs, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealership.**

## LCD display for transmission temperature and warning message

***Transmission temperature Gauge***



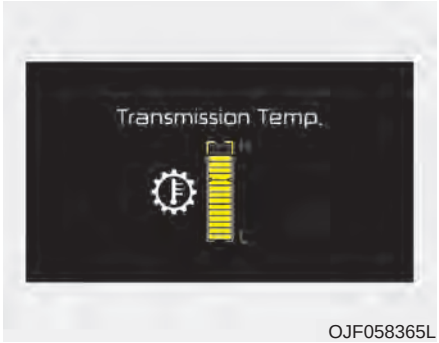

OJF058364L

**Normal (below marking 10)**

- In order to maintain the optimal gear shift performance, drive so that the temperature gauge is below the point (below marking 10).

## ✻ NOTICE

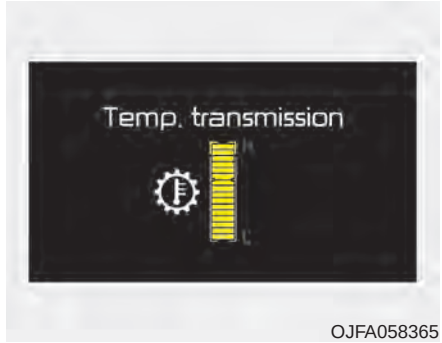
**The temperature gauge may increase rapidly if clutch slip occurs excessively due to repeated stop-and-go driving on steep grades and when Hill Hold is maintained for a long time. In order to prevent excessive temperature increase, use the brake during low speed driving or when stopping the vehicle on a hill.**




OJF058365L

**Before entering High/Overheat (from marking 10 to 14)**

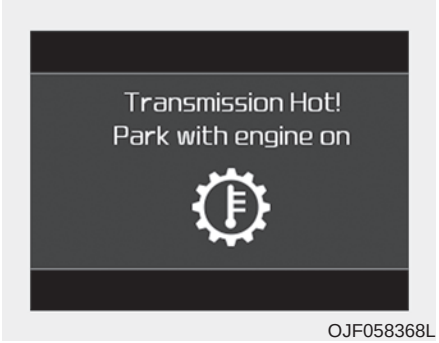
- This zone shows that the dual clutch temperature of the DCT is before entering the high/overheat zone. When the clutch temperature is within this zone (from marking 10 to 14), drive minimizing the clutch slip so that the temperature gauge is below the point(marking 10).
- If the dual clutch temperature continues to increase and reaches marking 14, the warning alarm sounds and the temperature gauge pops up on the cluster. The DCT warning message is not displayed.




OJFA058365

**High/Overheat (from marking 15 to 16)**

- This zone shows that the dual clutch temperature of the DCT has entered the high/overheat zone. The DCT warning alarm sounds, warning message is displayed on the cluster and the temperature gauge disappears from the cluster. Follow the displayed warning message.
- To check the temperature status of the dual clutch when overheated, move to the temperature gauge screen by selecting the trip computer mode. Then, you can check the temperature status of the dual clutch.




OJF058368L

- Select trip computer mode on the LCD display and move to the transmission temperature screen to see the temperature of the dual clutch transmission.
- When the transmission is overheated, the warning message will display on the LCD. Follow the displayed message.
- The transmission temperature is displayed in three colors (white, orange and red) as it increases. (if equipped with the color type cluster) if equipped with the mono type cluster. temperature gauge is displayed in one color (white).
- Orange temperature gauge is displayed right before the warning message appears on the LCD display. (if equipped)

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***To hold the vehicle on a hill use the foot brake or the parking brake. If the vehicle is held by applying the accelerator pedal on a hill the transmission will overheat resulting in damage.***
- ***To maintain the optimal transmission performance, drive so that the transmission temperature remains white on the temperature gauge. (if equipped)***

### *DCT warning messages*

■ Type A




OJF058362L

■ Type B




OJF058363L

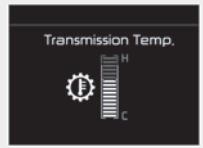
This warning message is displayed when the vehicle is driven slowly on a grade and the vehicle detects that the brake pedal is not applied.

### Steep grade

Driving up hills or on steep grades:

- To hold the vehicle on an incline use the foot brake or the parking brake.
- If the vehicle is held on a hill by applying the accelerator pedal or by creeping forward with the brake pedal dis-engaged, the clutch and transmission may overheat which can result in damage. At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display.
- If the LCD warning is active, the foot brake must be applied.
- Ignoring the warnings can lead to damage to the transmission.

■ Type A




OJF058364L

■ Type B




OJF058365L

■ Type A




OJF058449L

■ Type B




OJF058450L

### Transmission high temperature

- Under certain conditions, such as repeated stop-and-go launches on steep grades, sudden take off or acceleration, or other harsh driving conditions, the transmission clutch temperatures will increase excessively. This could cause the clutch in the transmission to overheat.
- When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode engages and the gear position indicator on the cluster blinks with a chime. At this time, “Transmission temp. is high! Stop safely” warning message will appear on the LCD display.
- If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, stop the vehicle with the engine running, apply the brakes and shift the vehicle to P (Park), and allow the transmission to cool.
- If you ignore this warning, the driving condition may become worse. You may experience abrupt shifts, frequent shifts, or jerkiness. To return to the normal driving condition, stop the vehicle and apply the foot brake and shift into P (Park).

  Then allow the transmission to cool for a few minutes with engine on, before driving off.
- When possible, drive the vehicle smoothly.

■ Type A




OJF058368L

■ Type B




OJF058369L

■ Type A




OJF058370L

■ Type B




OJF058371L

■ Type A




OJF058372L

■ Type B




OJF058373L

**Transmission overheated**

- If the vehicle continues to be driven and the clutch temperatures reach the maximum temperature limit, the “Transmission Hot! Park with engine on” warning will be displayed. When this occurs the clutch is disabled until the clutch cools to normal temperatures.
- The warning will display a time to wait for the transmission to cool.
- If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, stop the vehicle with the engine running, apply the brakes and shift the vehicle to P (Park), and allow the transmission to cool.
- When the message “Trans cooled. Resume driving.” appears you can continue to drive your vehicle.
- When possible, drive the vehicle smoothly.

If any of the warning messages in the LCD display continue to blink, for your safety, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

### *Transmission ranges*

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift from P (Park), you must depress the brake pedal and make sure your foot is off the accelerator pedal.

**If you have done all of the above and still cannot shift the lever out of P (Park), see “Shift-Lock Release” in this chapter.**

The shift lever must be in P (Park) before turning the engine off.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the shift lever is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.**
- **When parking on an incline, block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling down.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.**

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion.***

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop with the engine ON. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Shifting into gear when the engine is running at high speed can cause the vehicle to move very rapidly. You may lose control of the vehicle and cause accidents.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral). The engine brake will not work which could increase the risk of an accident.**

**- Parking in N (Neutral) gear**

Follow the steps below when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to [P] with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
   - For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles, push the brake pedal with the ignition button in [ON] or while the engine is running to disengage the parking brake. If [AUTO HOLD] function is used while driving (If [AUTO HOLD] indicator is on in the cluster), press [AUTO HOLD] switch and [AUTO HOLD] function swill be turned off.
3. While pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button [OFF].
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to [OFF] only when the shift lever is in [P].
4. Change the gear shift lever to [N] (Neutral) while pressing the brake pedal and pushing [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] button or inserting a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **With the exception of parking in neutral gear so that you can push the vehicle, always park the vehicle in [P] (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.**
- **Before parking in [N] (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in [N] gear on any slopes or gradients.**

  **If parked and left in [N], the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **After the ignition switch has been turned off, the electronic parking brake cannot be disengaged.**
- **For EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) equipped vehicles with [AUTO HOLD] function used while driving, if the ignition button has been turned [OFF], the electronic parking brake will be engaged automatically. Therefore, [AUTO HOLD] function should be turned off before the ignition button is turned off.**

**D (Drive)**

This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a seven-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

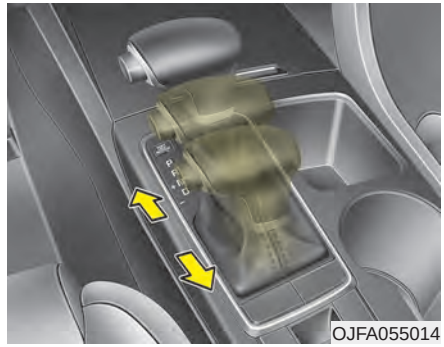
For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill depress the accelerator pedal further until you feel the transmission downshift to a lower gear.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Shifting into gear when the engine is running at high speed can cause the vehicle to move very rapidly. You may lose control of the vehicle and cause accidents.**
- **Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral). The engine brake will not work which could increase the risk of an accident.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**Always make sure the vehicle is stationary, at a complete stop, before selecting D (Drive).**




**Manual mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to select the desired range of gears for the current driving conditions.

+ (Up) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

- (Down) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Only the seven forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **Downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **When the engine rpm approaches the red zone the transmission will upshift automatically.**
- **If the driver presses the lever to + (Up) or - (Down) position, the transmission may not make the requested gear change if the next gear is outside of the allowable engine rpm range. The driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine rpms below the red zone.**

### *Shift lock system*

For your safety, the Dual clutch transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

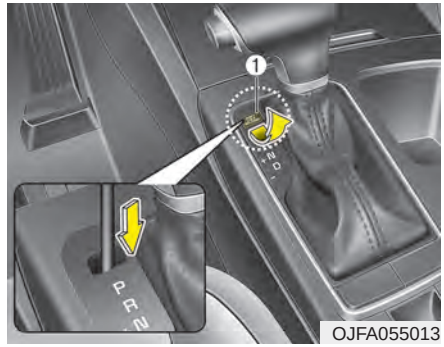
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the car.**



OJFA055013

**Shift-lock override**

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.

5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorized Kia dealer/service partner.

**Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)**

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When you stay in the vehicle with the engine running, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. The engine or exhaust system may overheat and start a fire. The exhaust gas and the exhaust system are very hot. Keep away from the exhaust system components. Do not stop or park over flammable materials, such as dry grass, paper or leave. They may ignite and cause a fire.**

## Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.

- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the car from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

***Moving up a steep grade from a standing start***

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the brake pedal.

# BRAKE SYSTEM

## Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ CAUTION - Brake Pedal**

***Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormally high brake temperatures which can cause excessive brake lining and pad wear.***

**⚠ WARNING - Steep hill braking**

**Avoid continuous application of the brakes when descending a long or steep hill by shifting to a lower gear. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**

Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.

### *In the event of brake failure*

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**Avoid applying the parking brake to stop the vehicle while it is moving except in an emergency situation. Applying the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.**

### *Disc brakes wear indicator*

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.

**⚠ CAUTION - Replace brake pads**

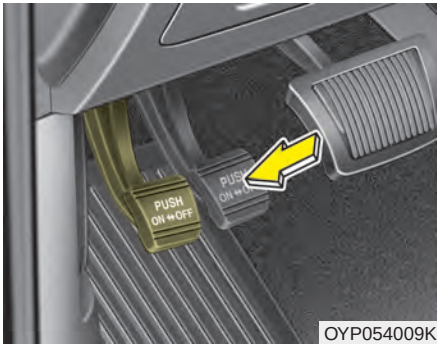
***Do not continue to drive with worn brake pads. Continuing to drive with worn brake pads can damage the braking system and result in costly brake repairs.***

**⚠ WARNING - Brake wear**

**Do not ignore high pitched wear sounds from your brakes. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.**

## Parking brake – Foot type (if equipped)

### *Applying the parking brake*

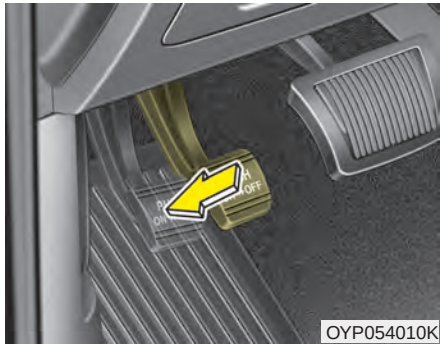



To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then depress the parking brake pedal down as far as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION - Parking brake**

***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad (or lining) and brake rotor wear.***

### *Releasing the parking brake*




To release the parking brake, depress the parking brake pedal a second time while applying the foot brake. The pedal will automatically extend to the fully released position.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake use**

- **Never allow a passenger to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parked to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicles which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**




W-75

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

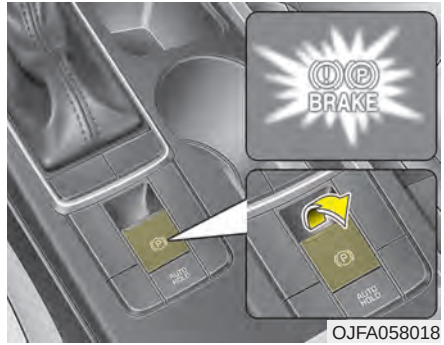
Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

## Electronic parking brake (EPB) (if equipped)

### *Applying the parking brake*




OJFA058018

**To apply the EPB (electronic parking brake):**

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the warning light comes on.

- If Auto Hold is operating (Green light), EPB is applied automatically when the engine is turned off.
- If Auto Hold is in ready position (White light), EPB is applied automatically after 1 second from the engine off timing. In this case, if the EPB switch is pressed within 1 second, the EPB will not be applied.

### ✻ NOTICE

**On a steep incline or when pulling a trailer, if the vehicle does not remain at a standstill, do as follows:**

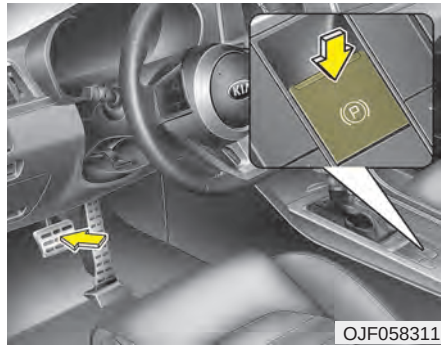
**1. Apply the EPB.**
**2. Pull up the EPB switch for more than 3 seconds.**

Do not operate the parking brake/ EPB while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.

### ✻ NOTICE

**A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.**

### *Releasing the parking brake*




**To release the EPB (electronic parking brake), press the EPB switch while doing the following:**

- Have the ignition switch or engine start/stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- The shift lever must be in P (Park).

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

**To release EPB (electronic parking brake) automatically:**

- Shift lever in P (Park)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)

  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission vehicle

  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine hood and trunk.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in R (Rear), D (Drive) or Sports mode.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the ignition switch or engine stop/start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

**Do not follow the above procedure when driving on a flat level ground. The vehicle may suddenly move forward.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***

**EPB (electronic parking brake) may be automatically applied when:**

- The EPB is overheated
- Requested by other systems

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the driver turns the engine off by mistake while Auto Hold is operating, EPB will be automatically applied. (Vehicles equipped with Auto Hold)**

### *System warning*




OJF058249L

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but the EPB doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the engine hood, driver's door or trunk is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

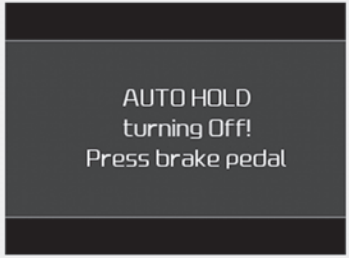
**⚠ WARNING - Parking Brake Use**

**All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parked to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.
- The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.
- When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.

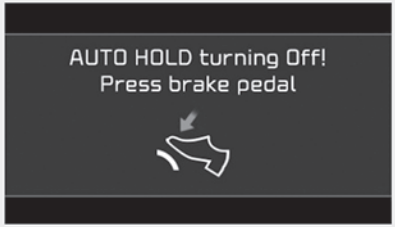
### *System warning*

■ Type A




OJF058374L

■ Type B




OJF058375L

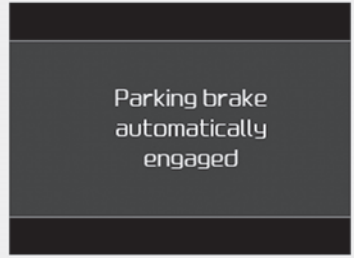
When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Depress the brake pedal when the above message appears for the Auto Hold and EPB may not activate.**

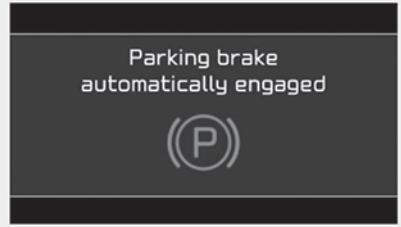
### *System warning*

■ Type A




OJF058376L

■ Type B




OJF058377L

If the EPB is applied while Auto Hold is activated because of an ESC (Electronic Stability Control) signal, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

### *EPB malfunction indicator (if equipped)*




OJF055056

This warning light illuminates if the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch or the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

- The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.
- If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.
- If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *Emergency braking*

If there is a problem with the brake pedal while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only while you are holding the EPB switch.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not operate the electronic parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. Applying the electronic parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the electronic parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.**

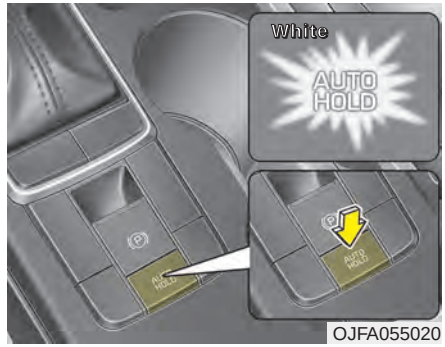
If you notice a continuous noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

### *When the EPB (electronic parking brake) is not released*

If the EPB does not release normally, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

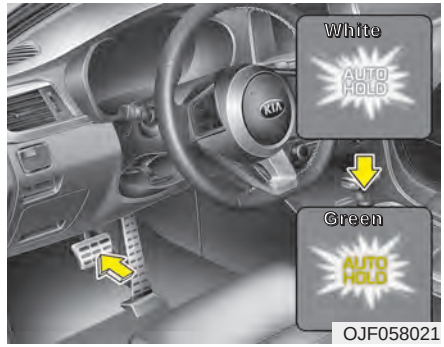
## AUTO HOLD (if equipped)

The Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.




1. Depress the brake pedal, start the engine and then press the Auto Hold button. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on indicating the system is in standby.

   Before the Auto Hold will engage, the driver's door and engine hood must be closed.



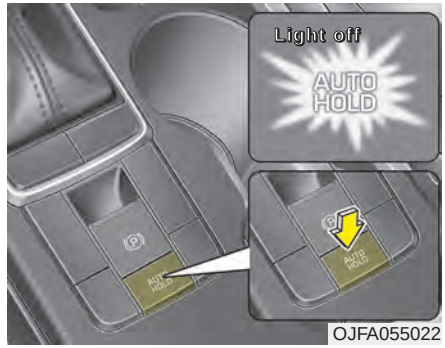

2. When coming to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green indicating the AUTO HOLD is engaged and EPB is applied. The vehicle will remain at a standstill even if you release the brake pedal.
3. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

4. If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in D (Drive) or manual mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The indicator changes from green to white indicating the Auto Hold is in standby and the EPB is released.

When driving off from Auto Hold by depressing the accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth launch.

***Cancel***




To cancel the Auto Hold operation, press the Auto Hold switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will go out.

To cancel the Auto Hold operation when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the Auto Hold switch while depressing the brake pedal.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The following are conditions when the Auto Hold will not engage (Auto Hold light will not turn green and the Auto Hold system remains in stand by):**
  - **Driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The shift lever is in P (Park) or R (Reverse)**
  - **The EPB is applied**
- **For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB under any of the following conditions (Auto Hold light remains white and the EPB automatically applies):**
  - **Driver's door is opened**
  - **The engine hood is opened**
  - **The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes**
  - **The vehicle is standing on a steep slope**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**In these cases, the brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press foot brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release parking brake manually with the EPB switch.**

- **If the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of an accident, do not activate Auto Hold while driving downhill, backing up or parking your vehicle.**

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or engine hood open detection system, the Auto Hold may not work properly.

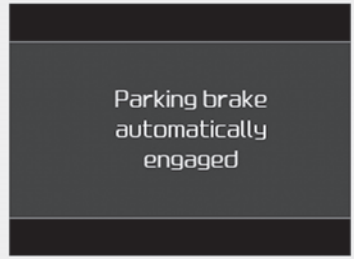
Take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

## ✻ NOTICE

**A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.**

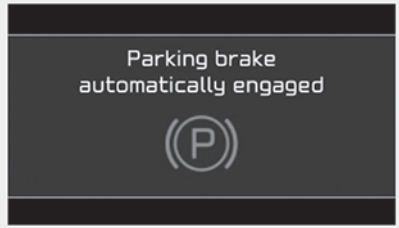
### *Warning messages*

■ Type A




OJF058376L

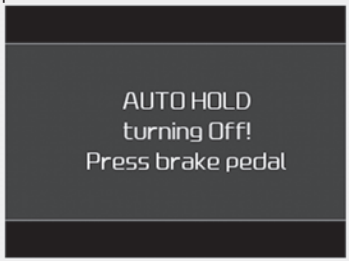
■ Type B




OJF058377L

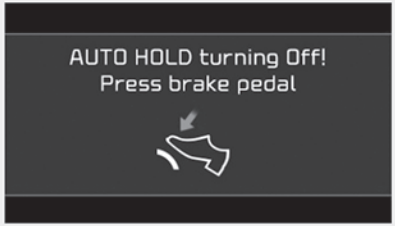
When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

■ Type A




OJF058374L

■ Type B



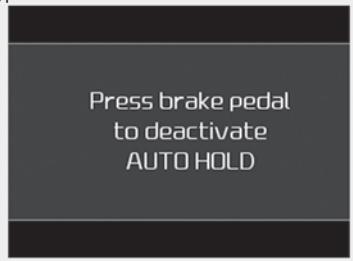

OJF058375L

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

## ✻ NOTICE

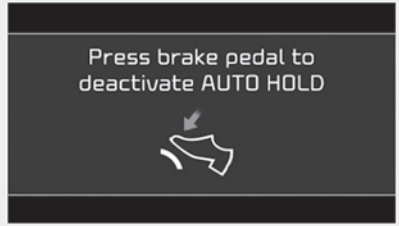
**When this message is displayed, the Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.**

■ Type A




OJF058380L

■ Type B




OJF058381L

If you do not apply the brake pedal when you release the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.




OJF058379L

**AUTO HOLD conditions not met. Close door, hood**

When you press the [AUTO HOLD] switch, if the driver's door and engine hood are not closed, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the LCD display. At this moment, press the [AUTO HOLD] button after closing the driver's door and engine hood.

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds in the following circumstances:

- When driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains installed
- When driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface heights.

Driving in these conditions increases the stopping distance for your vehicle.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

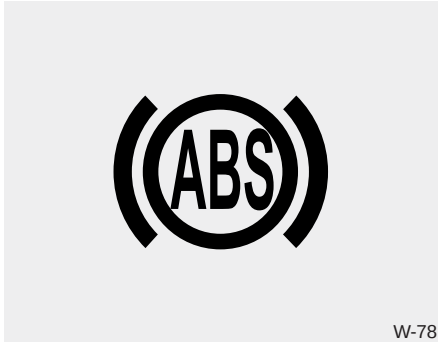
When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a "tik-tik" sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible to allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

### ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.**

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.



W-78

The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. Contact an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

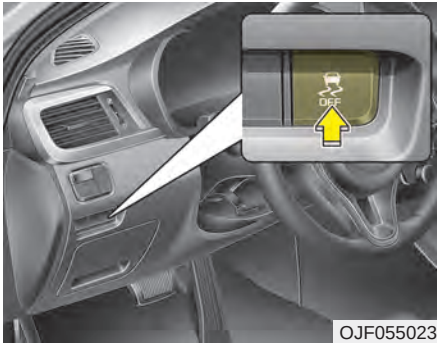
- When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and have operated your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the engine.
- Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light goes off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. Contact an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

## ✻ NOTICE

**When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS has malfunctioned.**

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

## Electronic stability control (ESC)




The Electronic Stability control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes on individual wheels and intervenes with the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For maximum protection, always wear your seat belt. No system, no matter how advanced, can compensate for all driver error and/or driving conditions. Always drive responsibly.**

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

**✻ NOTICE**

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control System is functioning properly.**

### *ESC operation*

**ESC ON condition**

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

**When operating**



When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

### *ESC operation off*

**ESC OFF state**




There are 2 types of ESC OFF states; Traction Control disabled and Traction & Stability Control disabled.

If the ignition is turned off when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

■ Type A




OJF058384L

■ Type B




OJF058385L

**• ESC off state 1**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate.

It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.

■ Type A




OJF058386L

■ Type B




OJF058387L

**• ESC off state 2**

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound.

At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

### *Indicator light*

■ ESC indicator light



■ ESC OFF indicator light




When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ WARNING - Electronic stability control**

**Drive carefully even though your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control. It can only assist you in maintaining control under certain circumstances.**

*ESC OFF usage*

**When driving**

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

**⚠ WARNING - Operating ESC**

**Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).**

**If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

### Vehicle stability management (VSM)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detects changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire/ Wheel size**

**When replacing tires and wheels, make sure they are the same size as the original tires and wheels installed. Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may diminish any supplemental safety benefits of the VSM system.**

### *VSM operation*

When the VSM is in operation, ESC indicator light ( ) blinks.

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle and/or abnormal steering responses (EPS- Electronic Power Steering). This is only the effect of brake and EPS control and indicates nothing unusual.

**The VSM does not operate when:**

- Driving on a sloping road such as a gradient or incline
- Driving in reverse
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- EPS indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

### *VSM operation off*

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

**⚠ WARNING**
**- Vehicle stability management**

**Drive carefully even though your vehicle has Vehicle stability management. It can only assist you in maintaining control under certain circumstances.**

### *Malfunction indicator*

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Electric Power Steering system or VSM system. If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

**✻ NOTICE**

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 13 mph (22 km/h) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu surface. A split-mu surface is made of two surfaces which have different friction forces.**

- The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly while driving.
- Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions – including driving in inclement weather and on a slippery road.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For maximum protection, always wear your seat belt. No system, no matter how advanced, can compensate for all driver error and/or driving conditions. Always drive responsibly.**

## Hill-start assist control (HAC)

A vehicle has the tendency to roll back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from rolling back by applying the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING - Maintaining Brake Pressure on Incline**

**HAC does not replace the need to apply brakes while stopped on an incline. While stopped, make sure you maintain brake pressure sufficient to prevent your vehicle from rolling backward and causing an accident. Don't release the brake pedal until you are ready to accelerate forward.**

## Good braking practices

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and call an authorized Kia dealer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.

- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because the brakes might overheat and lose their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission, don't let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on an incline with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

## FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) (CAMERA TYPE) (IF EQUIPPED)

The FCA system is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle ahead in the roadway through camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

❊ Camera type FCA system does not operate for pedestrians in front.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions when using the forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA):**

- **This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or while cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. FCA does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.**

### System setting and activation

#### *System setting*

The driver can activate the FCA by placing the ignition switch to the ON position and by selecting:

"User Settings → Driver assistance → Forward safety"

- If you select "Active assist", the FCA system activates. The FCA produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.
- If you select "Warning only", the FCA system activates and produces only warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels. You should control the brake directly because the FCA system do not control the brake.
- If you select "Off", the FCA system deactivates.



The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel the FCA system. The driver can monitor the FCA ON/OFF status on the LCD display. Also, the warning light illuminates when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is turned off. When the warning light remains ON with the FCA activated, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time on the LCD display.

Go to the "User Settings → Driver assistance → Warning timing → Normal/Later".

The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning includes the following:

- Normal:

When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle ahead before the initial warning occurs.

- Later:

When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle ahead before the initial warning occurs.

Select 'Later' when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.

If the vehicle in front puts on a burst of speed, the driver can notice the warning alarm is early even though the later option is selected.

***Prerequisite for activation***

The FCA gets ready to be activated, when the Active Assist or Warning Only under the Forward Safety is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The ESC is activated.
- The driving speed is over 10km/h. (However, FCA is activated within certain driving speed.)
- When recognizing the vehicle in front. (However, FCA does not activate according to conditions in front and vehicle systems, but it notices only certain warnings.)
- FCA does not operate properly or it only produces a warning alarms in accordance with the driving or vehicle condition.
- If the warning only under the Forward Safety is selected, FCA produces only warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The FCA automatically activates upon placing the ignition switch to the ON position. The driver can deactivate the FCA by canceling the system setting on the LCD display.**
- **The FCA automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC. When the ESC is canceled, the FCA cannot be activated on the LCD display.**

  **The FCA warning light will illuminate, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the system.**
- **Set or cancel FCA with controlling switches on steering wheel after stopping the vehicle in the safe place for your safety.**

## FCA warning message and system control

The FCA produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels of followings like vehicle's sudden braking in front or lack of vehicle to vehicle distance. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.

*Collision Warning (1st warning)*




OJF058389L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The FCA controls the brakes within certain limit to release shock from the collision.
  - If you select "Warning only", the FCA system activates and produces only warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels. You should control the brake directly because the FCA system do not control the brake.

*Emergency braking (2nd warning)*




OJF058390L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The FCA controls the brakes within certain limit to release shock from the collision.

  The FCA controls the maximum brakes just before the collision.

  - If you select "Warning only", the FCA system activates and produces only warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels. You should control the brake directly because the FCA system do not control the brake.

## Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing the brake pedal.
- The FCA provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the brake or accelerator pedal, or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The braking control is automatically canceled, when risk factors disappear.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***The driver should always pay great caution to vehicle operation, even though there is no warning message or warning alarm.***

### ⚠ WARNING

**The FCA cannot avoid all collisions. The FCA might not completely stop the vehicle before collision, due to ambient, weather and road conditions. The driver has the responsibility to drive safely and control the vehicle.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**The FCA operates in accordance with the risk levels, such as the distance from the vehicle in front, the speed of the vehicle in front, and the driver's vehicle operation.**

**For the system to activate, do not attempt risky driving.**

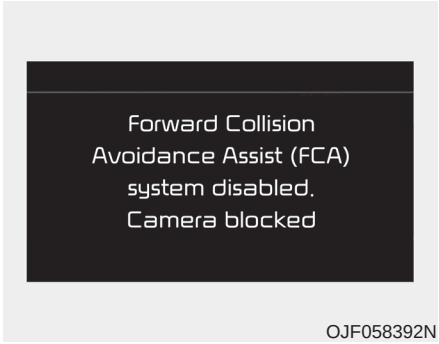
### FCA front view camera sensor




In order for the FCA system to operate properly, always make sure the sensor is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris.

Dirt, snow, or foreign substances on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor.

***Warning message and warning light***




When the camera is blocked with dirt, snow, or debris, the FCA operation may temporarily stop. In this case, the warning message appears to warn the driver.

This is not a malfunction with the FCA. To operate the FCA again, remove the foreign substances.

The FCA may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substances are not detected after turning ON the engine.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The FCA system may not activate without any warning messeges according to driving condition, traffic on the road, weather, road condition, etc.**

**✻ NOTICE**

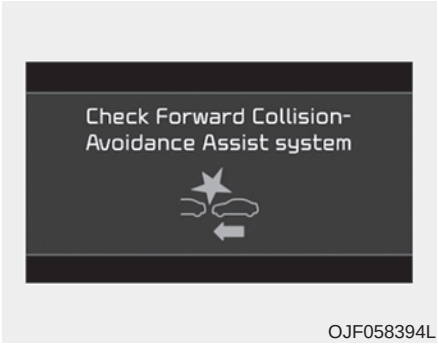
- **Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor.**
- **Always keep the sensor clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the sensor. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the FCA system may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. In this case, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system inspected.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Use only genuine parts to repair or replace a damaged**
- **Do not tint the window or install stickers, accessories around the inside mirror where the camera is installed.**
- **Make sure the frontal camera installation point does not get wet.**
- **Do not impact or arbitrarily remove any camera components.**
- **Do not place reflective objects(white paper or mirror etc.) on the crash pad.**
  **The system may activate unnecessarily due to reflect of the sunlight.**
- **Excessive audio volume may disturb the sound of the system warning alarm.**
- **For more cautions for the camera sensor, refer to the Lane Keeping Assist system in this chapter.**

### System malfunction




OJF058394L

- When the FCA is not working properly, the FCA warning light (⚠) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate. In this case, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system inspected.
- The FCA system will get deactivated for the sake of driver's safety when the ESC warning light comes on. The FCA warning message will appear at the same time, too. But that doesn't necessarily mean the malfunction of the FCA system.

Both FCA warning light and warning message will disappear once the ESC warning light issue is resolved.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The FCA is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on the FCA system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed.**
- **In certain instances and under certain driving conditions, the FCA system may activate unintentionally. This initial warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Also, in certain instances the camera recognition system may not detect the vehicle ahead. The FCA system may not activate and the warning message will not be displayed.**

- **Even if there is any problem with the brake control function of the FCA system, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate normally. However, brake control function for avoiding collision will not activate.**
- **If the vehicle in front stops suddenly, you may have less control of the brake system. Therefore, always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The FCA system may activate during braking and the vehicle may stop suddenly shifting loose objects toward the passengers. Always keep loose objects secured.**
- **The FCA system may not activate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid a collision.**
- **The FCA system operates only to detect vehicles in front of the vehicle.**
- **The FCA system does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse.**
- **The FCA system is not designed to detect other objects on the road such as animals.**
- **The FCA system does not detect vehicles in the opposite lane.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The FCA system does not detect cross traffic vehicles that are approaching.**
- **The FCA system cannot detect the driver approaching the side view of a parked vehicle (for example on a dead end street.)**

**In these cases, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.**

## Limitation of the system

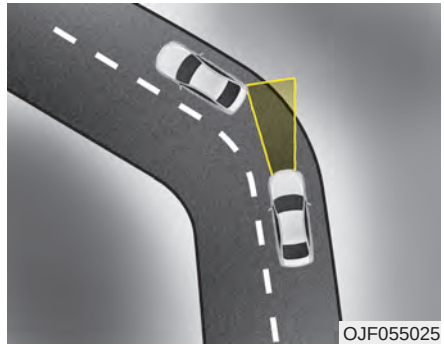
The FCA is an assistant system for a driver in a certain risky driving condition and it does not take every responsibility for all risks from driving condition.

The FCA monitors the driving situations through the camera sensor. Thus, for a situation out of the sensing range, the FCA may not normally operate. The driver should pay great caution in the following situations. The FCA operation may be limited.

***Recognizing vehicles***

- The camera is contaminated with foreign substances.
- It heavily rains or snows.
- There is interruption by electric waves.
- The vehicle in front has a narrow body. (i.e. motor cycle and bicycle)
- The driver’s view is unclear due to the backlight, the reflected light, or darkness.
- The camera cannot contain the full image of the vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is a special vehicle, such as a heavily-loaded truck or a trailer.
- The outside brightness is greatly changed, such as entering/exiting the tunnel.
- The vehicle driving is unstable.
- The camera sensor recognition is limited.
- The driver's field of view is not well illuminated (either too dark or too much reflection or too much backlight that obscures the field of view)
- The vehicle in front is driving erratically
- The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- Backlight is reflected in the direction of the vehicle (including front light from the vehicle ahead)
- Moisture on the windshield is not completely removed or frozen.
- The weather is misty.
- The vehicle in front does not turn ON the rear lights, does not have rear lights, has asymmetric rear lights, or has rear lights out of angle.
- The vehicle is on unpaved or uneven rough surfaces, or roads with sudden gradient changes

- The vehicle is moving under ground level or inside a building
- If a sudden change in the sensor recognition takes place while passing through the speed bump,
- When the vehicle is severely shaken,
- When driving around circular intersection after the vehicle in front,
- If the front of the camera lens is contaminated by front glass tinting, film, water repellent coating, damage on glass, foreign matter (sticker, insect, etc.)
- The camera or camera lens is damaged.
- If the headlights of the vehicle are not used at night or in the tunnel section, or the light is too weak
- If street light or the light of the vehicle coming from the opposite is reflected or when sunlight is reflected by the water on the road surface
- When the back light is projected in the direction of the vehicle's motion (including the headlights of vehicles)
- Road sign, shadow on the road, tunnel entrance, toll gate, partial pavement
- If the windshield has moisture on its surface or if windshield freezes,
- Driving in the fog.
- When objects are out of the sensing range of the camera


OJF055025

- Driving on a curve

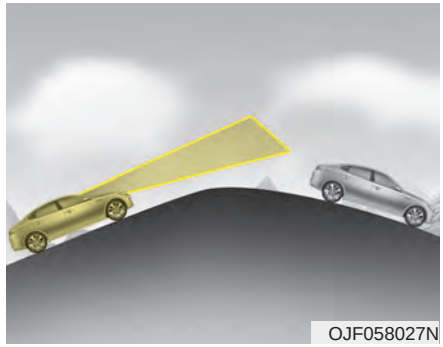
The FCA performance decreases while driving on a curve. The FCA may not recognize the vehicle in front even in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

While driving on a curve, pay great caution, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.


OJF055026

While driving on a curve, the FCA may recognize the vehicle in front in the next lane. Pay great caution, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.

Or, depress the accelerator pedal to maintain the driving speed. Always, take a look around the vehicle for your safety.

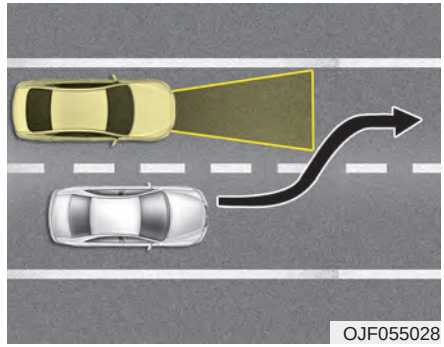

OJF058027N

- Driving on a slope

The FCA performance decreases while driving upward or downward on a slope, not recognizing the vehicle in front in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

When the FCA suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front while passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

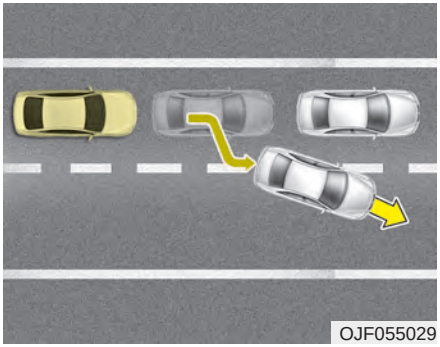
Always keep your eyes forward while driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.


OJF055028

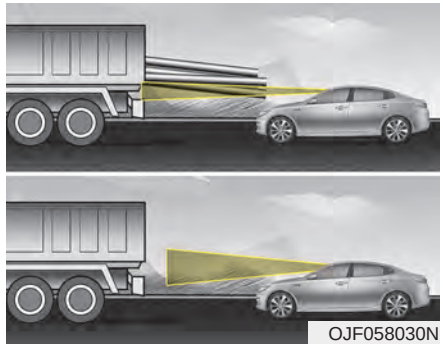
- Changing lanes

Even though the vehicle in the next lane enters into your lane, it may not be recognized by the FCA, until it enters the FCA sensing range.

Especially when the vehicle in the next lane abruptly enters into your lane, it is more likely not be recognized. Always pay great attention.


OJF055029

When the stopped vehicle in front gets out of the lane, it may not be recognized by your FCA. Always pay great attention.


OJF058030N

- Recognizing the vehicle

When the vehicle in front has heavy loading extended rearward, or when the vehicle in front has higher ground clearance, it may induce a hazardous situation.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not use the Forward Collision avoidance Assist (FCA) system when towing a vehicle. Application of the FCA system while towing may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle or the towing vehicle.**
- **Use extreme caution when the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance.**
- **The FCA system is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle ahead in the roadway through camera recognition. It is not designed to detect bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never try to test the operation of the FCA system. Doing so may cause severe injury or death.**
- **If the front glass or camera have been replaced or repaired, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**

## ✻ NOTICE

**In some instances, the FCA system may be cancelled when subjected to electromagnetic interference.**

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.**

Operation is subject to the following three conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
3. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

**Radio frequency radiation exposure information:**

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) (SMART CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM EQUIPPED) (IF EQUIPPED)

The FCA system is designed to detect and monitor a vehicle ahead or detect a pedestrian in the roadway through radar signals and camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

**⚠ WARNING - Forward Collision-Avoidance assist (FCA) Limitations**

**The FCA system is a supplemental system and is not a substitute for safe driving practices.**

**It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead and to be prepared to apply the brakes.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take the following precautions with respect to the forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA) system:**

- **This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or while cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. FCA does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.**

## System setting and activation

### *System setting*

The driver can activate the FCA by placing the ignition switch to the ON position and by selecting 'User Settings', 'Driver Assistance', and 'forward collision-avoidance assist'. The FCA deactivates, when the driver cancels the system setting.



The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel the FCA system. The driver can monitor the FCA ON/OFF status on the LCD display. Also, the warning light illuminates when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is turned off (Traction & Stability control disabled.).

When the warning light remains ON with the FCA activated, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the instrument cluster LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include the following:

- EARLY - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximizes the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs. If the 'EARLY' condition feels too sensitive, change it into 'NORMAL'. When the vehicle ahead suddenly stops, the warning may seem to activate later even if the 'EARLY' condition was selected.
- NORMAL - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- LATE - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs. Select this condition only when traffic is light, and you are driving slowly.

***Prerequisite for activation***

The FCA will activate when the FCA is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is activated.
- The driving speed is over 6 mph (10 km/h). (The FCA only works within a certain range of vehicle speeds)
- When the FCA recognizes a vehicle or the pedestrian in front. (The FCA may not recognize every obstacle or provide warnings and braking in every situation, so do not rely on the FCA to stop the vehicle in instances where the driver sees an obstacle and has the ability to apply the brakes)

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The FCA automatically activates upon placing the ignition switch to the ON position. The driver can deactivate the FCA by canceling the system setting on the LCD display.**
- **The FCA automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC. When the ESC is canceled, the FCA cannot be activated on the LCD display.**

  **The FCA warning light will illuminate.**
- **Set or cancel FCA after stopping the vehicle in the safe place for your safety.**

## FCA warning message and system control

The FCA system produces warning messages, warning alarms, and emergency braking based on the level of risk of a frontal collision, such as when a vehicle ahead suddenly brakes, or when the system detects that a collision with a pedestrian is imminent.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include Early, Normal or Late initial warning time.

***Collision Warning (1st warning)***




OJF058389L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The FCA controls the brakes within certain limit to reduce the impact from the collision.

***Emergency braking (2nd warning)***




OJF058390L

- The warning message appears on the LCD display with the warning alarms.
- The FCA controls the brakes within certain limit to reduce the impact from the collision.

  The FCA controls the maximum brakes just before the collision.

## Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction to assist the driver in depressing the brake pedal.
- The FCA provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated when the driver sharply depresses the brake or accelerator pedal or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The braking control is automatically canceled when risk factors disappear.

The driver should always pay great caution to vehicle operation, even though there is no warning message or warning alarm.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The FCA cannot avoid all collisions. The FCA might not completely stop the vehicle before collision, due to ambient, weather and road conditions. The driver has the responsibility to drive safely and control the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The FCA is a supplemental system and cannot completely stop the vehicle in all situations or avoid all collisions. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely drive and control the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

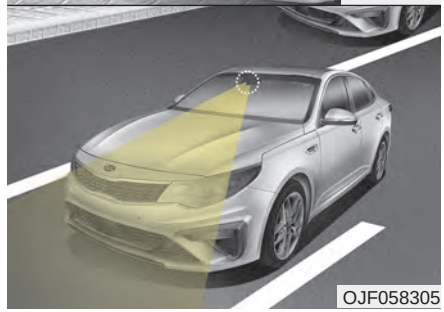
**Never deliberately drive dangerously to activate the system as such conduct increases the risk of an accident.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The FCA system assesses the risk of a collision by monitoring several variables such as the distance to the vehicle/pedestrian ahead, the speed of the vehicle/pedestrian ahead, and the driver's operation of the vehicle. Certain conditions such as inclement weather and road conditions may affect the operation of the FCA system.**
**For the system operation, do not attempt risky driving.**

### FCA front radar/Camera sensor


OJF058304


OJF058305

In order for the FCA system to operate properly, always make sure the sensor or sensor cover is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris. Dirt, snow, or foreign substances on the sensor or its external parts may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor.

## ✻ NOTICE

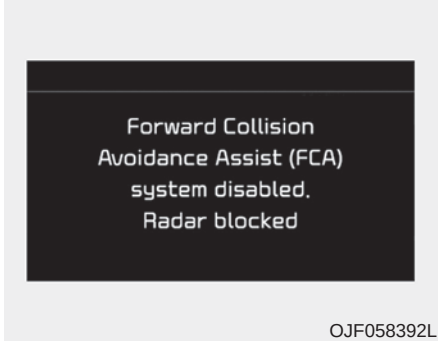
- **Do not apply foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.**
- **Always keep the radar sensor and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Use only soft clothes to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the FCA system may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. Have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**
- **If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the FCA system may not operate properly. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Use only genuine parts to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.**
- **Do not tint the window or install stickers or accessories around the inside mirror where the camera is installed.**
- **Make sure the frontal camera installation point does not get wet.**
- **Do not impact or remove any radar/camera components.**
- **Do not place reflective objects(white paper or mirror etc.) on the dashboard. The system may activate unnecessarily due to reflection of the sunlight.**
- **Excessive audio system volume may prevent occupants from hearing the FCA system warning alarm.**

### *Warning message and warning light*




OJF058392L

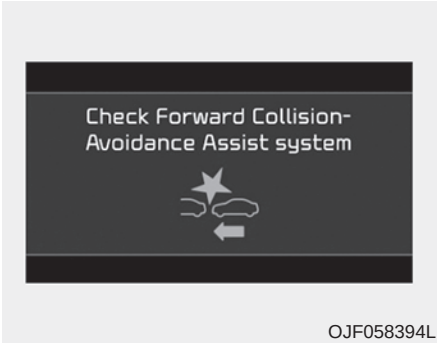
When the sensor is covered or the sensor lens is dirty with foreign substances, such as snow or rain, the FCA system may not be able to detect vehicles or pedestrians. In this case, a warning message (“Forward Collision Avoidance Assist (FCA) system disabled.

Radar blocked”) will appear to notify the driver. Remove the foreign substances to allow the FCA system to function normally.

Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor cover before operating the FCA system.

The FCA may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substances are not detected after turning ON the engine.

### System malfunction




OJF058394L

- When the FCA is not working properly, the FCA warning light ( ) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds.

  After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. In this case, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.
- The FCA system will get deactivated for the sake of driver's safety when the ESC warning light comes on. The FCA warning message will appear at the same time, too. But that doesn't necessarily mean the malfunction of the FCA system.

  Both FCA warning light and warning message will disappear once the ESC warning light issue is resolved.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The FCA is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on the FCA system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to lower the driving speed.**
- **In certain instances and under certain driving conditions, the FCA system may activate unintentionally. This initial warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Also, in certain instances the front radar sensor or camera recognition system may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist (if equipped) ahead. The FCA system may not activate and the warning message will not be displayed.**

- **The FCA may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarms. Also, due to the sensing limitation, the FCA may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.**
- **When there is a malfunction with the FCA, the braking control does not operate upon detecting a collision risk even with other braking systems normally operating.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The FCA operates only for the vehicle / pedestrian in front, while driving forward. It does not operate for any animals or vehicles in the opposite direction.**
- **The FCA does not recognize the vehicle, which horizontally drives across the crossroad, or the vehicle, which is parked in the horizontal direction.**
- **If the vehicle in front stops suddenly, you may have less control of the brake system. Therefore, always keep safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.**
- **The FCA system may activate during braking and the vehicle may stop suddenly. And the load in the vehicle may endanger passengers. Therefore, always be mindful of the load volume in the vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The FCA system may not activate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid risk of collision.**
- **If there is a malfunction with the FCA system, the autonomous emergency braking is not applied even thought the braking system is operating normally.**
- **The FCA system operates only to detect vehicles in front of the vehicle.**
- **The FCA system does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse.**
- **The FCA system is not designed to detect other objects on the road such as animals.**
- **The FCA system does not detect vehicles in the opposite lane.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The FCA system does not detect cross traffic vehicles that are approaching.**
- **The FCA system cannot detect the driver approaching the side view of a parked vehicle (for example on a dead end street.) In these cases, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.**
- **The regular braking function will operate normally even if There is a problem with the FCA brake control system or other functions. In this case, the braking control will not operate in the risk of a collision.**
- **The FCA system may not activate according to driving condition, traffic on the road, weather, road condition, etc.**
- **The FCA system may not activate to all types of vehicles.**

## Limitation of the system

The FCA is an assistant system for a driver in a certain risky driving condition and it does not take every responsibility for all risks from driving condition.

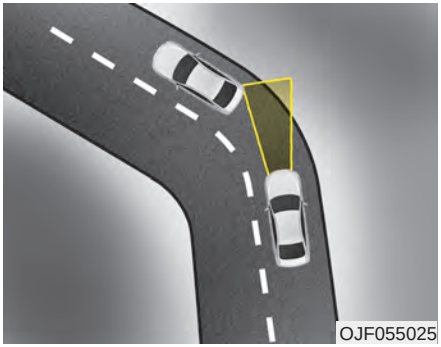
The FCA monitors the driving situations through the radar and the camera sensor. Thus, for a situation out of the sensing range, the FCA may not normally operate. The driver should pay great caution in the following situations. The FCA operation may be limited.

### *Recognizing vehicles*

The sensor may be limited when:

- The radar sensor or camera is blocked with a foreign object or debris
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windshield, damaged glass, or stuck of foreign matter (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow obscures the field of view of the radar sensor or camera
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves
- There is severe irregular reflection from the radar sensor
- The radar/camera sensor recognition is limited
- The vehicle in front is too small to be detected (for example a motorcycle etc.)
- The vehicle in front is an oversize vehicle or trailer that is too big to be detected by the camera recognition system (for example a tractor trailer, etc.)

- The camera's field of view is not well illuminated (either too dark or too much reflection or too much backlight that obscures the field of view)
- The vehicle in front does not have their rear lights or their rear lights does not turned ON or their rear lights are located unusually.
- The outside brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road • The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare
- The windshield glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed
- The vehicle in front is driving erratically
- The vehicle is on unpaved or uneven rough surfaces, or road with sudden gradient changes.
- The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement parking lot
- The camera does not recognize the entire vehicle in front.
- The camera is damaged.
- The brightness outside is too low such as when the headlamps are not on at night or the vehicle is going through a tunnel.
- The shadow is on the road by a median strip, trees, etc.
- The vehicle drives through a tollgate.
- The windshield glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed.
- The rear part of the vehicle in front is not normally visible. (the vehicle turns in other direction or the vehicle is overturned.)
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations while driving
- The sensor recognition changes suddenly when passing over a speed bump
- The vehicle in front is moving vertically to the driving direction
- The vehicle in front is stopped vertically
- The vehicle in front is driving towards your vehicle or reversing
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front circles

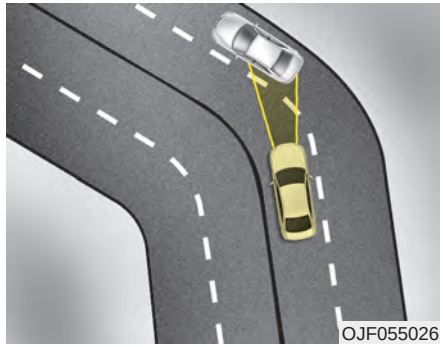

OJF055025

- Driving on a curve

The FCA performance decreases while driving on a curve. The FCA may not recognize the vehicle in front even in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

Also, in certain instances the front radar sensor or camera recognition system may not detect the vehicle traveling on a curved road.

In these cases, the driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

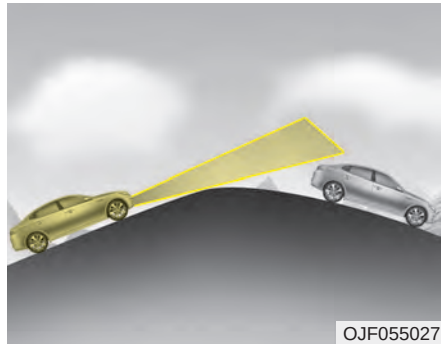

OJF055026

The FCA system may recognize a vehicle in the next lane when driving on a curved road.

In this case, the system may unnecessarily alarm the driver and apply the brake. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, while driving. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Also, when necessary depress the accelerator pedal to prevent the system from unnecessarily decelerating your vehicle.

Always, take a look around the vehicle for your safety.

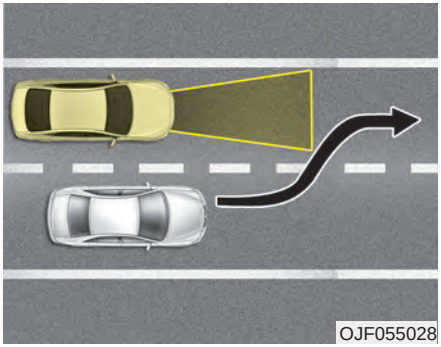

OJF055027

- Driving on a slope

The FCA performance decreases while driving upward or downward on a slope, not recognizing the vehicle in front in the same lane. It may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarm, or it may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.

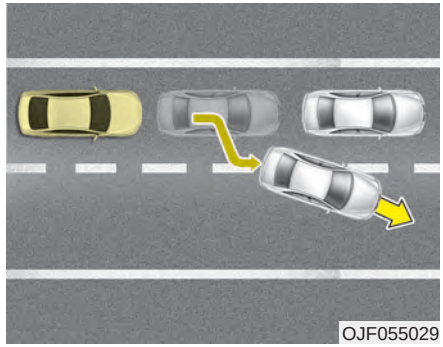
When the FCA suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front while passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

Always keep your eyes forward while driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal.

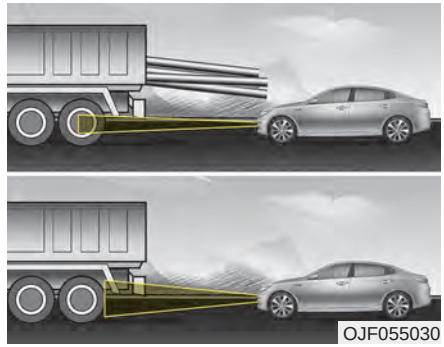

OJF055028

- Changing lanes

When a vehicle changes lanes in front of you, the FCA system may not immediately detect the vehicle, especially if the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.


OJF055029

When driving in stop-and-go traffic, and a stopped vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, the FCA system may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.


OJF055030

- Recognizing the vehicle

Detecting the vehicle in front of you If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required.

The FCA system may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

### Recognizing pedestrians

- The pedestrian is not fully captured by the camera sensor, or the pedestrian does not walk in the upright position.
- The pedestrian moves very fast.
- The pedestrian abruptly appears in front.
- The pedestrian wears clothes in the color similar to the background.
- The outside is too bright or too dark.
- The vehicle drives at night or in the darkness.
- There is an item similar to a person's body structure.
- The pedestrian is small.
- The pedestrian has impaired mobility.
- It is difficult to distinguish the pedestrian from the surroundings.
- The sensor recognition is limited.
- There is a group of pedestrians.
- If a sudden change in the sensor recognition takes place while passing through the speed bump.
- When the vehicle is severely shaken.
- When driving around circular intersection after the vehicle in front.
- If the front of the camera lens is contaminated by front glass tinting, film, water repellent coating, damage on glass, foreign matter (sticker, insect, etc.)
- The radar or camera or camera lens is damaged.
- If the headlights of the vehicle are not used at night or in the tunnel section, or the light is too weak.
- If street light or the light of the vehicle coming from the opposite is reflected or when sunlight is reflected by the water on the road surface.
- When the back light is projected in the direction of the vehicle's motion (including the headlights of vehicles).
- Road sign, shadow on the road, tunnel entrance, toll gate, partial pavement.
- If the windshield has moisture on its surface or if windshield freezes.- Driving in the fog.
- When objects are out of the sensing range of the sensor or radar.
- When the cyclist in front is riding intersected with the driving direction.
- When there is any other electromagnetic interference.
- When the construction area, rail or other metal object is near the cyclist.
- If the bicycle material is not reflected well on the radar.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Cancel the FCA in the User Settings on the LCD display, before towing another vehicle. While towing, the brake application may adversely affect your vehicle safety.**
- **Pay great caution to the vehicle in front, when it has heavy loading extended rearward, or when it has higher ground clearance.**
- **The FCA system is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or detect a pedestrian in the roadway through radar signals and camera recognition. It is not designed to detect bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The FCA does not operate in a certain situation. Thus, never test-operate the FCA against a person or an object. It may cause a severe injury or even death.**
- **When replacing or reinstalling the windshield, front bumper or radar/camera after removal, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The system may temporarily cancel due to the strong electric waves.**

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.**

Operation is subject to the following three conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
3. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

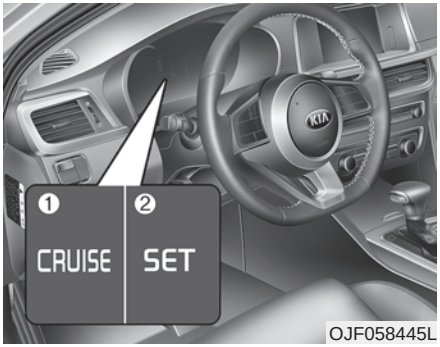
**Radio frequency radiation exposure information:**

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM




The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 20 mph (30 km/h).

If the cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated) the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.

Use the cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Do not use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.

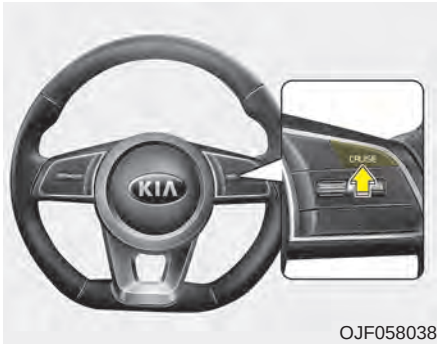
### ✻ NOTICE

- **During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will activate after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.**
- **To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.**

**⚠ WARNING - Misuse of Cruise Control**

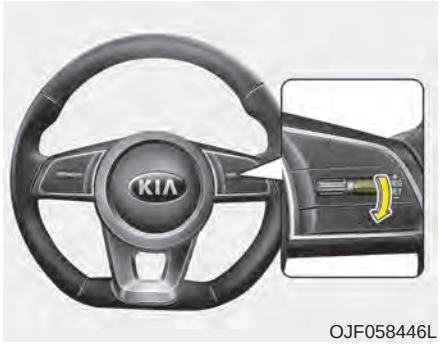
**Do not use cruise control if the traffic situation does not allow you to drive safely at a constant speed and with sufficient distance to the vehicle in front.**

### To set cruise control speed:



OJF058038

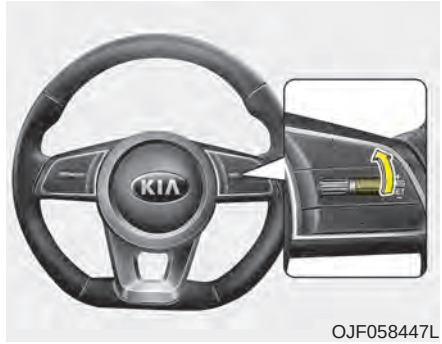
1. Press the CRUISE button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 20 mph (30 km/h).


OJF058446L

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. Release the accelerator at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

*On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down slightly when driving uphill or speed up slightly while going downhill.*

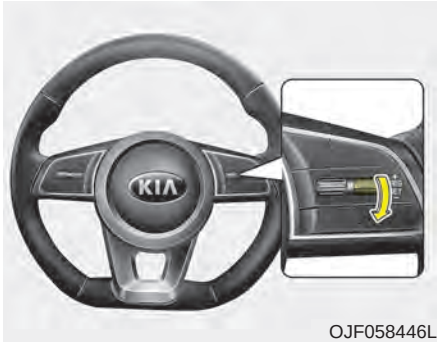
### To increase cruise control set speed:


OJF058447L

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 mph (2 km/h ) each time the lever is operated in this manner.

### To decrease the cruising speed:




OJF058446L

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever down (to SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 mph (2 km/h) each time the lever is operated in this manner.

### To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with the cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

### To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:

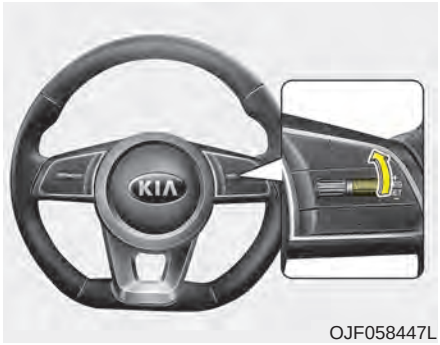



OJF058041

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Shift into N (Neutral) with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission.
- Press the CANCEL switch.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 12 mph (20 km/h).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 15 mph (25 km/h).

*Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move the lever up (to RES+). You will return to your previously preset speed.*

**To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 20 mph (30 km/h):**




OJF058447L

If any method other than the CRUISE ON-OFF switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move the lever up.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 20 mph (30 km/h).

**To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:**

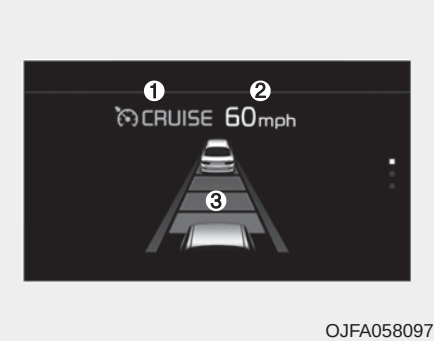



OJF058038

- Press the CRUISE button (the CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off).
- Turn the ignition off.

*Both of these actions will cancel the cruise control operation. If you want to resume the cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.*

## SMART CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP & GO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



OJFA058097

① Cruise indicator
② Set speed
③ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The smart cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed and distance to the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the smart cruise control system.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**To activate smart cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel smart cruise control is in normal condition.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**- Smart cruise control system Limitations**

**The smart cruise control system is a supplemental system and is not a substitute for safe driving practices. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- If the smart cruise control is left on, (cruise indicator in the instrument cluster illuminated) the smart cruise control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the smart cruise control system off (cruise indicator off) when the smart cruise control is not being used.
- Use the smart cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.
- Do not use the smart cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed. For instance.
  - Highway interchange and tollgate
  - Road surrounded by multiple steel constructions (subway construction, steel tunnel, etc)

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Parking lot
- Lanes beside guard rail on a road
- Slippery road with rain, ice, or snow
- Abrupt curved road
- Steep hills
- Windy roads
- Off roads
- Rods under construction
- Rumble strip
- When driving near crash barriers
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When the vehicle sensing ability decreases due to vehicle modification resulting level difference of the vehicle's front and rear

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When driving in heavy traffic or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed
- Limited visibility (rain, snow, smog, etc.)

- Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the smart cruise control system.
- Be careful when driving downhill using the SCC.
- Cruise function should not be used when the vehicle is being towed to prevent any damage.
- Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.
- Always pay continuous attention to road and driving conditions even when the smart cruise control system is being operated.

## Smart cruise control switch

CANCEL : Cancels cruise control operation.

CRUISE : Turns cruise control system on or off.

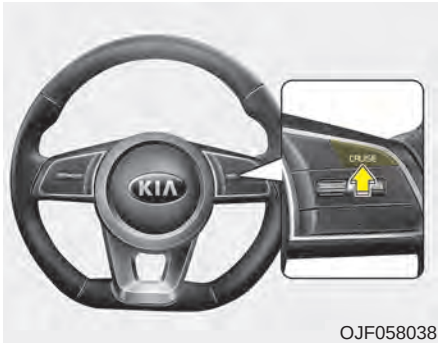
RES + : Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET - : Sets or decreases cruise control speed.

: Sets vehicle-to-vehicle distance

## Smart Cruise Control speed

***To set Smart Cruise Control Speed :***

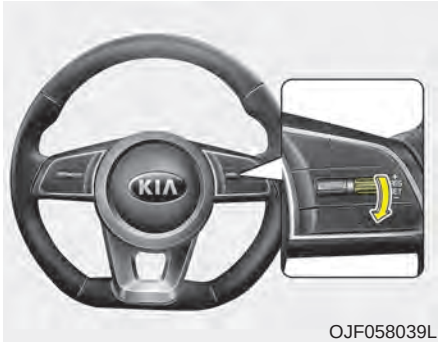



OJF058038

1. Press the CRUISE button, to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

   The smart cruise control speed can be set as follows:

   - 5 mph (10 km/h) ~ 110 mph (180 km/h): when there is no vehicle in front
   - 0 mph (0 km/h) ~ 110 mph (180 km/h): when there is a vehicle in front



OJF058039L

3. Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it at the desired speed. The set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD screen will illuminate.
4. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

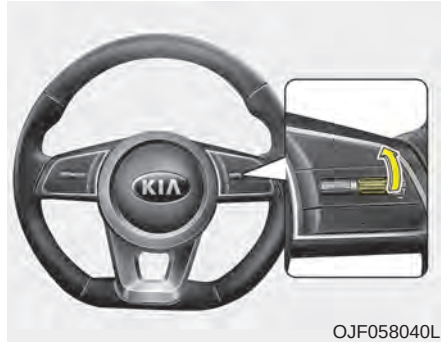
If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going uphill or downhill.

Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a ownward slope.

The speed will be set to 20 mph (30 km/h) when there is a vehicle ahead and your vehicle speed is 0 mph (0 km/h) ~ 20 mph (30 km/h).

***To increase cruise control set speed:***



OJF058040L

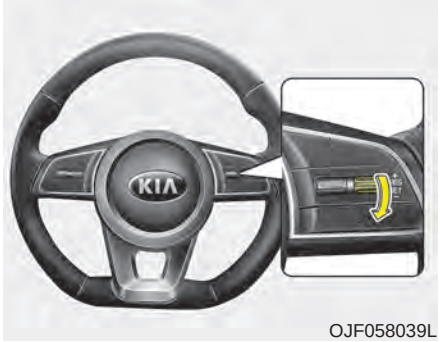
Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 5 mph (10 km/h). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 mph (1.0 km/h) each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 110 mph (180 km/h).

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Check the driving condition before using the toggle switch. Driving speed sharply increases, when you push up and hold the toggle switch.***

***To decrease the cruise control set speed:***




OJF058039L

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET-), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 5 mph (10 km/h). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever down (to SET-), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 mph (1.0 km/h) each time you move the lever down (to SET-) in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 20 mph (30 km/h).

***To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:***

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

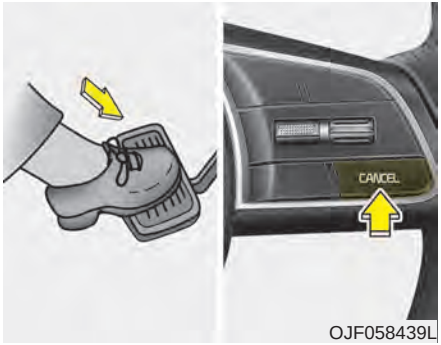
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

If you move the lever down (to SET-) at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not controlled automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.**

***Smart cruise control will be temporarily canceled when:***




**Cancelled manually**

The smart cruise control is temporarily canceled when the brake pedal is depressed or the CANCEL button is pressed. Depress the brake pedal and press the CANCEL button at the same time, when the vehicle is at a standstill. The speed and vehicle to vehicle distance indicator on the cluster is disappeared and the CRUISE indicator is illuminated continuously.

**Cancelled automatically**

- The driver's door is opened.
- The shift lever is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Paking).
- The EPB (electronic parking brake) is applied.
- The vehicle speed is over 110 mph (180 km/h)
- The ESC, ABS or TCS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matter.
- When the vehicle is stopped for over 5 minutes.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the toggle switch up (RES+)/down (SET-) or depressing the accelerator pedal, after stopping the vehicle with a vehicle stopped far away in front.
- Engine rpm is in the red zone.
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for long time.
- The engine speed is in dangerous range.
- The SCC system has malfunctioned.
- When activating the ISG mode.
- When the braking control is operated for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist(FCA).
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 5 minutes.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the toggle switch up (RES+)/down (SET-) or depressing the accelerator pedal, after the vehicle is stopped by the Smart Cruise Control system with no other vehicle ahead.
- The vehicle stops and goes repeatedly for a long period of time.
- When the parking brake is locked.
- Engine has some problems.

Each of these actions will cancel the smart cruise control operation. (the set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD display will go off.) If the smart cruise control is cancelled automatically, the smart cruise control will not resume even though the RES+ or SET-lever is moved.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the smart cruise control is cancelled by other than the reasons mentioned, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**

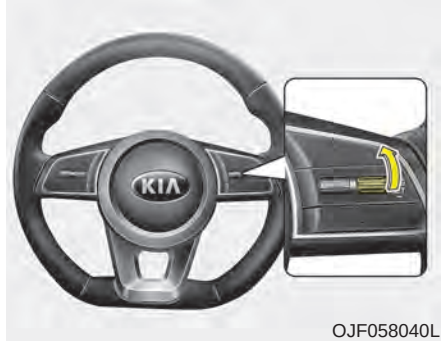



OJF058397L

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the system is automatically cancelled, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear for a few seconds.**
**You must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.**
**Always check the road conditions. Do not rely on the warning chime.**

***To resume cruise control set speed:***




OJF058040L

**Reset**

If any method other than the “RES+” or “SET-“ lever was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the cruising speed will automatically resume when you push the lever up (RES+) or down (SET-).

If you push the lever up (RES+), the speed will resume to the recently set speed. However, if vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (6 km/h), it will resume when there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

**To reduce the risk of an accident, always check the road conditions when reactivating the smart cruise control using the RES+ lever to ensure the road conditions permit safe use of the cruise control.**

***To turn cruise control off:***




OJF058440L

Press the CRUISE button. (the CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will go off).

When the Smart Cruise Control System is not needed, press the [CRUISE] switch and deactivate the system.

- Press the CRUISE button (The CRUISE indicator light will go off.).

### Vehicle to vehicle distance setting

***To set vehicle to vehicle distance:***



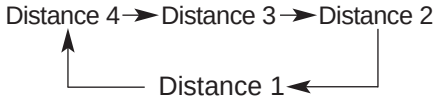

OJF058307L

This function allows you to program the vehicle to maintain relative distance to the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

The vehicle to vehicle distance will automatically activate when the smart cruise control system is on.

Select the appropriate distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle to vehicle distance changes as follows:




For example, if you drive at 56 mph (90 km/h), the distance maintain as follows;

Distance 4 - approximately 172 ft (52.5 m)

Distance 3 - approximately 131 ft (40 m)

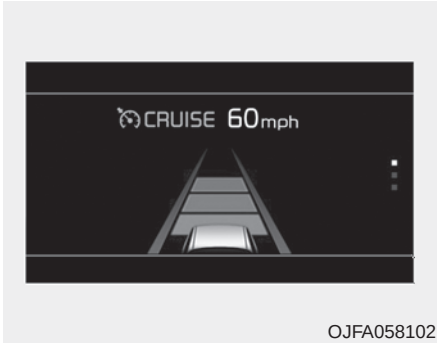
Distance 2 - approximately 107 ft (32.5 m)

Distance 1 - approximately 82ft (25 m)

### ✻ NOTICE

**The distance is set to the last set distance when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.**

### When the lane ahead is clear :



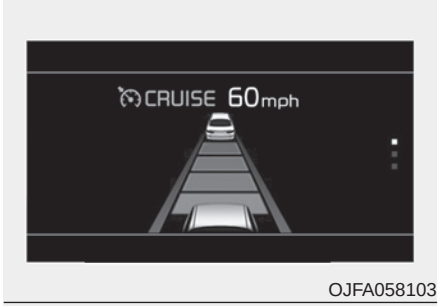

OJFA058102

The vehicle speed will maintain the set speed.

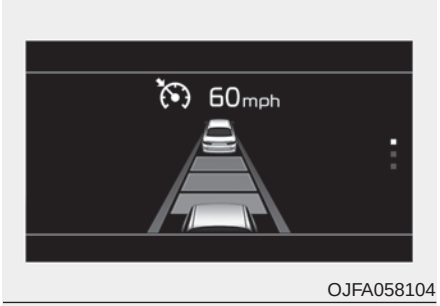
### ⚠ WARNING
**- Following Distance**

- **To avoid collisions, always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle to vehicle distance settings when activating your smart cruise control system.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**

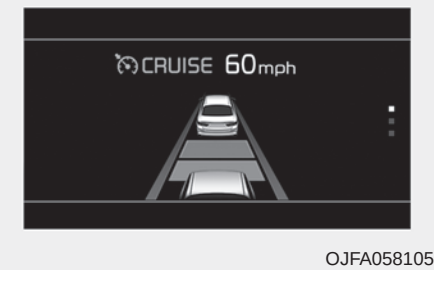
**When there is a vehicle ahead of you in your lane :**



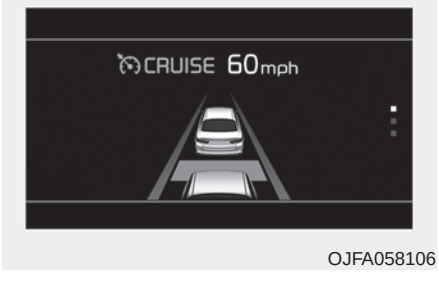

OJFA058103




OJFA058104




OJFA058105




OJFA058106

- The vehicle will maintain the set speed, when the lane ahead is clear.
- The vehicle will slow down or speed up to maintain the selected distance, when there is a vehicle ahead of you in the lane. (A vehicle will appear in front of your vehicle in the LCD display only when there is an actual vehicle in front of you)
- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the selected speed.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***The warning chime sounds and LCD display blinks if it is hard to maintain the selected distance to the vehicle ahead.***
- ***If the warning chime sounds, actively adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.***
- ***Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.***
- ***Be alert to road conditions as radio, sound and outside conditions could interrupt a warning sound.***




OJF058401L

If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 20 mph (30 km/h) disappears to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear. Adjust your vehicle speed for vehicles or objects that can suddenly appear in front of you by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

***In traffic situation***




OJF058402L

Use switch or pedal to accelerate

- In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. However, if the vehicle stops you must depress the accelerator pedal or push up the toggle switch (RES+) to start driving.

- If you push the smart cruise control toggle switch (RES+ or SET-) while Auto Hold and smart cruise control is operating the Auto Hold will be released regardless of accelerator pedal operation and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white. (if equipped with EPB (Electronic Parking Brake))

### *Radar to detect distance to the vehicle ahead*


OJF058304

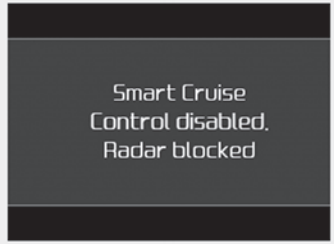
The sensor detects the distance to the vehicle ahead.

If the sensor is covered with dirt or other foreign matter, the vehicle to vehicle distance control may not operate correctly.

Always keep the area in front of the sensor clean.

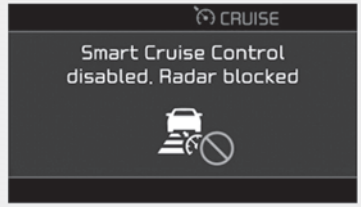
### *Warning message*

■ Type A



OJF058403L

■ Type B



OJF058404L

When the sensor lens cover is blocked with dirt, snow, or debris, the Smart Cruise Control System operation may stop temporarily. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the LCD display. Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor lens cover before operating the Smart Cruise Control System. The Smart Cruise Control system may not properly activate, if the radar is totally contaminated, or if any substance is not detected after turning ON the engine (e.g. in an open terrain).

### *SCC (smart cruise control) malfunction message*

■ Type A




OJF058405L

■ Type B




OJF058406L

The message will appear when the vehicle to vehicle distance control system is not functioning normally.

In this case, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install accessories around the sensor and do not replace the bumper by yourself. It may interfere with the sensor performance.***
- ***Always keep the sensor and bumper clean.***
- ***Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurized water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.***
- ***Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the Smart Cruise Control System may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed.***

  ***Have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.***

***(Continued)***

***(Continued)***

- ***Do not damage the sensor or sensor area by a strong impact. If the sensor moves slightly off position, the smart cruise control system will not operate correctly without any warning or indicator from the cluster. If this occurs, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.***
- ***Use only a genuine Kia sensor cover for your vehicle. Do not paint anything on the sensor cover.***
- ***If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the Smart Cruise Control System may not operate properly.***

### To adjust the sensitivity of smart cruise control

The sensitivity of vehicle speed when following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance can be adjusted. Go to the User Settings Mode (Driver Assistance) and select (SCC Reaction). You may select one of the three stages you prefer.

- Slow:

  Vehicle speed to the vehicle ahead to maintain the set distance is slower than normal speed.
- Normal:

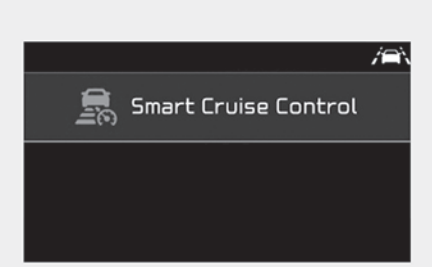
  Vehicle speed to the vehicle ahead to maintain the set distance is normal
- Fast:

  Vehicle speed to the vehicle ahead to maintain the set distance is faster than normal speed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The last selected mode remains in the system.**

### To convert to cruise control mode:




The driver may choose to only use the cruise control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn the smart cruise control system on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the system will not be activated).
2. Push the distance to distance switch for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "Smart Cruise Control" and "Cruise Control".

When the system is canceled using the CRUISE button or the CRUISE button is used after the engine is turned on, the Smart Cruise Control mode will turn on.

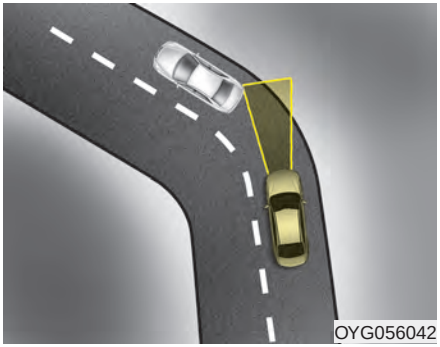
**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the cruise control mode, you must manually assess the distance to other vehicles as the system will not automatically brake to slow down for other vehicles.**

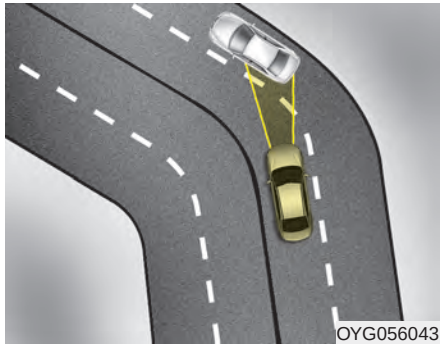
### Limitations of the system

The smart cruise control system may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead due to road and traffic conditions.

### *On curves*

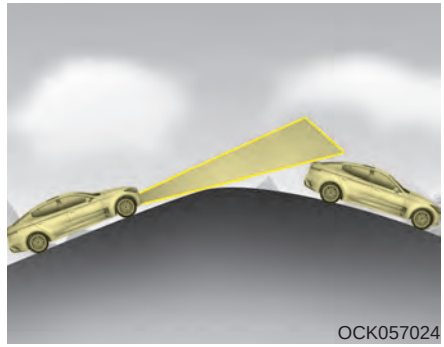



- On curves, the smart cruise control system may not immediately detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on curves and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



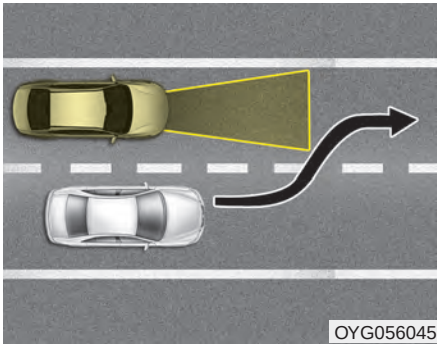

- Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the smart cruise control.

### *On inclines*

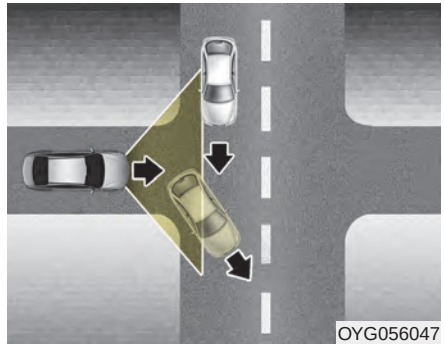



- During uphill or downhill driving, the smart cruise control system may not immediately detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and may cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

### *Lane changing*

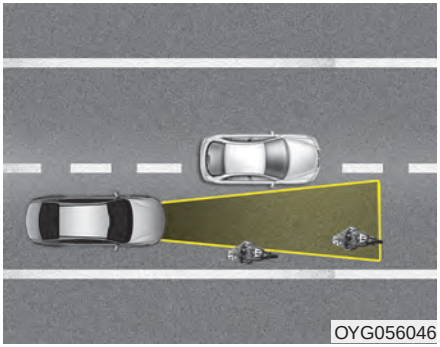



- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The sensor may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is slower than your vehicle, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is faster than your vehicle, your vehicle will accelerate to the selected speed.




- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.

### *Vehicle recognition*


OYG056046

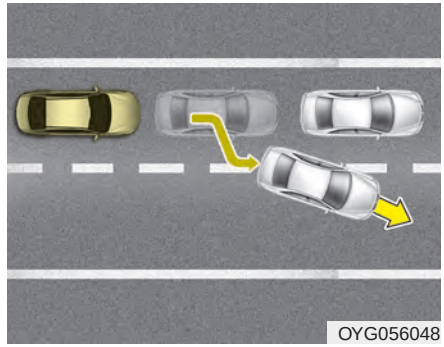
Some vehicles ahead in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor as follows:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profiles such as trailers with no loads

A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

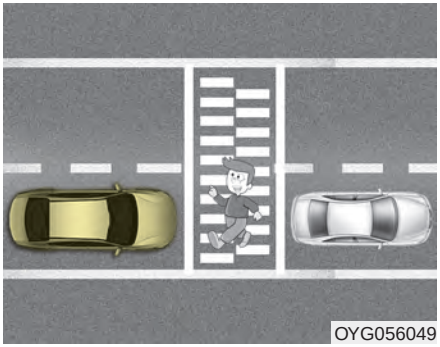
- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the trunk(tailgate)
- While making turns by steering
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

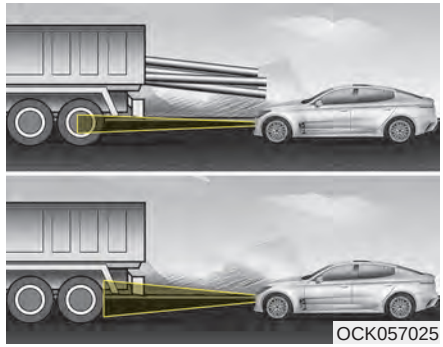

OYG056048

- When vehicles are at a standstill and the vehicle in front of you changes to the next lane, be careful when your vehicle starts to move because it may not immediately recognize the stopped vehicle in front of you.

In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.


OYG056049

- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.


OCK057025

- Always be cautious when approaching vehicles that are taller with higher clearance, or vehicles carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the Smart Cruise Control take the following precautions:**

- **If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes. The vehicle cannot be stopped at every emergency situation by using the Smart Cruise Control system.**
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle to vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**
- **The Smart Cruise Control system cannot recognize a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**

- **Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane.**

  **Always drive cautiously to pre-vent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**

- **Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle to vehicle distance. The driver should not solely rely on the system but always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The Smart Cruise Control system may not recognize complex driving situations so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**
- **For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***The smart cruise control system may not operate temporarily due to electrical interference.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**The Smart Cruise Control System may not operate temporarily due to:**

- **Electrical interference.**
- **Modifying the suspension.**
- **Differences of tire abrasion or tire pressure.**
- **Installing different type of tires.**

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.**

Operation is subject to the following three conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
3. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

**Radio frequency radiation exposure information:**

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

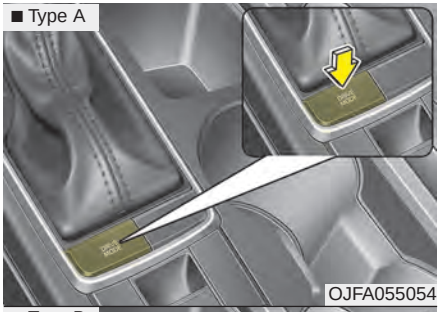
This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM

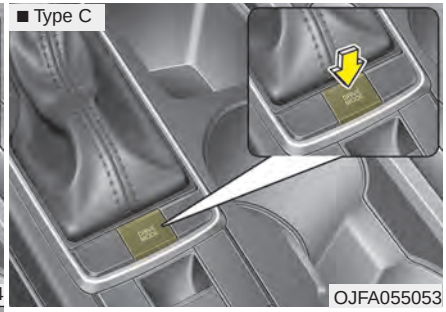
### DRIVE mode

■ Type A



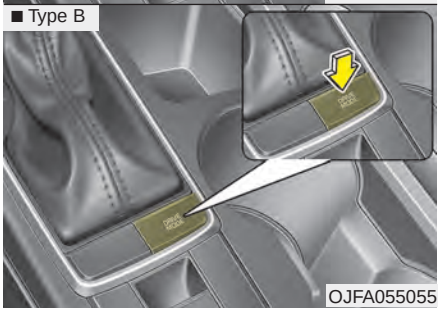
OJFA055054

■ Type C



OJFA055053

■ Type B



OJFA055055

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE button is pressed.

■ Except DCT




■ For DCT



### *ECO mode (Active ECO)*

**ECO**

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling certain engine and transaxle system operating parameters. Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the DRIVE MODE button again.

**When Active ECO is activated:**

- The acceleration may slightly be reduced even though you depress the accelerator fully.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited
- The shift pattern of the automatic transaxle may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.

The above situations are normal conditions when the Active Eco System is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

**Limitation of Active ECO operation:**

If the following conditions occur while Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:

  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:

  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When using manual mode:

  The system will be limited according to the shift location.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed for a few seconds:

  The system will be limited, judging that the driver wants to speed up.

***SPORT mode***

**SPORT**

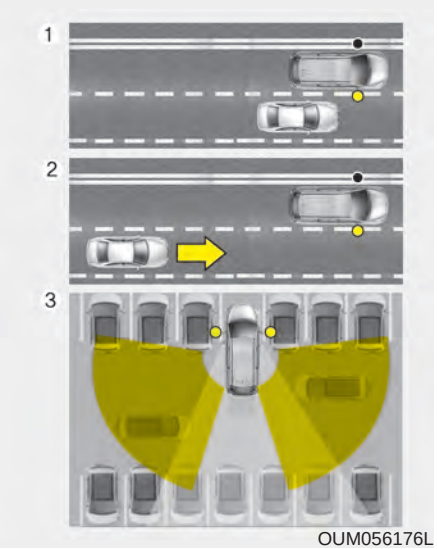
SPORT mode focuses on dynamic driving by automatically adjusting the steering wheel, engine and transaxle system.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator (yellow) will illuminate.
- When the SPORT mode is activated, and the engine start/stop button is turned off and on it will change to NORMAL mode. To turn on the SPORT mode press DRIVE MODE button again.
- If the system is activated:
  - While holding vehicle speed, it maintains the gear and RPM for some time even though the accelerator pedal is not depressed.
  - Up-shifting is delayed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In Sport drive mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.**

## BLIND-SPOT COLLISION WARNING (BCW) (IF EQUIPPED)



OUM056176L

The Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) system uses radar sensors in the rear bumper to monitor and warn the driver of an approaching vehicle in the driver's blind spot area.

The system monitors the rear area of the vehicle and provides information to the driver with an audible alert and a indicator on the outside rearview mirrors.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always be aware of road conditions while driving and be alert for unexpected situations even though the BCW system is operating.**
- **The BCW is not a substitute for proper and safe driving. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing up the vehicle. The BCW may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**

(1) Blind spot area

The BCW range varies relative to vehicle speed. Note that if your vehicle is traveling much faster than the vehicles around you, the warning will not occur.

(2) Closing at high speed

The BCW-Closing at high speed feature will alert you when a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a high rate of speed. If the driver activates the turn signal when the system detects an oncoming vehicle, the system sounds an audible alert. Distance from approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.

(3) RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning)

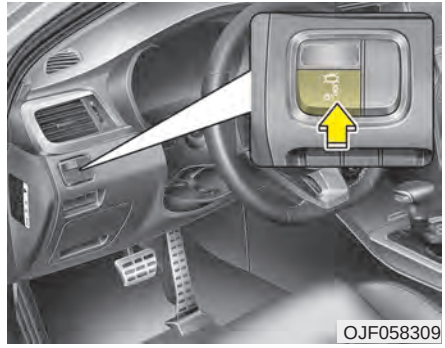
The RCCW feature monitors approaching cross traffic from the left and right side of the vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse. The feature will operate when the vehicle is moving in reverse below about 6 mph (10 km/h). If oncoming cross traffic is detected a warning chime will sound. Distance from approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always check the road condition while driving for unexpected situations even though the BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) system is operating.**
- **BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) system is a system made for convenience. Do not solely rely on the system but always pay attention to drive safely.**
- **Distance from the approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.**

## BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) / LCA (Lane Change Assist)

### *Operating conditions*




The indicator on the switch will illuminate when the BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) system switch is pressed with the ignition switch ON. If the vehicle speed exceeds 20 mph (30 km/h), the system will activate.

If you press the switch again, the switch indicator and system will be turned off.

If the ignition switch is turned OFF and ON the system returns to the previous state.

When the system is not used turn the system off by pressing the switch.

When the system is turned on the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.

***Warning type***

The system will activate when:

1. The system is on
2. Vehicle speed is above 20 mph (30 km/h)
3. Other vehicles are detected in the rear side

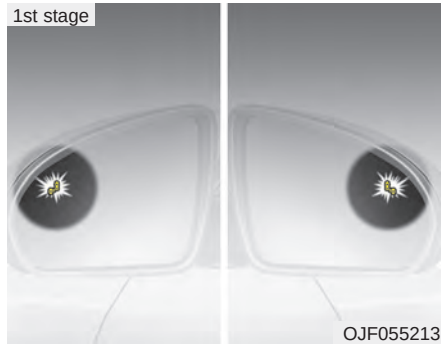
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always check the road condition while driving for unexpected situations even though the Blind-Spot Collision Warning System (BCW) is operating.**
- **The Blind-Spot Collision Warning System (BCW) is a supplemental system to assist you. Do not entirely rely on the system. Always pay attention, while driving, for your safety.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

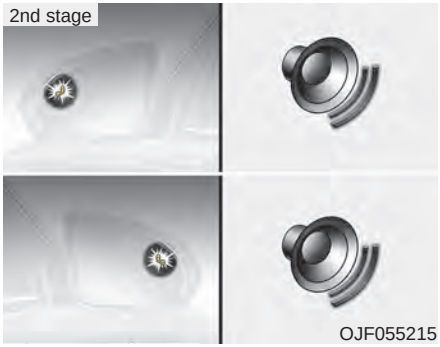
- **The Blind-Spot Collision Warning System (BCW) is not a substitute for proper and safe driving. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing the vehicle up. The Blind-Spot Collision Warning System (BCW) may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**




**First stage alert**

If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the system, a yellow warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror.

Once the detected vehicle is no longer within the blind spot area, the warning will turn off according to the driving conditions of the vehicle.




**Second stage alert**

A warning chime to alert the driver will activate when:

1. A vehicle has been detected in the blind spot area by the radar system (the warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror (i.e., in the first stage alert)

   AND

2. The turn signal is applied (same side as where the vehicle is being detected).

When this alert is activated, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will also blink.

If you turn off the turn signal indicator, the second stage alert (the warning chime and the blinking warning light on the outside rearview mirror) will be deactivated.

- The second stage alarm can be deactivated.

• To activate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Driver Assistance and select “Blind-Spot Collision Warning” on the LCD display.

• To deactivate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Driver Assistance and deselect “Blind-Spot Collision Warning” on the LCD display.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The warning chime function helps alert the driver. Deactivate this function only when it is necessary, refer to “User Settings Mode” in chapter 4.***

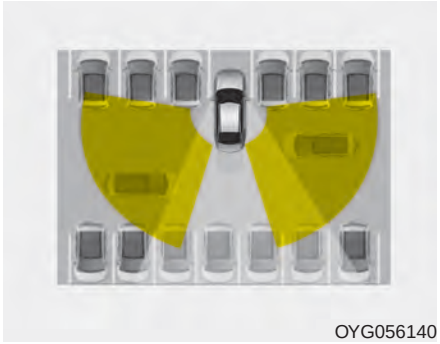
***Detecting sensor***




The sensors are located inside the rear bumper.

Always keep the rear bumper clean for the system to work properly.

## RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning)



OYG056140

The Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning function monitors approaching cross traffic from the left and right side of the vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse.

### *Operating conditions To operate*

- Go to “User Settings → Driving Assist and select Rear Cross Traffic Collision Warning” on the LCD display.

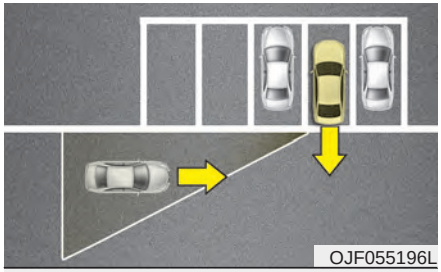
  The system will turn on and stand-by to activate. If you deactivate this function in the cluster, the system will stop.

❉For more information, refer to “LCD Display” in chapter 4.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is turned off and on again, the RCCW system will return to the state right before the vehicle was turned off.**
- **The system will activate when vehicle speed is below 6.2 mph (10 km/h) and with the shift lever in R (Reverse).**
- **The Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) detecting range is approximately 1 ft ~ 65 ft (0.5 m ~ 20 m) in the direction of both lateral sides of the car.**
  **An approaching vehicle will be detected if their vehicle speed is within 2.5 ~ 22.5 mph (4 km/h ~ 36 km/h).**
  **Note that the detecting range may vary under certain conditions. As always, use caution and pay close attention to your surroundings when backing up your vehicle.**

***Warning type***



OJF055196L



OJF058351



OJF058352

If the vehicle detected by the sensors approaches your vehicle, the warning chime will sound, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a message will appear on the LCD display.

## ✻ NOTICE

- **The warning chime will turn off:**
  - **When the detected vehicle moves out of the sensing area or**
  - **If your vehicle is moved away from the detected vehicle or**
  - **When the vehicle is right behind your vehicle or**
  - **When the vehicle is not approaching your vehicle or**
  - **When the other vehicle slows down.**
- **The system may not operate properly due to other factors or circumstances.**
  **Always pay attention to your surroundings.**
- **If the sensing area near the rear bumper is blocked by either a wall or barrier or by a parked vehicle, the system sensing area may be reduced.**

## ⚠ WARNING

- **When the BCW system is being activated, The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate whenever a vehicle is detected at the rear side by the system.**

  **To avoid accidents, do not focus only on the warning light and neglect to see the surrounding of the vehicle.**
- **Drive safely even though the vehicle is equipped with a BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) system. Do not solely rely on the system but check for yourself before changing lanes.**

  **The system may not alert the driver in some conditions so always check the surroundings while driving.**

**(Continued)**

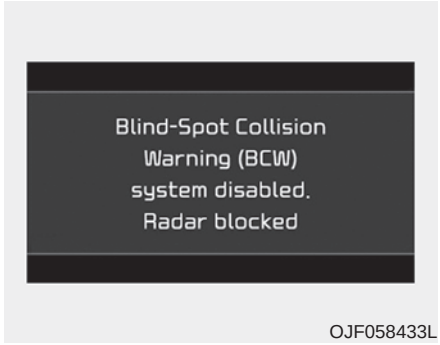
**(Continued)**

- **The Blind-Spot Collision Warning system (BCW) and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) are not a substitute for proper and safe driving practices. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing up your vehicle. The Blind-Spot Collision Warning system (BCW) may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced or if a repair work has been done near the sensor.***
- ***The detection area differs according to the roads width. If the road is narrow the system may detect other vehicles in the second next lane.***
- ***On the contrary, if the road is very wide the system may not detect other vehicles in the next lane.***
- ***The system might be turned off due to strong electromagnetic waves.***

***Warning message***




OJF058433L

The sensor may be limited when the below conditions.

If there is a problem with the BCW system, a warning message will appear and the light on the switch will turn off. The system will turn off automatically.

- One or both of the sensors on the rear bumper is blocked by dirt or snow or a foreign object.
- Driving in rural areas where the BCW sensor does not detect another vehicle for an extended period of time.

- When there is inclement weather such as heavy snow or rain.
- A trailer or carrier is installed. (To use the BCW system, remove the trailer or carrier from your vehicle.)

Turn off the system by pressing the BCW switch and deselecting Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) from the User Settings mode on the cluster, when using a trailer or carrier behind your vehicle.

If any of these conditions occur, the light on the BCW switch and the system will turn off automatically.

When the BCW canceled warning message is displayed in the cluster, check to make sure that the rear bumper is free from any dirt or snow in the areas where the sensor is located. Remove any dirt, snow, or foreign material that could interfere with the radar sensors.

After any dirt or debris is removed, the BCW system should operate normally after about 10 minutes of driving the vehicle.

If the system still does not operate normally have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

■ Type A




OJF058434L

■ Type B




OJF058435L

If the system does not work properly, a warning message will appear and the light on the switch will turn off. The system will turn off automatically.

In this case, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

***Non-operating condition***

Outside rearview mirror may not alert the driver when:

- The outside rearview mirror housing is damaged or covered with debris.
- The mirror is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is covered with debris.
- The windows are severely tinted.

## Driver's Attention

**The driver must be cautious in the below situations, because the system may not detect other vehicles or objects in certain circumstances.**

- **When a trailer or carrier is installed.**
- **The vehicle drives in inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow.**
- **The sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc.**
- **The rear bumper where the sensor is located is covered with a foreign object such as a bumper sticker, a bumper guard, a bike rack, etc.**
- **The rear bumper is damaged, or the sensor is out of the original default position.**
- **The vehicle height gets lower or higher due to heavy loading in the luggage compartment, abnormal tire pressure, etc.**
- **When the temperature near the rear bumper area is high or low.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles, walls or parking-lot pillars.**
- **The vehicle drives on a curved road or through a tollgate.**
- **The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.**
- **There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as a guardrail, person, animal, etc.**
- **While going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.**
- **When driving through a narrow road with many trees or bushes.**
- **When driving on wet surfaces.**
- **When driving through a large area with few vehicles or structures around, such as a desert, rural area, etc.**
- **A big vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When other vehicles are close to your vehicle.**
- **When the other vehicle approaches very close.**
- **When the detected vehicle also moves back, as your vehicle drives back.**
- **While changing lanes.**
- **If the vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.**
- **When the other vehicle passes at a very fast speed.**
- **When the vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you OR when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane to you.**
- **The vehicle is turning left or right at a crossroads.**

**This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.**

Operation is subject to the following three conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
3. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

**Radio frequency radiation exposure information:**

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)


OJF058305

The Lane Keeping Assist system is designed to detect the lane markers on the road with a front view camera at the front windshield, and assists the driver's steering to help keep the vehicle in the lanes.

When the system detects the vehicle straying from its lane, it alerts the driver with a visual and audible warning, while applying a slight counter-steering torque, trying to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Lane Keeping Assist System is a supplemental system and is not a substitute for safe driving practices. It is the responsibility of the driver to always pay attention and drive safely.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Driver is responsible for being aware of surroundings and steering the vehicle for safe driving practices.**
- **Do not steer the steering wheel suddenly when the steering wheel is being assisted by the system.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **LKA helps prevent the driver from moving out of the lane unintentionally by assisting the driver's steering. However, the system is just a convenience function and the steering wheel is not always controlled. While driving, the driver should pay attention to the steering wheel.**
- **The operation of the LKA can be cancelled or not work properly according to road condition and surroundings. Always be cautious when driving.**
- **Do not disassemble a front view camera temporarily for tinted window or attaching any types of coatings and accessories.**
  **If you disassemble the camera and assemble it again, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked to need a calibration.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

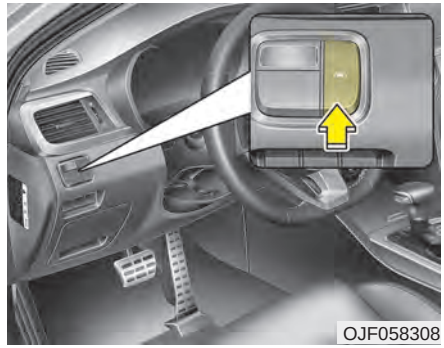
- **When you replace the windshield glass, front view camera or related parts of the steering, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked to need a calibration.**
- **The system detects lane markers and controls the steering wheel by a front view camera, therefore, if the lane markers are hard to detect, the system may not work properly. Always be cautious when using the system.**
- **When the lane markers are hard to detect, please refer to "Driver's Attention".**
- **Do not remove or damage the related parts of LKA.**
- **Do not place objects on the crash pad that reflects light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. it may cause malfunction of LKA if the sunlight is reflected.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **You may not hear warning sound of LKA because of the excessive audio sound.**
- **If you continue to drive with your hands off the steering wheel, the LKA will stop controlling the steering wheel after the hands off alarm. After then, if you drive with your hands on the steering wheel, the control will be activated again.**
- **If the vehicle speed is high, steering torque for assistance will not be enough to keep your vehicle within the lane. If so, the vehicle may move out of its lane. Obey speed limit when using LKA.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the system may not assist steering.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, hands off alarm may not work properly.**

### LKA operation




To activate/deactivate the LKA:

With the ignition switch in the ON position, press the LKA button located on the instrument panel on the lower left hand side of the driver.

The indicator in the cluster display will initially illuminate white.

When the indicator(white) activated in the previous ignition cycle, the system turns on without any control.

If you press the LKA button again, the indicator on the cluster display will go off.

The color of indicator will change depend on the condition of LKA.

- White : Sensor does not detect the lane marker or vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (64 km/h).
- Green : Sensor detects the lane marker and system is able to control the steering.

***LKA activation***

- To see the LKA screen on the LCD display in the cluster, Tab to the ASSIST mode (  ).
- For further details, refer to [menu settings] in chapter 4.
- After LKA is activated, if both lane markers are detected, vehicle speed is over 40 mph (64 km/h) and all the activation conditions are satisfied, a green steering wheel indicator will illuminate and the steering wheel will be controlled.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Lane Keeping Assist system is a system to help prevent the driver from leaving the lane. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always check the road conditions when driving.**

■ Lane undetected ■ Lane detected




OJF058410L/OJF058413L

If the speed of the vehicle is over 40 mph (64 km/h) and the system detects lane markers, the color changes from gray to white

When the conditions below are met, LKA will be enable to assist steering.

- Vehicle speed is above 40 mph (64 km/h).
- Both lane markers are detected by LKA.
- The vehicle is between the lane markers.

If LKA can assist steering, a green steering wheel indicator will illuminate.

***Warning***

■ Left lane ■ Right lane




OJF058414L/OJF058415L

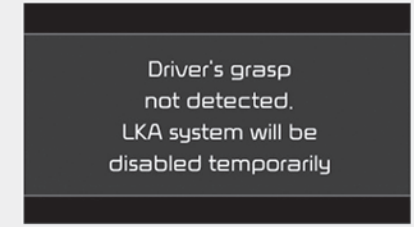
If the vehicle leaves a lane, the lane marker you cross will blink on the LCD display.

If the vehicle moves out its lane because steering torque for assistance is not enough, the line indicator will blink.

- If all the conditions to activate LKA is not satisfied, the system will convert to LDW and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane markers. In this scenario, the LDW system does not provide any steering inputs into the vehicle for you. Accordingly, you must take the necessary steps to maintain control of the vehicle and keep it within the lanes.




OJF058416L




OJF058417L

If the driver takes hands off the steering wheel for several seconds while the LKA is activated, the system will warn the driver.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always have your hands on the steering wheel while driving.**
- **If you hold the steering wheel lightly, the system would generate hands off warning because LKA can treat the situation as you do not grab the wheel.**

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after several seconds, the system will not control the steering wheel and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane markers.

However, if the driver has their hands on the steering wheel again, the system will start controlling the steering wheel.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver is responsible for accurate steering.**
- **Even though the steering is assisted by the system, the driver may control the steering wheel.**
- **Turn off the system and drive the vehicle in below situations.**
  - **In bad weather**
  - **In bad road condition**
  - **When the steering wheel needs to be controlled by the driver frequently.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier when the steering wheel is assisted by the system than when it is not.**

## ✻ NOTICE

- **Even though the steering is assisted by the system, the driver may control the steering.**
- **The steering wheel may feel heavier when the steering wheel is assisted by the system than when it is not.**

**The system will be cancelled when:**

- You change lanes with the turn signal.
  - Using the turn signal to change lanes.
  - If you change lanes without the turn signal on, the steering wheel might be controlled.
- LKA can transit to steering assist mode when the car is near to middle of the lane after system on or the lane was changed. LKA can not assist steering if the vehicle follows lane marker too close continuously before transition to steering assist mode.
- The control of ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.
- The steering will not be assisted when you drive fast on a sharp curve.
- The steering will not be assisted when vehicle speed is below 40 mph (64 km/h). and over 110 mph (177 km/h). Always obey all traffic laws and drive safely.
- The steering will not be assisted when you change lanes quickly.
- The steering will not be assisted when you brake suddenly.
- The steering will not be assisted when the lane is very wide or narrow.
- The steering will not be assisted when only one side lane marker is detected.
- There are more than two lane markers such as a construction area.
- Radius of a curve is too small.
- When you turn steering wheel suddenly, the LKA will be disabled temporarily.
- Driving on a steep slope or hill.

## DRIVER'S ATTENTION

**The driver must be cautious in the below situations may not work properly when recognition of the lane marker is poor or limited :**

**▶ When lane and road condition is poor**

- **It is difficult to distinguish the lane marker from road when the lane marker is covered with dust or sand.**
- **It is difficult to distinguish the color of the lane marker from road.**
- **There is something looks like a lane marker.**
- **The lane marker is indistinct or damaged.**
- **The number of lanes increases/ decreases or the lane lines are crossing (Driving through a toll plaza/toll gate, merged/divided lane).**
- **There are more than two lane markers.**
- **The lane marker is very thick or thin.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The lane marker is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or other factors.**
- **A shadow is on the lane marker because of a median strip, guardrail, noise barriers and others.**
- **When the lane markers are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines such as a construction area.**
- **There are crosswalk signs or other symbols on the road.**
- **The lane suddenly disappears such as at the intersection.**
- **The lane marker in a tunnel is covered with dirt or oil and etc.**

**▶ When external condition is intervened**

- **The brightness of outside changes suddenly when entering/existing a tunnel or passing under a bridge.**
- **The headlamps are not on at night or in a tunnel, or light level is low.**
- **There is a boundary structure in the roadway.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The light of street, sun, oncoming vehicle and so on reflects from the water on the road.**
- **When light shines brightly in the reverse direction you drive.**
- **The distance from the vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead drives hiding the lane line.**
- **You drive on a steep grade or a sharp curve.**
- **The vehicle vibrates heavily.**
- **The temperature near inside mirror is very high due to direct sun light and etc.**

**▶ When front visibility is poor**

- **The lens or windshield is covered by strange materials.**
- **The sensor cannot detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or snow.**
- **The windshield is fogged by humid air in the vehicle.**
- **Putting something on the crash pad and etc.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Lane Keeping Assist system is a system to help prevent the driver from leaving the lane. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always take the necessary actions for safe driving practices.**

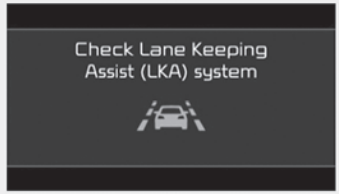
## LKA malfunction

■ Type A




OJF058418L

■ Type B




OJF058419L

- If there is a problem with the system a message will appear. If the problem continues the LKA fail indicator will illuminate.

### *LKA fail indicator*

The LKA fail indicator (yellow) will illuminate with an audible warning if the LKA is not working properly. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorized Kia dealer/service partner.

**When there is a problem with the system do one of the following:**

- Turn the system on after turning the engine off and on again.
- Check if the ignition switch is in the ON position.
- Check if the system is affected by the weather. (ex: fog, heavy rain, etc.)
- Check if there is foreign matter on the camera lens

If the problem is not solved, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

## LKA function change

The driver can change LKA to Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system or change the LKA mode between Standard LKA and Active LKA from the User Settings Mode on the LCD display.

The driver can choose them by placing the ignition switch to the ON position and by selecting 'User Settings', 'Driver Assistance', and 'Lane Safety'.

The system is automatically set to Standard LKA when your vehicle is first delivered from the factory.

### *Lane Departure*

LDW alerts the driver with a visual and acoustic warning when the system detects the vehicle leaving the lane. In this mode, the steering wheel will not be controlled. When the vehicle's front wheel contacts the inside edge of lane line, LKA issues the lane departure warning.

### *Standard LKA*

The Standard LKA mode guides the driver to keep the vehicle within the lanes. It rarely controls the steering wheel, when the vehicle drives well inside the lanes. However, it starts to control the steering wheel, when the vehicle is about to deviate from the lanes.

### *Active LKA*

The active LKA mode provides more frequent steering wheel control in comparison with the Standard LKA mode. Active LKA can reduce the driver's fatigue to assist the steering for maintaining the vehicle in the middle of the lane.

## DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW, IF EQUIPPED)

The Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system is designed to warn the driver of potentially hazardous driving situations if it detects inattentive driving practices.

### System setting and activation

***System setting***

- The Driver Attention Warning system is set to be in the Normal position, when your vehicle is first delivered to you from the factory.
- To turn ON the Driver Attention Warning system, turn on the engine, and then select 'User Settings → Driver Assistance → DAW (Driver Attention Warning) → High sensitivity/Normal sensitivity/Off' on the LCD display.
- The driver can select the Driver Attention Warning system mode.
  - Off : The Driver Attention Warning system is deactivated.
  - Normal sensitivity : The Driver Attention Warning system alerts the driver of his/her fatigue level or inattentive driving practices.
  - High sensitivity : The Driver Attention Warning system alerts the driver of his/her fatigue level or inattentive driving practices faster than Normal mode.
- The set-up of the Driver Attention Warning system will be maintained, as selected, when the engine is re-started.

### *Display of the driver's attention level*




OJF058422L




OJF058423L




OJF058424L

- The driver can monitor their driving conditions on the LCD display.
  - Select 'User Settings Mode' and then 'Driver Assistance' on the LCD display. (For more information, refer to “LCD Display” in chapter 4.)
- The driver's attention level is displayed on the scale of 1 to 5. The lower the number is, the more inattentive the driver is.
- The number decreases when the driver does not take a break for a certain period of time.
- The number increases when the driver attentively drives for a certain period of time.
- When the driver turns on the system while driving, it displays ‘Last Break time’ and level reflected that.

### *Take a break*

■ Type A




OJF058425L

■ Type B




OJF058426L

- The “Consider taking a break” message appears on the LCD display and a warning sounds in order to suggest the driver to take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.

- The Driver Attention Warning system does not suggest the driver to take a break, when the total driving time is shorter than 10 minutes.

### Resetting the system




OJF058427L

- The last break time is set to 00:00 and the driver's attention level is set to 5 (very attentive) when the driver resets the Driver Attention Warning system.
- The driver attention warning system resets in the following situations.
  - The engine is turned OFF.
  - The driver unfastens the seat belt and then opens the driver's door in stop.
  - Stop lasting more than 10 minutes.
- The driver attention warning system operates again, when the driver restarts driving.

### System disabled

The Driver Attention Warning system enters the ready status and displays the 'Disabled' screen in the following situations.

- The camera sensor keeps failing to detect the lanes.
- Driving speed remains under 40 mph (64 km/h) or over 110 mph (177 km/h).

### System malfunction

■ Type A




OJF058428L

■ Type B




OJF058429L

When the “Check System” warning message appears, the system is not working properly. In this case, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The Driver Attention Warning system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **It may suggest a break according to the driver’s driving pattern or habits even if the driver doesn’t feel fatigued.**
- **The driver, who feels fatigued, should take a break, even though there is no break suggestion by the Driver Attention Warning system.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**The Driver Attention Warning system utilizes the camera sensor on the front windshield for its operation. To keep the camera sensor in the best condition, you should observe the followings:**

- **Do not disassemble camera temporarily for tinted window or attaching any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble a camera and assemble it again, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**
- **Do not locate any reflective objects (i.e. white paper, mirror) over the dashboard. Any light reflection may cause a mal-function of the Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system.**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the camera sensor out of water.**
- **Do not arbitrarily disassemble the camera assembly, nor apply any impact on the camera assembly.**
- **Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may offset the Driver Attention Warning system warning sounds.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***The Driver Attention Warning system may not properly operate with limited alerting in the following situations:***

- ***The lane detection performance is limited. (For more information, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system" in this chapter.)***
- ***The vehicle is violently driven or is abruptly turned for obstacle avoidance (e.g. construction area, other vehicles, fallen objects, bumpy road).***
- ***Forward drivability of the vehicle is severely undermined (possibly due to wide variation in tire pressures, uneven tire wear-out, toe-in/toe-out alignment).***

***(Continued)***

***(Continued)***

- ***The vehicle drives on a curvy road.***
- ***The vehicle drives on a bumpy road.***
- ***The vehicle drives through a windy area.***
- ***The vehicle is controlled by the following driver assistance systems:***
  - ***Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system***
  - ***forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA) System.***
  - ***Smart Cruise Control (SCC) System***

### ✻ NOTICE

**The Driver Attention Warning system does not detect actual driver fatigue or drowsiness. The system monitors driving and provides a warning if it detects inattentive driving practices.**

## ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many miles (kilometers) you can get from a gallon (liter) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jackrabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 8. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see chapter 8 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in a very high gear resulting in engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speed.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, have an authorized Kia dealer perform scheduled inspections and maintenance.

**⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion**

**Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. In addition, turning off the ignition while driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering. Keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for an engine braking effect.**

# SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

## Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use the second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**⚠ WARNING - Downshifting**

**Do not downshift with an automatic transaxle while driving on slippery surfaces. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid and result in an accident.**

## Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

**⚠ WARNING - Sudden Vehicle Movement**

**Do not attempt to rock the vehicle if people or objects are nearby. The vehicle may suddenly move forward or backwards as it becomes unstuck.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Vehicle rocking**

***Prolonged rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle damage or failure, and tire damage.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Spinning tires**

***Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 35 mph (56 km/h). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat which could result in tire damage that may injure bystanders.***

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

## Smooth cornering


OJF058062L

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.

## Driving at night


OJF058063

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.

- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed. (On vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature.) Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

## Driving in the rain




Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

## Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

## Highway driving

### *Tires*

Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires.

Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.

**⚠ WARNING - Under/over inflated tires**

**Always check the tires for proper inflation before driving. Underinflated or overinflated tires can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. For proper tire pressures, refer to "Tires and wheels" in chapter 9.**

**⚠ WARNING - Tire tread**

**Always check the tire tread before driving your vehicle. Worn-out tires can result in loss of vehicle control. Worn-out tires should be replaced as soon as possible. For further information and tread limits, refer to "Tires and wheels" in chapter 8.**

### *Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil*

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both the engine coolant and engine oil.

### *Drive belt*

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

## WINTER DRIVING

Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

### Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front of your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tire chains on the tire will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

Tire chains are not legal in all states. Check state laws before fitting tire chains.

#### *Snow tires*

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

*Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.*

**⚠ WARNING - Snow tire size**

**Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.**

### *Tire chains*


OJF058183

Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 0.47 in (12 mm). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

When using tire chains, attach them to the drive wheels as follows.

FWD : Front wheels

**⚠ CAUTION - Snow chains**

***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tires. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

The snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tire. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class “S” certified.

Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.3 to 0.6 miles (0.5 to 1 km) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.

**Chain installation**

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as possible. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

- The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Do not exceed 20 mph (30 km/h) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.

**⚠ CAUTION - Snow chains**

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

### Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 8. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in chapter 8. The level of charge in your battery can be checked by an authorized Kia dealer or a service station.

### Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See chapter 9 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

### Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in chapter 8 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

### To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### Don’t let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear shift lever in P (Park, Automatic Transaxle / Dual clutch transmission) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

### Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components are not obstructed.

### Carry emergency equipment

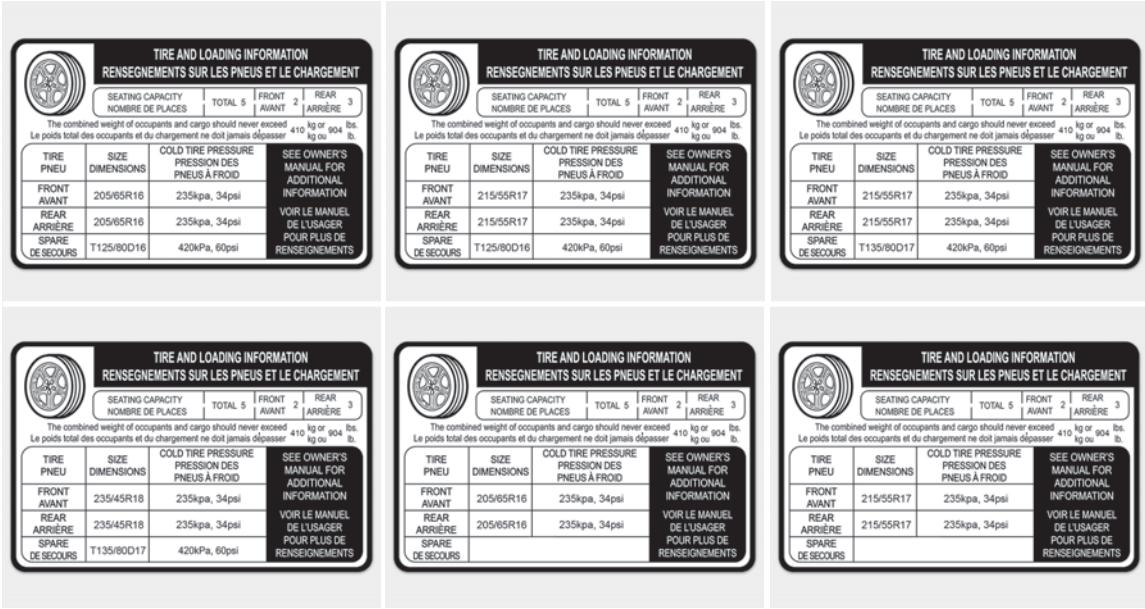
Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

## TRAILER TOWING

**We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.**

# VEHICLE LOAD LIMIT

## Tire and loading information label




OJFA055268/OJFA055271/OJFA055269/OJFA055272/OJFA055270/OJFA055273

The label located on the driver's door sill gives the original tire size, cold tire pressures recommended for your vehicle, the number of people that can be in your vehicle and vehicle capacity weight.

***Vehicle capacity weight:***

904 lbs. (410 kg)

Vehicle capacity weight is the maximum combined weight of occupants and cargo.

***Seating capacity:***

Total : 5 persons
(Front seat : 2 persons,
Rear seat : 3 persons)

Seating capacity is the maximum number of occupants including a driver, your vehicle may carry.

However, the seating capacity may be reduced based upon the weight of all of the occupants, and the weight of the cargo being carried.

Do not overload the vehicle as there is a limit to the total weight, or load limit including occupants and cargo, the vehicle can carry.

***Towing capacity:***

**We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.**

***Cargo capacity:***

The cargo capacity of your vehicle will increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

***Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit -***

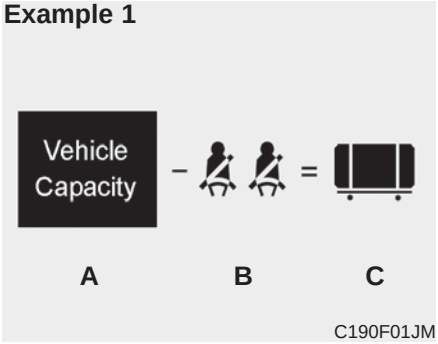
1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.

   (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING - Loose cargo**

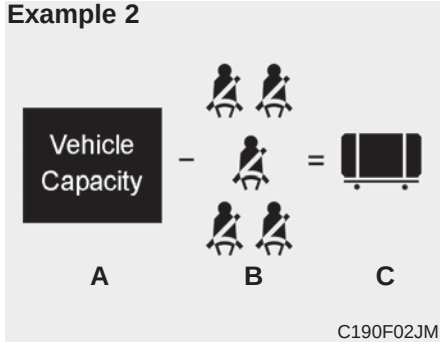
**Do not travel with unsecured blunt objects in the passenger compartment of your vehicle (e.g. suit cases or unsecured child seats). These items may strike occupant during a sudden stop or crash.**

**Example 1**



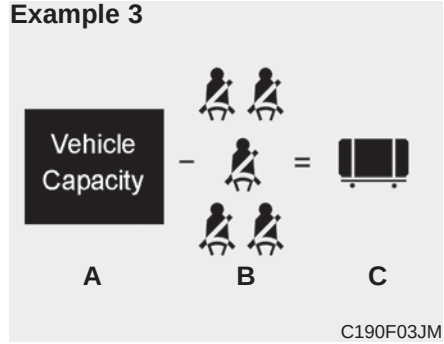

| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight | 849 lbs (385 kg) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 | 300 lbs (136 kg) |
| C | Available Cargo and Luggage weight | 549 lbs (249 kg) |

**Example 2**




| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight | 849 lbs (385 kg) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 | 750 lbs (340 kg) |
| C | Available Cargo and Luggage weight | 99 lbs (45 kg) |

**Example 3**




| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight | 849 lbs (385 kg) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 161 lbs (73 kg) × 5 | 805 lbs (365 kg) |
| C | Available Cargo and Luggage weight | 44 lbs (20 kg) |

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

## Certification label




OJFA055280

The certification label is located on the driver's door sill at the center pillar.

This label shows the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo.

This label also tells you the maximum weight that can be supported by the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

**⚠ WARNING - Over loading**

**Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, the GAWR for either the front or rear axle and vehicle capacity weight. Exceeding these ratings can affect your vehicle's handling and braking ability.**

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your vehicle can carry.

If you carry items inside your vehicle - like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else - they are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items will keep going and can cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

**⚠ WARNING - Over loading**

**Do not overload your vehicle. Overloading your vehicle can cause heat buildup in your vehicle's tires and possible tire failure, increased stopping distances and poor vehicle handling all of which may result in a crash.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

## VEHICLE WEIGHT

This chapter will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the compliance label:

### Base curb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

### Vehicle curb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

### Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

### GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

### GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the compliance label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

### GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

### GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver’s door sill.

# What to do in an emergency


Road warning . . . . . 6-2
- Hazard warning flasher . . . . . 6-2

In case of an emergency while driving. . . . . 6-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. . . . . 6-3
- If you have a flat tire while driving. . . . . 6-3
- If the engine stalls while driving . . . . . 6-3

If the engine will not start . . . . . 6-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly . . . . 6-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start . . . . 6-4

Emergency starting . . . . . 6-5
- Jump starting. . . . . 6-5
- Push-starting . . . . . 6-6

If the engine overheats. . . . . 6-7

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . . 6-8
- Check tire pressure . . . . . 6-8
- Low tire pressure telltale . . . . . 6-10
- Low tire pressure position telltale . . . . . 6-10
- Changing a tire with TPMS . . . . . 6-12

If you have a flat tire . . . . . 6-14
- Jack and tools . . . . . 6-14
- Removing and storing the spare tire . . . . . 6-15
- Changing tires . . . . . 6-16

If you have a flat tire (with Tire Mobility Kit) . . 6-23
- Introduction . . . . . 6-24
- Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit . . . . . 6-25
- Components of the Tire MobilityKit. . . . . 6-27
- Using the Tire Mobility Kit . . . . . 6-28
- Distributing the sealant. . . . . 6-31
- Checking the tire inflation pressure . . . . . 6-31
- Technical Data . . . . . 6-32

Towing . . . . . 6-33
- Towing service . . . . . 6-33

## ROAD WARNING

### Hazard warning flasher




The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Press the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center facia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher while the vehicle is being towed.

# IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

## If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.

## If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transmission in P (for Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

## If the engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, contact an authorized Kia dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there was a check engine light and loss of power or stall and if safe to do so, wait at least 10 seconds to restart the vehicle after it stalls. This may reset the car so it will no longer run at low power (limp home) condition.**

## IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

### If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

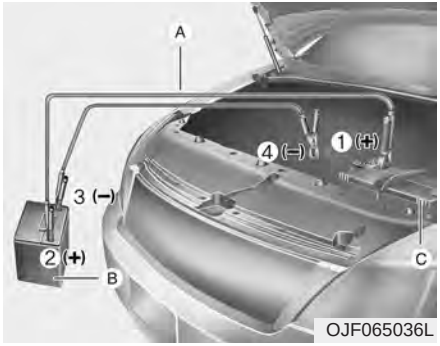
**⚠ WARNING - Push/ pull start**

**Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. Push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to overload and create a fire hazard.**

### If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, call an authorized Kia dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

## EMERGENCY STARTING




Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

(A) : Jumper Cables

(B) : Booster battery

(C) : Discharged battery

### Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow these jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION - Push/pull start to 12 Volt Battery**

***Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).***

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

**Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode.**

**⚠ WARNING - Frozen batteries**

**Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low as the battery may rupture or explode.**

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

**Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which will explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sulfuric acid risk**

**When jump starting your vehicle, be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive.**

***Jump starting procedure***

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to come in contact.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery (2).

   Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

**⚠ WARNING - Battery cables**

**Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.**

**Make sure to connect one end of the jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery, and the other end to a metallic point, far away from the battery.**

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

*If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, you should have your vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.*

## Push-starting

Vehicles equipped with automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission lock system cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

**⚠ WARNING - Tow starting vehicle**

**Never tow a vehicle to start it.**

**When the engine starts, the vehicle can suddenly surge forward and could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.**

## IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine will probably be too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (for Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from underneath the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

**⚠ WARNING - Under the hood**



**While the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.**

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest authorized Kia dealer for assistance.

**⚠ WARNING - Radiator cap**



**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.**

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. If coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call an authorized Kia dealer for assistance.

Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and this should be checked as soon as possible by an authorized Kia dealer.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)




OJFA068002




OJFA068271

(1) Low tire pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator

(2) Low tire pressure position telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

### Check tire pressure




OJFA046272

- You can check the tire pressure in the information mode on the cluster.
  - Refer to “User settings mode” in chapter 4.
- Tire pressure is displayed 1~2 minutes later after driving.
- If tire pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, “Drive to display” message displays. After driving, check the tire pressure.
- You can change the tire pressure unit in the user settings mode on the cluster.
  - psi, kpa, bar (Refer to “User settings mode” in chapter 4).

### ✻ NOTICE

- **The tire pressure may change due to factors such as parking condition, driving style, and altitude above sea level.**
- **The tire pressure shown on the dashboard may differ from the tire pressure measured by tire pressure gauge.**
- **Low tire pressure warning may sound when a tire’s pressure unit is equal or lower than nearby tires. This is a normal occurrence, which is due to the change in tire pressure along with tire temperature.**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the TPMS, Low Tire Pressure indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if they remain illuminated after coming on for approximately 3 seconds, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized Kia dealer and have the system checked.**

### Low tire pressure telltale

### Low tire pressure position telltale




OJFA068270

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

If the telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible.

Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver's side center pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire.

Then the TPMS malfunction indicator and the Low Tire Pressure telltale may turn on and illuminate after restarting and about 20 minutes of continuous driving before you have the low pressure tire repaired and replaced on the vehicle.

In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.

When filling tires with more air, conditions to turn off the low tire pressure telltale may not be met. This is because a tire inflator has a margin of error in performance. The low tire pressure telltale will be turned off if the tire pressure is above the recommended tire inflation pressure.

**⚠ WARNING - Low pressure damage**

**Do not drive on low pressure tires. Significantly low tire pressure can cause the tires to overheat and fail making the vehicle unstable resulting in increased braking distances and a loss of vehicle control.**



### *TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator*

The low tire pressure telltale will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If the system is able to correctly detect an underinflation warning at the same time as system failure then it will illuminate both the TPMS malfunction and low tire pressure position telltales e.g. if Front Left sensor fails, the TPMS malfunction indicator illuminates, but if the Front Right, Rear Left, or Rear Right tire is under-inflated, the low tire pressure position telltales may illuminate together with the TPMS malfunction indicator.

Have the system checked by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible to determine the cause of the problem.

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitters such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may be illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

## Changing a tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure telltale will come on. Have the flat tire repaired by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible or replace the flat tire with the spare tire.

**⚠ CAUTION - Repair Agents**

***Never use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by Kia to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tire. The sealant not approved by Kia may damage the tire pressure sensor.***

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

Even if you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the Low Tire Pressure telltale will remain on until the low pressure tire is repaired and placed on the vehicle.

After you replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the TPMS malfunction indicator may illuminate after a few minutes because the TPMS sensor mounted on the spare wheel is not initiated.

Once the low pressure tire is inflated again to the recommended pressure and installed on the vehicle or the TPMS sensor mounted on the replaced spare wheel is initiated by an authorized Kia dealer, the TPMS malfunction indicator and the low tire pressure telltale will turn off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicator has not disappeared after a few minutes of driving, please visit an authorized Kia dealer.

If an original mounted tire is replaced with the spare tire, the TPMS sensor on the replaced spare wheel should be initiated and the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel should be deactivated. If the TPMS sensor on the original mounted wheel located in the spare tire carrier still activates, the tire pressure monitoring system may not operate properly. Have the tire with TPMS serviced or replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

You may not be able to identify a low tire by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure the tire's inflation pressure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

Never use tire sealant if your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant not approved by Kia may damage the tire pressure sensors.

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

### ✻ NOTICE - Protecting TPMS

**Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.**

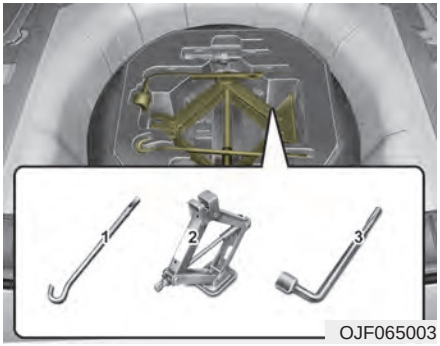
### This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

### Jack and tools (if equipped)




The jack and wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Remove the panel indicated in the illustration.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

*Jacking instructions*

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire Jack**

**Do not place any portion of your body under a vehicle that is only supported by a jack since the vehicle can easily roll off the jack. Use vehicle support stands.**

**⚠ WARNING - Changing tires**

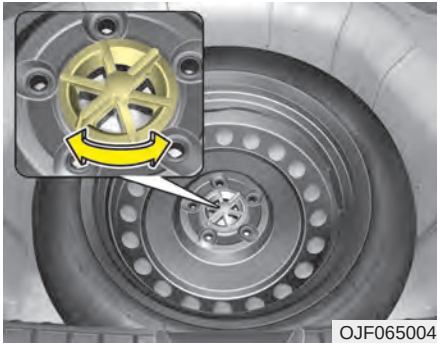
**Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**

- Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on a firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm, level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.
- Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jack support.
- Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.
- Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.

**⚠ WARNING - Running vehicle on jack**

**Do not start or run the engine of the vehicle while the vehicle is on the jack as this may cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.**

## Removing and storing the spare tire (if equipped)


OJF065004

Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise.

Store the tire in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tire and tools from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.



OJFC065035

If it is hard to loosen the tire hold-down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the jack handle.

1. Put the jack handle (1) inside of the tire hold-down wing bolt.
2. Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise with the jack handle.

Use caution when utilizing the sharp jack handle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**- Touching surface of the luggage room floor**

**Do not touch the metal surface of the luggage room floor while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so could result in serious bodily injury.**

**Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down or wear globes to remove the spare tire from the luggage room.**

## Changing tires (if equipped)




1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park) with automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission.
3. Activate the hazard warning flashers.




4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack and spare tire from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite from the jack position.

**⚠ WARNING - Jack location**

**To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**

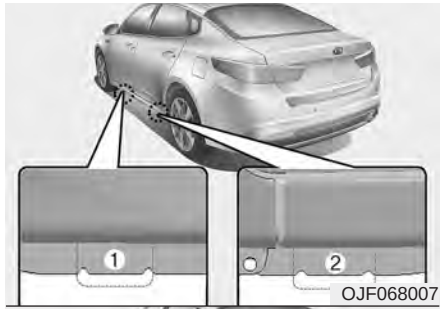
**⚠ WARNING - Changing a tire**

- **To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be blocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

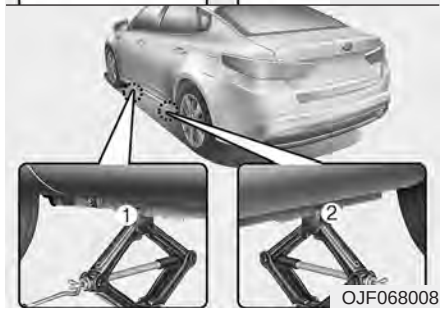


OJFA068005

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.



OJF068007



OJF068008

7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to line up with the jack.


OJF065006

8. Insert the wheel lug nut wrench into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 1 in. (30 mm).

   Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can slide over the other studs.

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that prevents the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

**⚠ WARNING - Installing a wheel**

**Make sure the wheel makes good contact with the hub when installed. If the contact of the mounting surface between the wheel and hub is not good, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle.**

10. To install the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Insert the wrench into the jack and lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OJF065009

Position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel, tightening every nut following the numerical sequence shown in the image until they are all tight. Double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have an authorized Kia dealer tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**
79~94 lbf·ft (11~13 kgf·m)

If you have a tire gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting the tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, dust and dirt may get into the tire valve and air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed the wheels, always secure the flat tire in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

**⚠ CAUTION - Reusing lug nuts**

***Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.***

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs**

**If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.**

To prevent the jack, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to “Tires and wheels” in section 8.

***Important - use of compact spare tire***

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tire. This compact spare tire takes up less space than a regular-size tire. This tire is smaller than a conventional tire and is designed for temporary use only.

- You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tire and rim at the first opportunity.
- The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tire in use at the same time.

**⚠ WARNING - Spare tire**

**The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at speeds over 50 mph (80 km/h). The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.**

The compact spare should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa).

**✻ NOTICE**

**Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.**

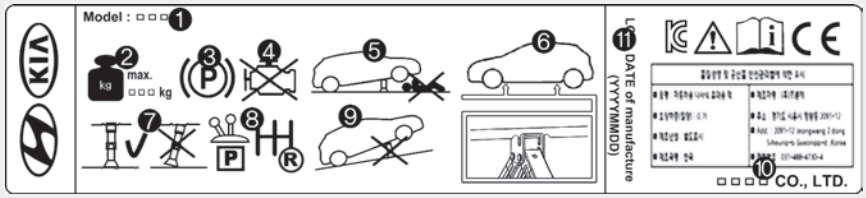
When using a compact spare tire, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 50 mph (80 km/h); a higher speed could damage the tire.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tire could result in tire failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 1 inch (25 mm), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic vehicle wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use tire chains on the compact spare tire. Because of the smaller size, a tire chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire's tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The compact spare tire should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other vehicle components may occur.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

### *Jack label*

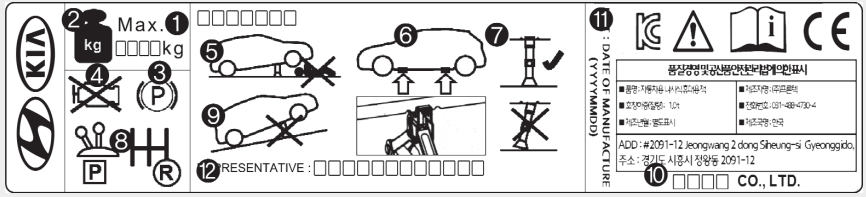
■ Example

• Type A




OHYK064001

• Type B




OHYK064005

• Type C




OHYK064002

❊ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE (WITH TIRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)




Please read the instructions before using the Tire Mobility Kit.

(1) Compressor

(2) Sealant bottle

The Tire Mobility Kit is a temporary fix to the tire and the tire should be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION - One sealant for one tire**

***When two or more tires are flat, do not use the Tire Mobility Kit because the canister of sealant only contains enough sealant for one flat tire.***

**⚠ WARNING - Tire wall**

**Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit to repair large punctures or damage to the tire sidewalls. In these situations, the tire cannot be sealed completely and air will leak from the tire. This can result in tire failure.**

**⚠ WARNING - Speed with temporary fix**

**Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tire sealed with the Tire Mobility Kit. While driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off the side of the road.**

**⚠ WARNING - Temporary fix**

**Have your tire repaired as soon as possible. The tire may lose air pres-sure at any time after inflating with the Tire Mobility Kit.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When repairing a flat tire with the Tire Mobility Kit (TMK), quickly remove the sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel. When installing the repaired tire and wheel, tighten the wheel nut to a torque value of 24~28 ft.lb.***

**⚠ WARNING - Tire wall**

**Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit to repair large punctures or damage to the tire sidewalls. In these situations, the tire cannot be sealed completely and airwill leak from the tire. This can result in tire failure.**

## Introduction


OJF068010

With the Tire Mobility Kit (TMK) you stay mobile even after experiencing a tire puncture.

The system compressor and sealing compound effectively seal most punctures in a passenger car tire caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tire.

After you ensure that the tire is properly sealed, you can drive cautiously on the tire at a max. speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) in order to reach a vehicle or tire dealer to have the tire replaced.

It is possible that some tires, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tire may adversely affect tire performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The Tire Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tire repair method and is to be used for one tire only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture.

Read the section "Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit".

## Notes on the safe use of the Tire Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tire Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tire Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tires. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tire can be sealed using the Tire Mobility Kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tires.
- When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tire Mobility Kit may not be effective for tire damage larger than approximately 0.24 in (6 mm).

  Please contact the nearest Kia dealership if the tire cannot be made roadworthy with the Tire Mobility Kit.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tire.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the engine running. Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tire Mobility Kit unattended while it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 min. at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -22°F (-30°C).

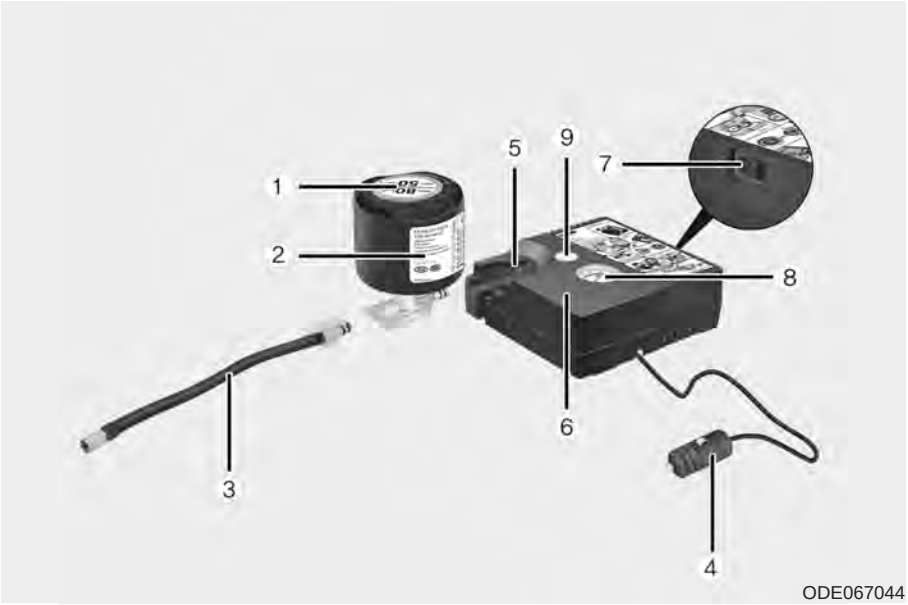
**⚠ WARNING**

- **If sealant comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas thoroughly. Seek medical attention if irritation develops and persists.**
- **If sealant comes into contact with the eyes, flush eyes with water for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if irritation persists.**
- **If sealant is swallowed, call a physician or poison control center immediately.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the Tire Mobility Kit if a tire is severely damaged.**

## Components of the Tire Mobility Kit (TMK)




1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
4. Connectors and cable for the power outlet direct connection
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. On/off switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tire inflation pressure
9. Button for reducing tire inflation pressure

Connectors and cable are stored in the compressor housing.

**⚠ WARNING - Expired sealant**

**Do not use the Tire sealant after the sealant has expired (i.e. after the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tire failure.**

**⚠ WARNING - Sealant**

- **Keep out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid contact with eyes.**
- **Do not swallow.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**The sealant container and insert hose (3) cannot be reused.**

## Using the Tire Mobility Kit

1. Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.
2. Filling the sealant Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.



OJF065012

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Before using the tire repair kit, please read carefully the instruction attached on the sealant case. Detach the speed limit label on the sealant case and put it on a highly visible place. Always drive within the speed limit.***

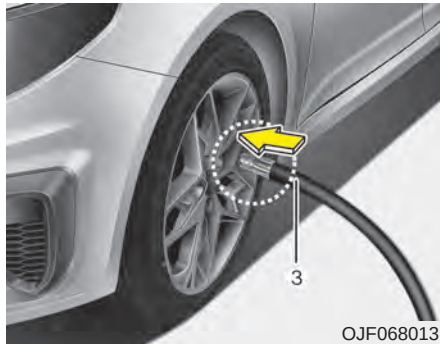

ODEP067048

3. Shake the sealant bottle.



OJF067055

4. Connect the filling hose (3) onto the connector of the sealant bottle.
5. Ensure that button (7) on the compressor is not pressed.



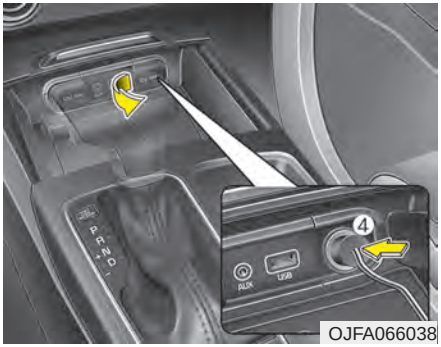
OJF068013

6. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.



OJF067057

7. Insert the sealant bottle into the housing (5) of the compressor so that the bottle is upright.
8. Ensure that the compressor is switched off.




9. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors (4).

### ✻ NOTICE

**Only use the front passenger side power outlet.**

10. With the engine start/stop button position on: switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure (refer to the "Tires and wheels" in chapter 9). Be careful not to over-inflate the tire and stay away from the tire when filling it. When the tire and wheel are damaged, do not use Tire Mobility Kit for your safety.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tire pressure is below 29 psi (200 kPa). This could result in an accident due to sudden tire failure.**

11. Switch off the compressor.
12. Detach the hose from the sealant bottle connector and from the tire valve.

Return the Tire Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Carbon monoxide poisoning and suffocation is possible if the engine is left running in a poorly ventilated or unventilated location (such as inside a building).**

### Distributing the sealant

13. Immediately drive approximately 4~6 miles (7~10 km or, about 10 min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tire.

When you use the Tire Mobility Kit, the tire pressure sensors and wheel may be stained by sealant. Therefore, remove the tire pressure sensors and wheel stained by sealant and have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

### Checking the tire inflation pressure

1. After driving approximately 4~6 miles (7~10 km or about 10 minutes), stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor (clip mounted side) directly and then connect the filling hose (3) (opposite side) to the tire valve.
3. Connect between compressor and the vehicle power outlet using the cable and connectors.
4. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to 29 psi (200 kPa). With the ignition switched on, proceed as follows.
   - **To increase the inflation pressure:** Switch on the compressor, position I. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.**

- **To reduce the inflation pressure:** Press the button (9) on the compressor.

**⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure sensor**

***When you use the Tire Mobility Kit including sealant not approved by Kia, the tire pressure sensors may be damaged by sealant. The sealant on the tire pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tire with a new one and inspect the tire pressure sensors at an authorized dealer.***

### Technical Data

System voltage: DC 12 V

Working voltage: DC 10 - 15 V

Amperage rating: max. 15 A ± 1A (at DC 12V operation)

Suitable for use at temperatures:

-22 ~ +158°F (-30 ~ +70°C)

Max. working pressure:

87 psi (6 bar)

Size

Compressor: 6.3 x 5.9 x 2.2 in. (161 x 150 x 55.8 mm)

Sealant bottle: 4.1 x 3.3 ø in. (104 x 85 ø mm)

Compressor weight:

1.77 lbs ± 0.07 lbs (805g ± 30g)

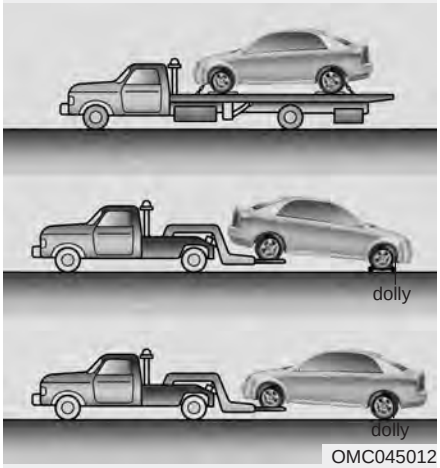
Sealant volume:

18.3 cu. in. (300 ml)

❈ Sealant and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized vehicle or tire dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home. Liquid residue from the sealant should be disposed of by your vehicle or tire dealer or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

# TOWING

## Towing service




If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

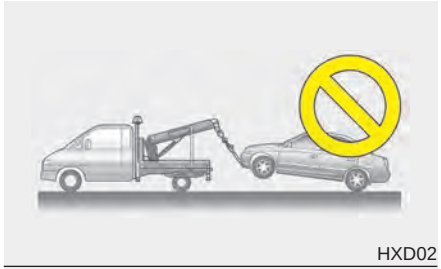
### ✻ NOTICE

**If the EPB does not release normally, take your vehicle to an authorized Kia dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.**

**⚠ WARNING - Side and curtain Air bag**

**If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.**

**The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignition is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**



HXD02



HXD03

**⚠ CAUTION - Towing**

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION - Towing gear position**

***Failure to place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.***

# Maintenance

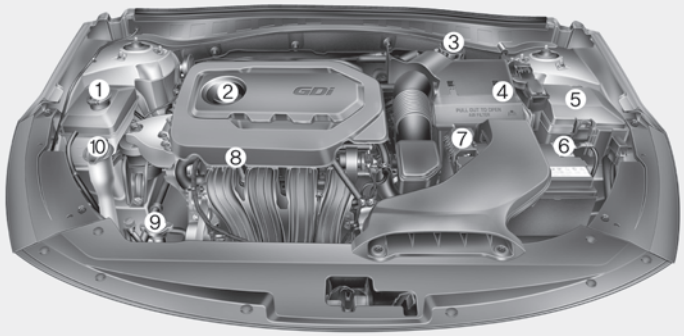

Engine compartment . . . . . 7-4
Maintenance services . . . . . 7-6
• Owner's responsibility . . . . . 7-6
• Owner maintenance precautions . . . . . 7-7
Owner maintenance . . . . . 7-8
• Owner maintenance schedule. . . . . 7-8
Scheduled maintenance service. . . . . 7-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . 7-22
• Engine oil and filter. . . . . 7-22
• Drive belts . . . . . 7-22
• Fuel filter (for gasoline) . . . . . 7-22
• Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections . . . . . 7-22
• Vapor hose and fuel filler cap . . . . . 7-22
• Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses . . . . . 7-23
• Air cleaner filter . . . . . 7-23
• Spark plugs . . . . . 7-23
• Valve clearance . . . . . 7-23
• Cooling system . . . . . 7-23
• Coolant . . . . . 7-23
• Automatic transmission fluid . . . . . 7-23
• Dual clutch transmission Fluid . . . . . 7-24
• Brake hoses and lines . . . . . 7-24
• Brake fluid . . . . . 7-24
• Parking brake . . . . . 7-25
• Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors. . . . . 7-25
• Exhaust pipe and muffler. . . . . 7-25
• Suspension mounting bolts. . . . . 7-25
• Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint . . . . . 7-25
• Drive shafts and boots. . . . . 7-25
• Air conditioning refrigerant. . . . . 7-25
Checking fluid levels . . . . . 7-25
Engine oil. . . . . 7-26
• Checking the engine oil level . . . . . 7-26
• Changing the engine oil and filter . . . . . 7-27
Engine coolant . . . . . 7-28
• Checking the coolant level . . . . . 7-28
• Changing the coolant . . . . . 7-30
Brake fluid . . . . . 7-31
• Checking the brake fluid level . . . . . 7-31
Washer fluid . . . . . 7-32
• Checking the washer fluid level . . . . . 7-32
Parking brake . . . . . 7-33
• Checking the parking brake. . . . . 7-33
Air cleaner. . . . . 7-34
• Filter replacement . . . . . 7-34

Climate control air filter . . . . . 7-36
• Filter inspection . . . . . 7-36
Wiper blades . . . . . 7-38
• Blade inspection . . . . . 7-38
• Blade replacement . . . . . 7-38
Battery . . . . . 7-42
• For best battery service . . . . . 7-42
• Recharging the battery . . . . . 7-43
• Reset items . . . . . 7-44
Tires and wheels . . . . . 7-45
• Tire care . . . . . 7-45
• Recommended cold tire inflation pressures . . . . . 7-45
• Tire pressure . . . . . 7-46
• Checking tire inflation pressure . . . . . 7-46
• Tire rotation . . . . . 7-47
• Wheel alignment and tire balance . . . . . 7-48
• Tire replacement . . . . . 7-49
• Wheel replacement . . . . . 7-50
• Tire traction . . . . . 7-50
• Tire maintenance . . . . . 7-50
• Tire sidewall labeling . . . . . 7-50
• All season tires . . . . . 7-57
• Summer tires . . . . . 7-57
• Snow tires . . . . . 7-57
• Tire chains . . . . . 7-58
• Radial-ply tires . . . . . 7-58
• Low aspect ratio tire . . . . . 7-59
Fuses . . . . . 7-60
• Inner panel fuse replacement . . . . . 7-62
• Engine compartment fuse replacement . . . . . 7-64
• Fuse/relay panel description . . . . . 7-66
Light bulbs . . . . . 7-76
• Bulb replacement precaution . . . . . 7-76
• Light bulb position (Front) . . . . . 7-78
• Light bulb position (Rear) . . . . . 7-79
• Light bulb position (Side) . . . . . 7-80
• Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-80
• Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-81
• Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-82
• Headlamp (Low/High beam) (LED type) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type B) . . . . . 7-82
• Position lamp / Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type A, B) . . . . . 7-83
• Front fog lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-83
• Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . 7-84
• Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-84
• Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-85

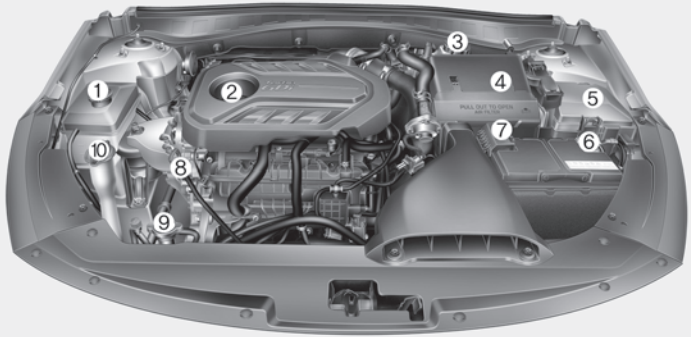
• Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . 7-87
• Back-up lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-87
• Tail lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-88
• License plate lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-89
• High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . . . . 7-90
• Map lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-90
• Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-91
• Room lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-91
• Personal lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . . . . 7-92
• Glove box lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-92
• Trunk lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-93
**Appearance care . . . . . 7-94**
• Exterior care . . . . . 7-94
• Interior care . . . . . 7-99
**Emission control system . . . . . 7-102**
• Crankcase emission control system . . . . . 7-102
• Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system . . . . 7-102
• Exhaust emission control system . . . . . 7-103
**California perchlorate notice . . . . . 7-105**

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **THETA 2.4L - GDI**




■ **THETA 2.0L T-GDI**

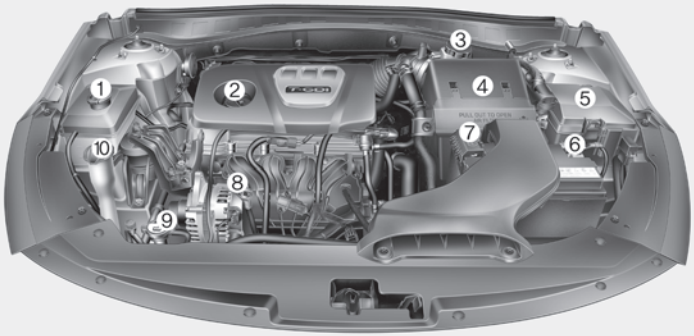



1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

❊ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA078152/OJFA078150

■ **GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OJFA078151

## MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Should you have any doubts concerning the inspection or servicing of your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have an authorized Kia dealer perform this work.

An authorized Kia dealer has factory-trained technicians and genuine Kia parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see an authorized Kia dealer.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

### Owner's responsibility

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.**
**You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.**
**Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Consumer Information manual.**

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized Kia dealer. An authorized Kia dealer meets Kia's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Kia in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

#### ✻ NOTICE - NHTSA Safety Corrosion Alert

**The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) has issued a general warning to all vehicle owners of all brands regarding the risks associated with vehicle underbody corrosion. From your initial purchase, take the following steps to prevent unsafe corrosion damage to your vehicle:**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Wash the undercarriage of your vehicle regularly during the winter and whenever your vehicle has been exposed to such salts or chemicals.**
- **Do a thorough washing of the undercarriage at the end of the winter.**
- **Use professional service technicians or governmental inspection stations to annually inspect for corrosion.**
- **Immediately seek an inspection of your vehicle if you become visually aware of corrosion flaking or scaling or if you become aware of a change in vehicle performance, such as soft or spongy brakes, fluids leaking, impairment of directional control, suspension noises or rattling metal straps.**
  **NHTSA further advises that after a vehicle is 7 years old, it is essential that you take these indicated maintenance steps to ensure that you protect yourself from unsafe corrosion conditions.**

## Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

As explained earlier in this section, several procedures can be done only by an authorized Kia dealer with special tools.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Consumer Information manual provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorized Kia dealer.**

### ⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work

**Do not wear jewelry or loose clothing while working under the hood of your vehicle with the engine running. These can become entangled in moving parts, if you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

### ⚠ WARNING - Touching metal parts

**Do not touch metal parts (including strut bars) while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so could result in serious bodily injury. Turn the engine off and wait until the metal parts cool down to perform maintenance work on the vehicle.**

## OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized Kia dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

### Owner maintenance schedule

***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot coolant**

**Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure.**

***While operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the automatic transmission P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

***At least monthly:***

- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

***At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall) :***

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

***At least once a year :***

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and check the hood hinges.
- Lubricate the door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow the Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 5 miles (8 km) in normal temperature or less than 10 miles (16 km) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 106 mph (170 km/h)
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition

*If your vehicle is operated in any of the prior listed conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently, using the severe usage maintenance schedule instead of the normal usage maintenance schedule.*

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Non Turbo Models

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance.
Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 | 168 | 180 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 7.5 | 15 | 22.5 | 30 | 37.5 | 45 | 52.5 | 60 | 67.5 | 75 | 82.5 | 90 | 97.5 | 105 | 112.5 |
| | Km×1,000 | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 | 168 | 180 |
| Drive belts *1 | | At first, inspect at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months, after that, inspect every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | Theta II 2.4L GDI | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Fuel additives *2 | | Add every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Air cleaner filter | | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I |
| Spark plugs | Theta II 2.4L GDI | Replace every 97,500 miles (156,000 km) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Valve clearance *3 | Theta II 2.4L GDI | Inspect every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1 : The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced.

*2 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*3 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. Have an authorized Kia dealer perform the operation.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Non Turbo Models(CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 | 168 | 180 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 7.5 | 15 | 22.5 | 30 | 37.5 | 45 | 52.5 | 60 | 67.5 | 75 | 82.5 | 90 | 97.5 | 105 | 112.5 |
| | Km×1,000 | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 | 168 | 180 |
| Rotate tires | Rotate every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Climate control air filter | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Vacuum hose | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Coolant (Engine) | At first, replace at 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 10 years, after that, replace every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Battery condition | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake discs and pads | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Drive shaft and boots | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I |
| Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Exhaust system | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Non Turbo Models (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Months | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 | 168 | 180 |
| | Miles×1,000 | 7.5 | 15 | 22.5 | 30 | 37.5 | 45 | 52.5 | 60 | 67.5 | 75 | 82.5 | 90 | 97.5 | 105 | 112.5 |
| | Km×1,000 | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 | 108 | 120 | 132 | 144 | 156 | 168 | 180 |
| Cooling system | | - | - | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Automatic transmission fluid | | No check, No service required | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dual clutch transmission fluid | | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - |
| Vapor hose and fuel filler cap | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Fuel tank air filter *4 | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections | | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - |
| Parking brake (Foot Type) | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Brake fluid | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*4 : Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended as the level of maintenance will be dependent upon the quality fuel used in the vehicle.

## Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Non Turbo Models

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars normally used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace I : Inspect and, after inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | Theta II 2.4L GDI | R | Every 3,750 miles (6,000 km) or 6 months | A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K |
| Air cleaner filter | | R | More frequently | C, E |
| Spark plugs | | R | More frequently | A, B, F, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transmission fluid | | R | Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Dual clutch transmission fluid | | R | Every 75,000 miles (120,000 km) | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors | | I | More frequently | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake (Foot Type) | | I | More frequently | C, D, G, H |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | | I | More frequently | C, D, E, F, G |
| Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts | | I | More frequently | C, D, E, F, G |

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|
| Drive shafts and boots | I | More frequently | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Climate control air filter | R | More frequently | C, E, G |

## Severe driving conditions

A - Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 5 miles (8 km) in normal temperature or less than 10 miles (16 km) in freezing temperature

B - Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances

C - Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads

D - Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E - Driving in heavy dust condition

F - Driving in heavy traffic area

G - Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly

H - Towing a Trailer, or using a camper, or roof rack

I - Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing

J - Driving over 106 mph (170 km/h)

K - Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Models

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance.
Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** | **108** | **120** | **132** | **144** | **156** | **168** | **180** |
| | **Miles×1,000** | **6** | **12** | **18** | **24** | **30** | **36** | **42** | **48** | **54** | **60** | **66** | **72** | **78** | **84** | **90** |
| | **Km×1,000** | **10** | **20** | **30** | **40** | **50** | **60** | **70** | **80** | **90** | **100** | **110** | **120** | **130** | **140** | **150** |
| Drive belts *1 | | At first, inspect at 60,000 miles (100,000 km) or 72 months, after that, inspect every 12,000 miles (20,000 km) or 24 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | Theta II 2.0L T-GDI | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| | Gamma 1.6L T-GDI | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Fuel additives *2 | | Add every 6,000 miles (10,000 km) or 12 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Air cleaner filter | | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | R | I | I | I |
| Spark plugs | Theta II 2.0L T-GDI | Replace every 42,000 miles (70,000 km) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Gamma 1.6L T-GDI | Replace every 42,000 miles (70,000 km) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Valve clearance *3 | Theta II 2.0L T-GDI | Inspect every 60,000 miles (100,000 km) or 72 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Gamma 1.6L T-GDI | Inspect every 60,000 miles (100,000 km) or 72 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1 : The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced.

*2 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized Kia dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*3 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. Have an authorized Kia dealer perform the operation.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Models (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** | **108** | **120** | **132** | **144** | **156** | **168** | **180** |
| | **Miles×1,000** | **6** | **12** | **18** | **24** | **30** | **36** | **42** | **48** | **54** | **60** | **66** | **72** | **78** | **84** | **90** |
| | **Km×1,000** | **10** | **20** | **30** | **40** | **50** | **60** | **70** | **80** | **90** | **100** | **110** | **120** | **130** | **140** | **150** |
| Rotate tires | Rotate every 6,000 miles (10,000 km) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Climate control air filter | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | |
| Vacuum hose | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Coolant (Engine) | At first, replace at 120,000 miles (200,000 km) or 10 years : after that, replace every 30,000 miles (50,000 km) or 24 months | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Battery condition | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Brake discs and pads | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Drive shaft and boots | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | |
| Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |
| Exhaust system | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Models (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** | **108** | **120** | **132** | **144** | **156** | **168** | **180** |
| | **Miles×1,000** | **6** | **12** | **18** | **24** | **30** | **36** | **42** | **48** | **54** | **60** | **66** | **72** | **78** | **84** | **90** |
| | **Km×1,000** | **10** | **20** | **30** | **40** | **50** | **60** | **70** | **80** | **90** | **100** | **110** | **120** | **130** | **140** | **150** |
| Intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose | Theta II 2.0L T-GDI | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| | Gamma 1.6L T-GDI | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Cooling system | | - | - | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Automatic transmission fluid | | No check, No service required | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dual clutch transmission fluid | | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - |
| Vapor hose and fuel filler cap | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Fuel tank air filter *4 | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*4 : Fuel tank air filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended as the level of maintenance will be dependent upon the quality fuel used in the vehicle.

## Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Models (CONT.)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Months** | **12** | **24** | **36** | **48** | **60** | **72** | **84** | **96** | **108** | **120** | **132** | **144** | **156** | **168** | **180** |
| | **Miles×1,000** | **6** | **12** | **18** | **24** | **30** | **36** | **42** | **48** | **54** | **60** | **66** | **72** | **78** | **84** | **90** |
| | **Km×1,000** | **10** | **20** | **30** | **40** | **50** | **60** | **70** | **80** | **90** | **100** | **110** | **120** | **130** | **140** | **150** |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections | | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - | I | - | - | - |
| Parking brake (Foot Type) | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |
| Brake fluid | | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - | I | - |

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

## Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Turbo Models

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars normally used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace I : Inspect and, after inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter | Theta II 2.0L T-GDI | R | Every 3,000 miles (5,000 km) or 6 months | A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K |
| | Gamma 1.6L T-GDI | R | Every 3,000 miles (5,000 km) or 6 months | A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K |
| Air cleaner filter | | I | More frequently | C, E |
| Spark plugs | | R | More frequently | A, B, F, G, H, I, K |
| Automatic transaxle fluid | | R | Every 60,000 miles (100,000 km) | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Dual clutch transmission fluid | | R | Every 75,000 miles (120,000 km) | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors | | I | More frequently | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake (Foot Type) | | I | More frequently | C, D, G, H |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | | I | More frequently | C, D, E, F, G |

| MAINTENANCE ITEM | MAINTENANCE OPERATION | MAINTENANCE INTERVALS | DRIVING CONDITION |
|---|---|---|---|
| Suspension ball joints and mounting bolts | I | More frequently | C, D, E, F, G |
| Drive shafts and boots | I | More frequently | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Climate control air filter | R | More frequently | C, E, G |

## Severe driving conditions

A - Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 5 miles (8 km) in normal temperature or less than 10 miles (16 km) in freezing temperature

B - Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances

C - Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads

D - Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E - Driving in heavy dust condition

F - Driving in heavy traffic area

G - Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly

H - Towing a Trailer, or using a camper, or roof rack

I - Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing

J - Driving over 106 mph (170 km/h)

K - Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

## EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

### Fuel filter (for gasoline)

This gasoline powered vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed ; however, the quality of fuel used may impact the frequency of maintenance needed. If there are any fuel related problems like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, fuel filter inspection or replacement may be needed.

The fuel filter be Inspected or replaced by an authorized Kia dealer.

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have an authorized Kia dealer replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

### Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is installed correctly.

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration.

Pay particular attention to the hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

### Air cleaner filter

A Genuine Kia air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

### Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

### Valve clearance (if equipped)

Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. An authorized Kia dealer should perform this procedure.

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Automatic transmission fluid

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

But in severe conditions, the fluid should be changed at an authorized Kia dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this chapter.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Automatic transmission fluid color is usually red.**
**As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker.**
**This is normal, and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use only specified automatic transmission fluid. The use of a non-specified fluid could result in a transmission malfunction and failure. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)***

### Dual clutch transmission Fluid

Inspect the dual clutch transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

**✻ NOTICE - NHTSA Safety Corrosion Alert**

**NHTSA has warned all vehicle owners of all brands that they must maintain their vehicles in a manner which will prevent brake hose and brake line failures due to corrosion when such vehicles are exposed to winter road salt and related chemicals. While serious corrosion conditions typically only manifest themselves as safety issues after 7 years of vehicle use, the corrosion process starts immediately and thus underbody cleaning maintenance must commence from your vehicle's first exposure to road salts and chemicals. NHTSA urges vehicle owners to take the following steps to prevent corrosion:**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

1. **Wash the undercarriage of your vehicle regularly throughout the winter and do a thorough washing in the spring to remove road salt and other de-icing chemicals.**
2. **Monitor the brake system for signs of corrosion by having regular professional inspections and watching for signs of problems, including loss of brake fluid, unusual leaks and soft or spongy feel in the brake pedal.**
3. **Replace the entire brake pipe assembly if you find severe corrosion that causes scaling or flaking of brake components.**

### Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

### Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake pedal and cables.

### Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads and discs for excessive wear and calipers for fluid leakage.

### Exhaust pipe and muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

### Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

### Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

### Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

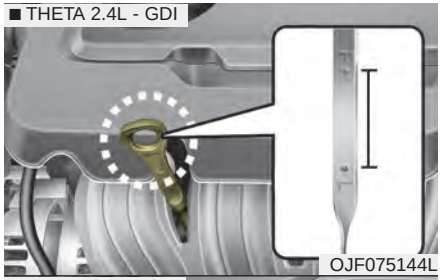
## CHECKING FLUID LEVELS

When checking engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid, always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant or fluid. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

## ENGINE OIL

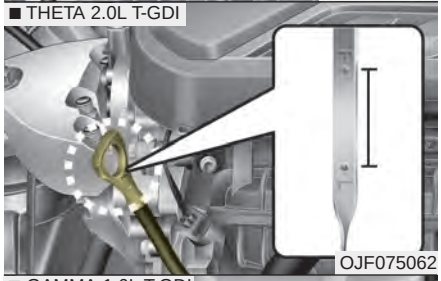
### Checking the engine oil level

■ THETA 2.4L - GDI



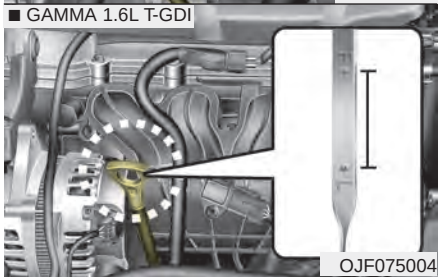
OJF075144L

■ THETA 2.0L T-GDI



OJF075062

■ GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI



OJF075004

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.

**⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose**

**Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.**

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

**⚠ CAUTION - Replacing engine oil**

***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***

■ THETA 2.4L - GDI



OJF075147L

■ THETA 2.0L T-GDI



OJF075067

■ GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI




OJF075005

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.**

*Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)*

## Changing the engine oil and filter

Have engine oil and filter changed by an authorized Kia dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

**⚠ WARNING - Used engine oil**

**Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.**

## ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year: at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

### Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING**



**Removing radiator cap**

**Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.**

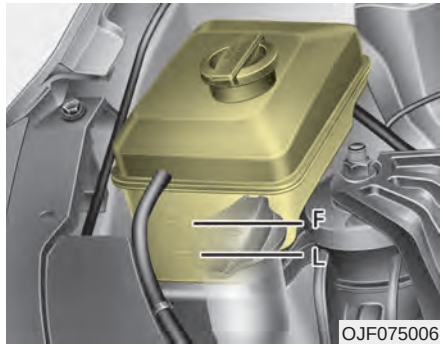
- Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system.

  When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.
- Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Cooling fan**



**Use caution when working near the blade of the cooling fan. The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. it may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running.**




Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

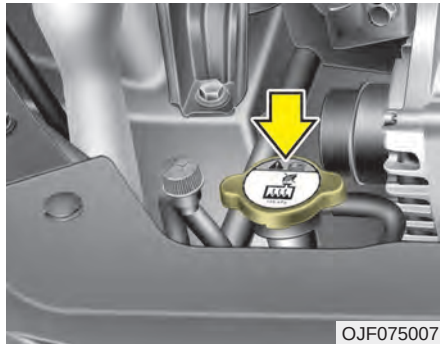
If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill. If frequent additions are required, see an authorized Kia dealer for a cooling system inspection.

***Recommended engine coolant***

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze. This would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| 5°F (-15°C) | 35 | 65 |
| -13°F (-25°C) | 40 | 60 |
| -31°F (-35°C) | 50 | 50 |
| -49°F (-45°C) | 60 | 40 |


OJF075007

**⚠ WARNING**



**Radiator cap**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure which may result in serious injury.**

## Changing the coolant

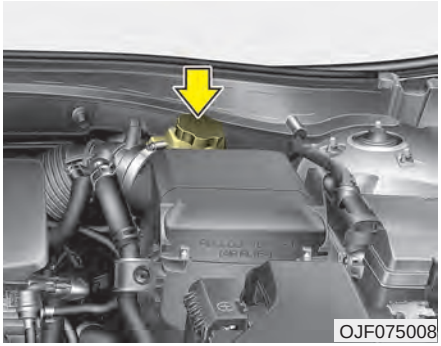
Have the coolant changed by an authorized Kia dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.***

## BRAKE FLUID

### Checking the brake fluid level




Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX (Maximum) and MIN (Minimum) marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

**⚠ CAUTION - Proper fluid**

***Only use brake fluid in brake system. Small amounts of improper fluids (such as engine oil) can cause damage to the brake system.***

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX (Maximum) level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, have the brake system checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

*Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 8.)*

*Never mix different types of fluid.*

In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

When changing and adding brake fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

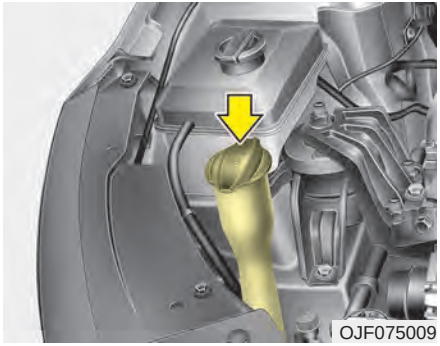
**⚠ CAUTION - Brake fluid**

***Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.***

Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.

## WASHER FLUID

### Checking the washer fluid level




The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. In warm climate, plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available; however, in cold climates washer fluid with anti-freezing characteristics is required to prevent freezing.

**⚠ WARNING - Flammable fluid**

**Do not allow the washer fluid to come in contact with open flames or sparks. The windshield washer fluid reservoir is flammable under certain circumstances. This can result in a fire.**

**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control.**

**⚠ WARNING - Windshield fluid**

**Do not drink the windshield washer fluid. The windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals.**

# PARKING BRAKE

## Checking the parking brake



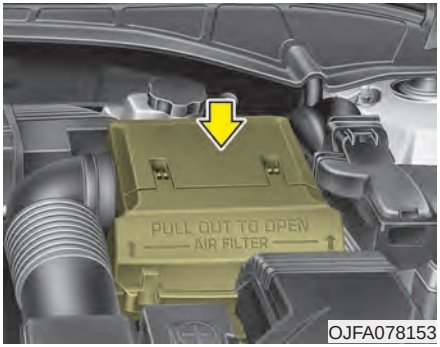
OJF055017

Check whether the stroke is within specification when the parking brake pedal is pressed with 66 lb, 294 N (30 kg) of force. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the parking brake adjusted by an authorized Kia dealer.

**Stroke : 6~7 notch**

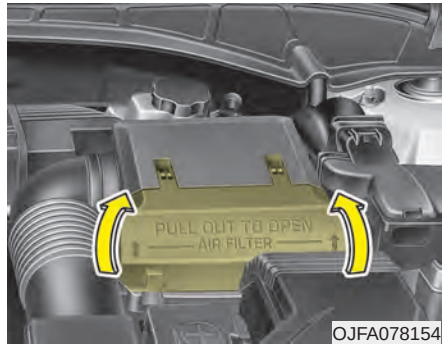
## AIR CLEANER

### Filter replacement

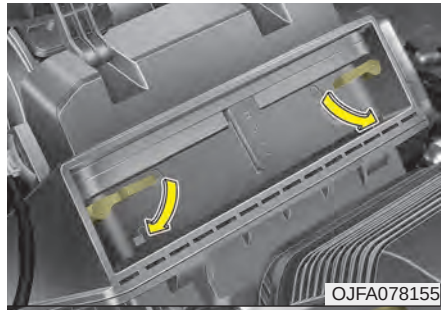


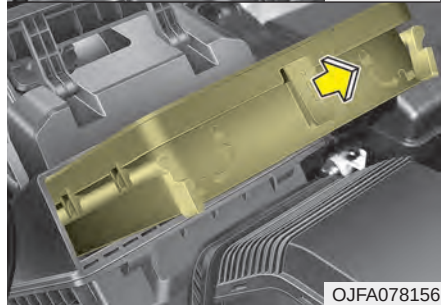

The air filter must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

While inspecting the air clear element, the air filter can be cleaned using compressed air.




1. Pull out the air cleaner cover.




2. Unlock by turning the locking lever downward.
3. Pull the air cleaner filter to replace.
4. Lock the cover with the reverse order.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to "Maintenance under severe usage conditions" in this chapter.)*

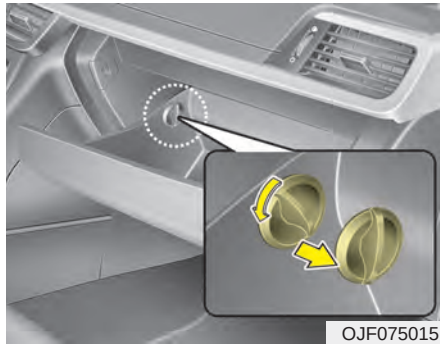
**⚠ CAUTION - Air filter maintenance**

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***Use a Kia genuine part. Use of a non-genuine part could damage the air flow sensor.***

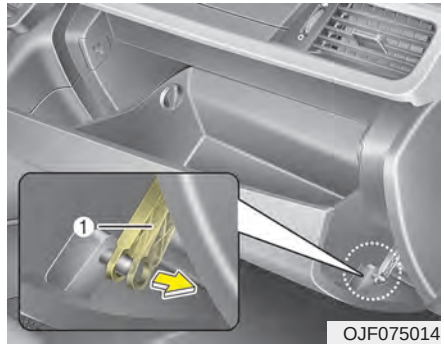
## CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Filter inspection

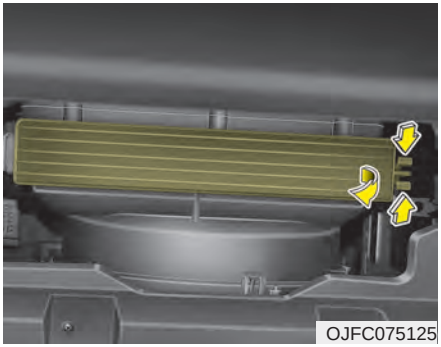
The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.



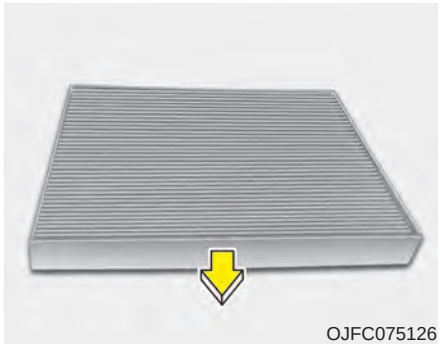

1. Open the glove box and remove the stoppers on both sides.




2. With the glove box open, pull the support strap (1).


OJFC075125

3. Remove the climate control air filter cover while pressing the lock on the right side of the cover.

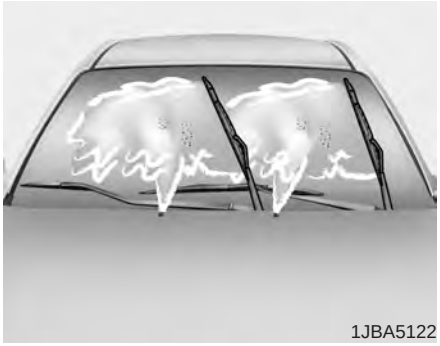

OJFC075126

4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

# WIPER BLADES

## Blade inspection




Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

**⚠ CAUTION - Wiper blades**

***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***

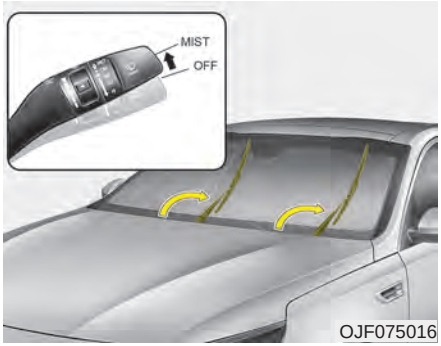
## Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

Aftermarket wiper blades may result in wiper malfunction and/or failure. It is recommended to use certified Kia parts.

### *Front windshield wiper blade*

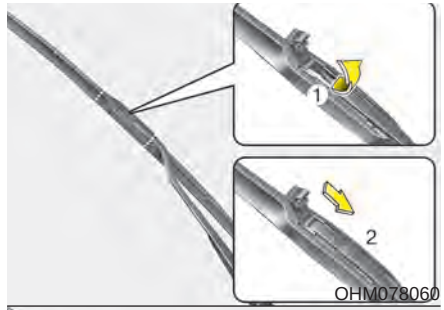



To inspect or replace the windshield wiper blades and to prevent damaging the hood, move the windshield wiper blades to the service position as follows;

After turning off the engine, move the wiper switch to the single wiping (MIST) position within 20 seconds and hold the switch more than 2 seconds until the wiper blade is in the fully up position.

**⚠ CAUTION - Wiper arms**

- ***Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.***
- ***Do not pull wiper arm forward, since arm could chip hood paint.***



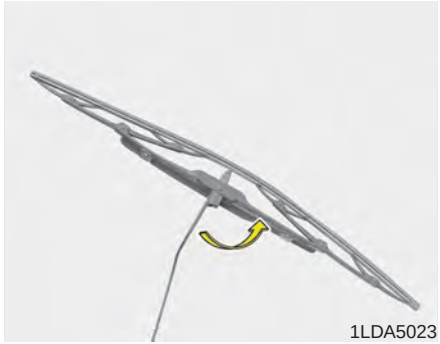




**Type A**

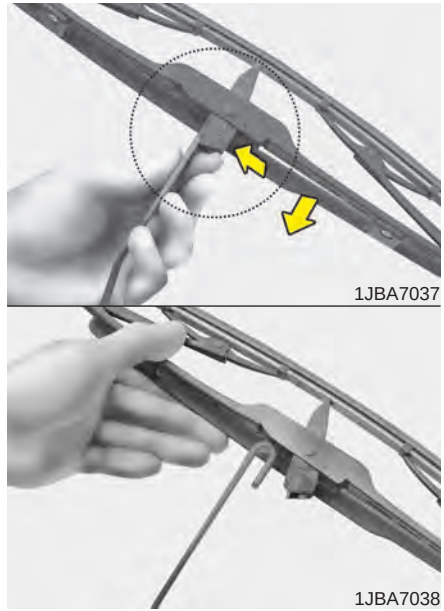
1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.
3. Install the new blade assembly.

4. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
5. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.




**Type B**

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.

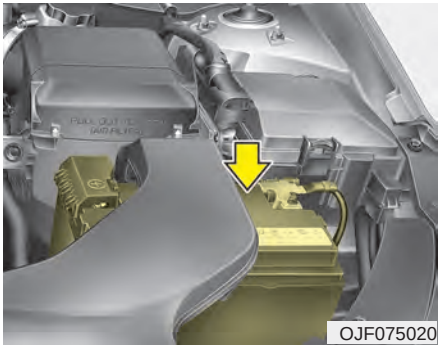



2. Compress the clip and slide the blade assembly downward.
3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the new blade assembly.

5. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
6. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.

## BATTERY

### For best battery service




- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**⚠ WARNING - Risk of explosion**

**Keep lit cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.**

**The battery contains hydrogen -- a highly combustible gas which will explode if it comes in contact with a flame or spark.**

**Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID and electrolytes. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.**

**Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.**

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel pain or burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Please return the battery to an authorized Kia dealer to be recycled.

Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.

**⚠ WARNING - Risk of electrocution**

**Never touch the electrical ignition system while the vehicle is running. This system works with high voltage which can shock you.**

**⚠ WARNING - Recharging Battery**

**Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**

**⚠ WARNING - Battery lead compound**

**Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.**

**Wash hands after handling.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.**

### Recharging the battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlamps or interior lamps were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.
- Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 120°F (49°C).
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.

1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.

### Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See chapter 4)
- Sunroof (See chapter 4)
- Trip computer (See chapter 4)
- Climate control system (See chapter 4)
- Driver position memory system (See chapter 3)
- Audio (See chapter 4)

# TIRES AND WHEELS

## Tire care

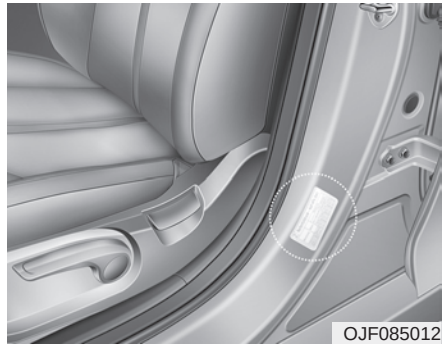
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

## Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than one mile (1.6 km).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

For recommended inflation pressure refer to “Tire and wheels” in chapter 8.


OJF085012

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver’s side center pillar.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire underinflation**

**Inflate your tires consistent with the instructions provided in this manual. Severe underinflation (10 psi (70 kPa) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.**

Failure to maintain specified pressure may result in excessive wear, poor handling, reduced fuel economy, deformation of tire and/or wheel, harsh ride conditions, possibility for additional damage from road hazards, or result in tire failure.

## Tire pressure

Always observe the following:

- Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than one mile (1.6 km) since startup.)
- Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.
- Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.
- Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 4 to 6 psi (28 to 41 kPa). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire Inflation**

**Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.**

## Checking tire inflation pressure

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

### *How to check*

Use a good quality gauge to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

- Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.
- Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.
- Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.

## Tire rotation

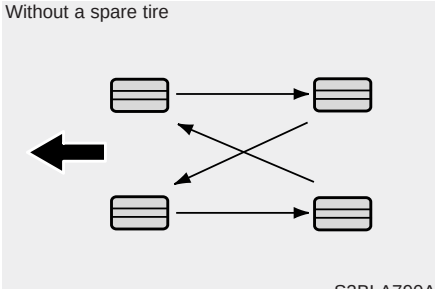
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

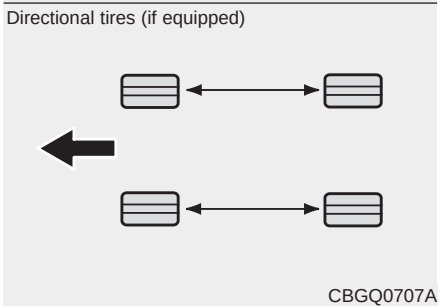
Refer to “Tire and wheels” in chapter 8.

Without a spare tire



S2BLA790A

Directional tires (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

*Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.*

Rotate radial tires that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

**⚠ WARNING - Mixing tires**

- **Do not use the compact spare tire (if equipped) for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics.**

## Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

**⚠ CAUTION - Wheel weight**

***Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.***

## Tire replacement




If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear Indicator (A) will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tire size affects wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **In order to maintain optimal driving performance, we recommend replacing tires with the same specification and type as originally installed in your vehicle. If not, driving performance could be altered.**
- **When replacing tires (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tires (or wheels) as a pair.**
  **Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.**

### *Compact spare tire replacement*

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

## Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

**⚠ CAUTION - Wheel**

***Wheels that do not meet Kia's specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.***

## Tire traction

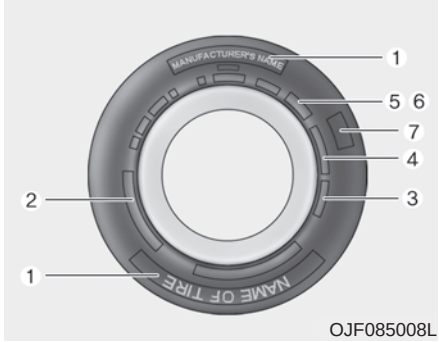
Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road, to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

## Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

## Tire sidewall labeling




OJF085008L

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

### *1. Manufacturer or brand name*

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

### *2. Tire size designation*

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**P205/55R16 89H**

P - Applicable vehicle type (tires marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tires have this marking).

205 - Tire width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

16 - Rim diameter in inches.

89 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

#### Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

**6.0JX16**

6.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

16 - Rim diameter in inches.

#### Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicles. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 112 mph (180 km/h) |
| T | 118 mph (190 km/h) |
| H | 130 mph (210 km/h) |
| V | 149 mph (240 km/h) |
| Z | Above 149 mph (240 km/h) |

### *3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)*

Any tires that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1618 represents that the tire was produced in the 16th week of 2018.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire age**

**Replace tires within the recommended time frame. Failure to replace tires as recommended can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident.**

### *4. Tire ply composition and material*

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

### *5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure*

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

### *6. Maximum load rating*

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

### *7. Uniform tire quality grading*

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 440

TRACTION A

TEMPERATURE A

**Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tires be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

**Traction - AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tires ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

**Temperature -A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**Tire terminology and definitions**

**Air Pressure:** The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kilopascal (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi).

**Accessory Weight:** This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio:** The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt:** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead:** The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Tire Pressure:** The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kilopascals (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi) before a tire has built up heat from driving.

**Curb Weight:** This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings:** A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

**GVWR:** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

**GAWR FRT:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Front Axle.

**GAWR RR:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Rear axle.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa):** The metric unit for air pressure.

**Light truck(LT) tire:** A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles.

**Load Index:** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Load ratings:** The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure:** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating:** The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight:** The sum of curb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight:** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs. (68kg).

**Occupant Distribution:** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall:** The side of a asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The outward facing sidewall bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the inner facing sidewall.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Ply:** A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords

**Pneumatic tire:** A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

**Production options weight:** The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb.(2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure:** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure and shown on the tire placard.

**Radial Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim:** A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall:** The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating:** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction:** The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread:** The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators:** Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch of tread remains.

**UTQGS:** Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards, a tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight:** The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs. (68kg) plus the rated cargo and luggage load.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire due to curb and accessory weight plus maximum occupant and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Normal Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight and driving by 2.

**Vehicle Placard:** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure.

### All season tires

Kia specifies all season tires on some models to provide good performance for use all year round, including snowy and icy road conditions. All season tires are identified by ALL SEASON and/or M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire sidewall. Snow tires have better snow traction than all season tires and may be more appropriate in some areas.

### Summer tires

Kia specifies summer tires on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tire performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tires do not have the tire traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire side wall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Kia recommends the use of snow tires or all season tires on all four wheels.

### Snow tires

If you equip your car with snow tires, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tires. Snow tires should be installed on all four wheels; otherwise, poor handling may result.

Snow tires should carry 4 psi (28 kPa) more air pressure than the pressure recommended for the standard tires on the tire label on the driver's side of the center pillar, or up to the maximum pressure shown on the tire sidewall, whichever is less.

Do not drive faster than 75 mph (120 km/h) when your vehicle is equipped with snow tires.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use summer tires at temperatures below 45°F (7°C) or when driving on snow or ice. At temperatures below 45°F (7°C), summer tires can lose elasticity, and therefore traction and braking power as well. Change the tires on your vehicle to winter or all-weather tires of the same size as the standard tires of the vehicle. Both types of tires are identified by the M+S (Mud and Snow) marking. Using summer tires at very cold temperatures could cause cracks to form, thereby damaging the tires permanently.**

## Tire chains

Tire chains, if necessary, should be installed on the front wheels.

Be sure that the chains are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

To minimize tire and chain wear, do not continue to use tire chains when they are no longer needed.

- When driving on roads covered with snow or ice, drive at less than 20 mph (30 km/h).
- Use the SAE “S” class or wire chains.
- If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to avoid contact with the vehicle body.
- To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.3~0.6 miles (0.5~1.0 km).
- Do not use tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels. In unavoidable circumstances, use a wire type chain.
- Use wire chains less than 0.47 inches (12 mm) to prevent damage to the chain's connection.

## Radial-ply tires

Radial-ply tires provide improved tread life, road hazard resistance and smoother high speed ride. The radial-ply tires used on this vehicle are of belted construction and are selected to complement the ride and handling characteristics of your vehicle.

Radial-ply tires have the same load carrying capacity as bias-ply or bias belted tires of the same size and use the same recommended inflation pressure. Mixing of radial-ply tires with bias-ply or bias belted tires is not recommended. Any combinations of radial-ply and bias-ply or bias belted tires when used on the same vehicle will seriously deteriorate vehicle handling. The best rule to follow is: identical radial-ply tires should always be used as a set of four.

Longer wearing tires can be more susceptible to irregular tread wear. It is very important to follow the tire rotation interval shown in this section to achieve the tread life potential of these tires. Cuts and punctures in radial-ply tires are repairable only in the tread area, because of sidewall flexing. Consult your tire dealer for radial-ply tire repairs.

### Low aspect ratio tire (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tires, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tires.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tire of the low aspect ratio tire is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.***

***- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.***

***- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.***

***- If the tire is impacted, we recommend that you inspect the tire condition or contact an authorized Kia dealer.***

***- To prevent damage to the tire, inspect the tire condition and pressure every 1,900 miles (3,000 km).***

- Tire damage can be difficult to identify; therefore, in the event that the tire is impacted it is recommended to have the tire checked or replaced to prevent potential air leakage.
- If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.
- You can find out the tire information on the tire sidewall.

## FUSES

■ Blade type



■ Cartridge type



■ Multi fuse



■ BFT



OJF075021

❊ Left side : Normal , Right side : Blown

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorized Kia dealer.

*Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.*

**⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement**

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring to the vehicle.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.***

### ✻ NOTICE

- When replacing a fuse, turn the ignition "OFF" and turn off switches of all electrical devices then remove battery (-) terminal.
- The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

**⚠ WARNING - Electrical Fire**

**Always ensure replacements fuses and relays are securely fastened when installed. Failure to do so can result in a vehicle fire.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- *When replacing a blown fuse or relay, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. Failure to tightly install the fuse or relay may cause damage to the wiring and electric systems.*
- *Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may not be fastened correctly which may cause vehicle damage.*

### ⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a screwdriver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.*
- *Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.*
- *If you directly connect the wire on the taillight or replace the bulb which is over the regulated capacity to install trailers etc., the inner junction block can get burned.*

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Visually inspect the battery cap to ensure it is securely closed. If the battery cap is not securely closed, moisture may enter the system and damage the electrical components.***

### ⚠ WARNING - Electrical wiring repairs

**All electrical repairs should be performed by authorized Kia dealerships using approved Kia parts. Using other wiring components, especially when retrofitting AVN or theft alarm system, remote engine control, car phone or radio may cause vehicle damage and increase the risk of a vehicle fire.**

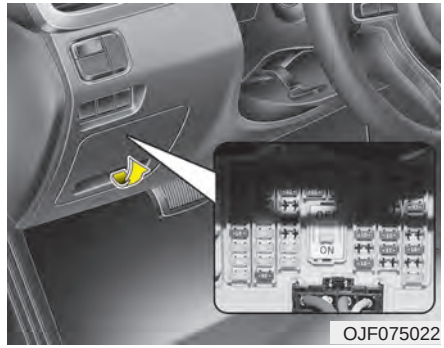
### ✻ NOTICE - Remodeling Prohibited

**Do not rewire your vehicle in any way as doing so may affect the performance of several safety features in your vehicle. Rewiring your vehicle may also void your warranty and cause you to be responsible for any subsequent vehicle damage which may result.**

### ✻ NOTICE - Window tinting precaution

**Window tint (especially metallic film) might cause communication errors or poor radio reception, and malfunctioning automatic lighting system due to reflections from the mirror tint inside the vehicle. The solution used might also leak into the electronic components, causing malfunctions or damage.**

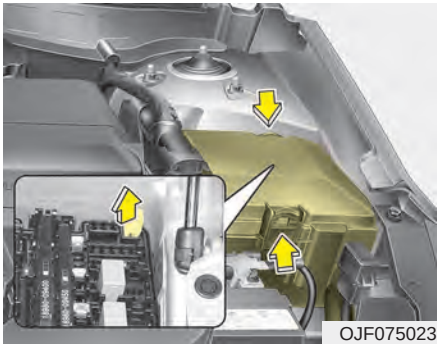
## Inner panel fuse replacement




1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.

If the switch is located in the “OFF” position, a caution indicator will be displayed in the cluster.

To identify the location of a specific fuse, please refer to the inside of the fuse panel cover and the description list in this section.


OJF075023

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided on the engine compartment fuse panel cover.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.

   *Spare fuses are provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.*
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

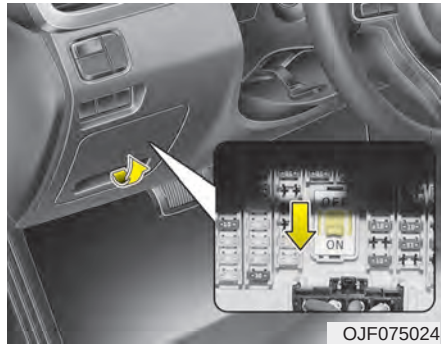
*If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the power outlet fuse.*

If the head lamp, turn signal lamp, stop signal lamp, fog lamp, DRL, tail lamp, HMSL do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

## ✻ NOTICE

**If the headlamp, fog lamp, turn signal lamp, or tail lamp malfunction even without any problem to the lamps, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer for assistance.**

### *Fuse switch*



OJF075024

Always set the fuse switch to the ON position before using the vehicle.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly. When the switch is Off, the caution indicator will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

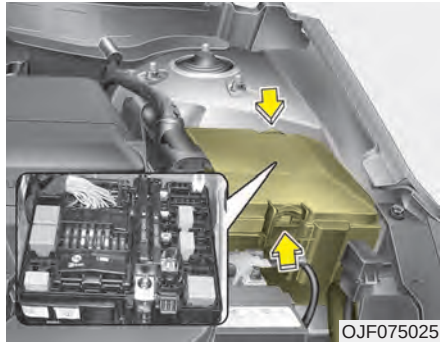
### ⚠ CAUTION - Fuse Panel Covers

***The contact points of the switches may wear out with excessive use. Please refrain from excessive use of the switches (except for long-term parking for over 1 month).***

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is going to be unused for over 1 month, set all switches to OFF to prevent the batteries from draining.**

## Engine compartment fuse replacement

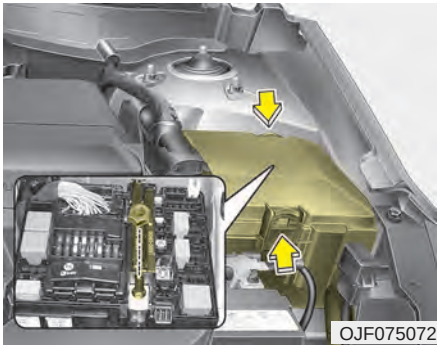



1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult an authorized Kia dealer.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Always securely install the fuse panel cover in the engine compartment to protect against electrical failure which may occur from water contact. Listen for the audible clicking sound to ensure fuse panel cover is securely fastened.***

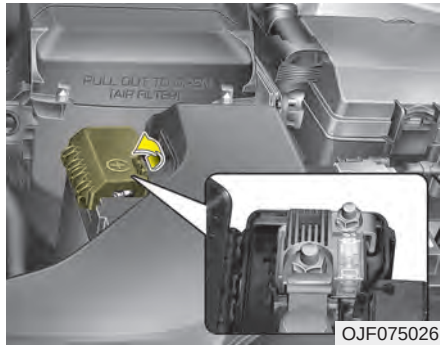
### *Multi fuse*




**✻ NOTICE**

**Do not disassemble nor assemble the multi fuse when it is secured with nuts and bolts. Incorrect or partial assembly torque may cause a fire. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

### *Main fuse*




**✻ NOTICE**

**Do not disassemble nor assemble the multi fuse when it is secured with nuts and bolts. Incorrect or partial assembly torque may cause a fire. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

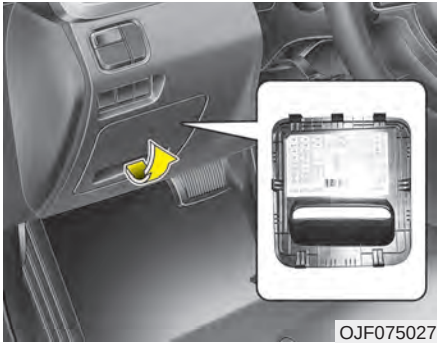
**The electronic system may not function correctly even when the engine compartment and internal fuse box's individual fuses are not disconnected. In such case the cause of the problem may be disconnection of the main fuse (BFT type), which is located inside the positive battery terminal (+) cap.**
**Since the main fuse is designed more intricately than other parts, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Visually inspect the battery cap to ensure it is securely closed. If the battery cap is not securely closed, moisture may enter the system and damage the electrical components.***

## Fuse/relay panel description

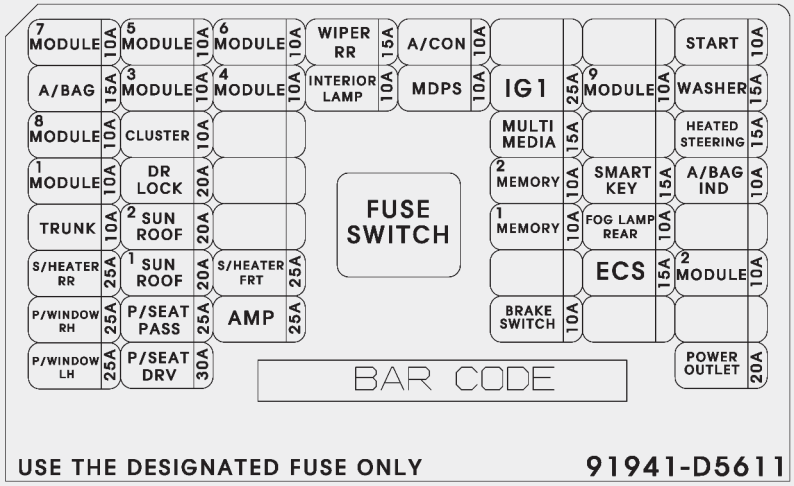
***Driver's side fuse panel***




Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label on the inside of the fuse cover. This diagram will provide you with the specific information for your vehicles.**




OJFA078159N

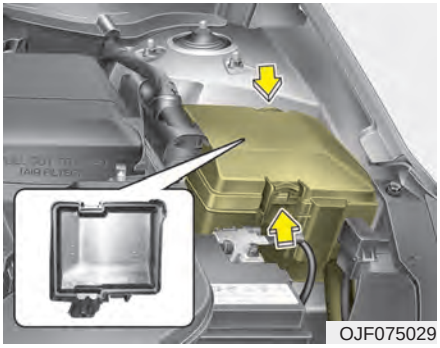
**Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)**

| Fuse Name | Fuse rating | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|
| MODULE 7 | 10A | Around View Unit, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module |
| MODULE 5 | 10A | A/C Control Module, Electro Chromic Mirror, Crash Pad Switch, Head Lamp LH/RH, Auto Head Lamp Leveling Device Module, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Fuel Lid & Trunk Open Switch, Shift Lever Indicator, Driver IMS Module, Driver IMS Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module |
| MODULE 6 | 10A | BCM, Smart Key Control Module |
| A/CON | 10A | A/C Control Module, E/R Junction Block (Blower Relay) |
| START | 10A | [W/O Smart Key & IMMO.] ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Relay)<br>[With Smart Key / IMMO.] Transaxle Range Switch, PCM (G4KH/G4KJ) |
| A/BAG | 15A | SRS Control Module, Passenger Occupant Detection |
| MODULE 3 | 10A | BCM, ATM Shift Lever, Stop Lamp Switch, DBL Unit, Keyboard, A/C Control Module |
| MODULE 4 | 10A | Console Switch, Blind Spot Detection Radar LH/RH, Smart Cruise Control Unit, AEB Module, Lane Keeping Assist Module |
| INTERIOR LAMP | 10A | Trunk Room Lamp, Ignition Key Ill. & Door Warning Switch, Glove Box Lamp, Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Front Vanity Lamp Switch LH/RH, Overhead Console Lamp, Center Room Lamp, Center Personal Lamp, Rear Personal Lamp LH/RH, Driver/Passenger Scuff Lamp |
| MDPS | 10A | MDPS Unit (Column/Rack), Steering Angle Sensor |
| IG1 | 25A | PCB Block (Fuse - TCU 2, ABS 3, ECU 3, VACUUM PUMP 2) |
| MODULE 9 | 10A | Immobilizer Module, Smart Key Control Module |

| Fuse Name | Fuse rating | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|
| WASHER | 15A | Multifunction Switch (Wiper Low & Washer Switch) |
| MODULE 8 | 10A | A/C Control Module, Driver/Passenger Door Module |
| CLUSTER | 10A | Instrument Cluster (IG1) |
| MULTI MEDIA | 15A | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Keyboard |
| HEATED STEERING | 15A | BCM (Steering Wheel Heated) |
| MODULE 1 | 10A | Console Switch, Key Solenoid, Driver/Passenger Door Module, BCM |
| DR LOCK | 20A | Door Lock Relay, Door Unlock Relay |
| SMART KEY | 15A | Smart Key Control Module |
| A/BAG IND | 10A | Instrument Cluster (Air Bag IND. Power) |
| TRUNK | 10A | Trunk Lid Relay, Fuel Filler & Trunk Open Switch, Trunk Lid Motor, ICM Relay Box (Fuel Filler Open Relay) |
| SUNROOF 2 | 20A | Sunroof Control Unit (Roller) |
| MEMORY 1 | 10A | Instrument Cluster, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector, Wireless Charger, Driver IMS Module, Rain Sensor, ICM Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Mirror Relay), Security Indicator, Auto Light & Photo Sensor, Driver/Passenger Door Module, Electro Chromic Mirror |
| S/HEATER RR | 25A | Rear Seat Warmer Control Module |
| SUNROOF 1 | 20A | Sunroof Control Unit (Glass) |

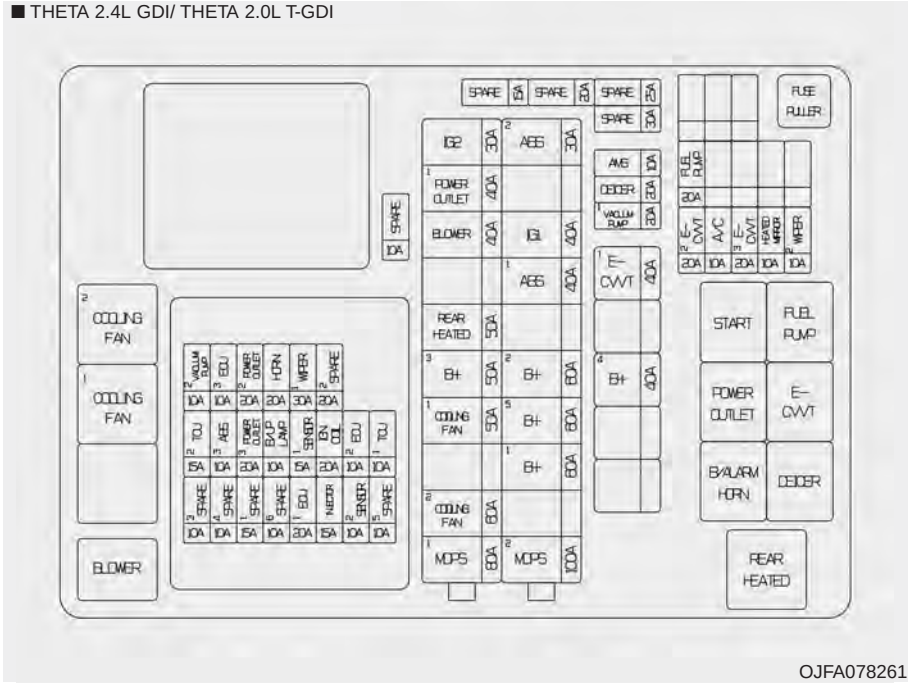
| Fuse Name | Fuse rating | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|
| S/HEATER FRT | 25A | Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module |
| MODULE 2 | 10A | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Keyboard, Around View Unit, AMP, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, BCM, Wireless Charger, Rear USB Charger #1/#2, E/R Junction Block (Power Outlet Relay) |
| P/WINDOW RH | 25A | Power Window RH Relay, Rear Power Window Switch RH, Power Window Main Switch, Passenger Safety Power Window Module |
| P/SEAT PASS | 25A | Passenger Seat Manual Switch, Walk In Relay Module, Passenger Reclining Limit Switch |
| AMP | 25A | AMP (JBL) |
| BRAKE SWITCH | 10A | Stop Lamp Switch, Immobilizer Module, Smart Key Control Module, Start/Stop Button Switch |
| P/WINDOW LH | 25A | Power Window LH Relay, Rear Power Window Switch LH, Power Window Main Switch, Driver Safety Power Window Module |
| P/SEAT DRV | 30A | Driver Seat Manual Switch, Driver IMS Module |
| POWER OUTLET | 20A | Front Power Outlet #1, Front Cigarette Lighter & Power Outlet #2 |

### *Engine compartment fuse panel*



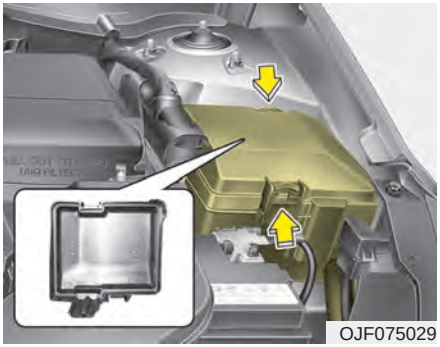
OJF075029

■ THETA 2.4L GDI/ THETA 2.0L T-GDI



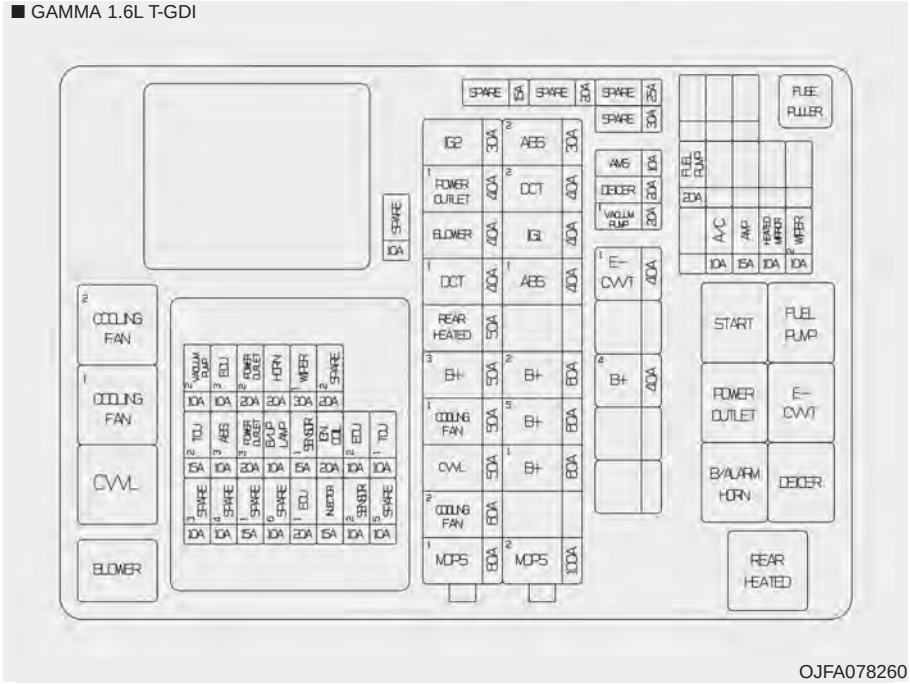

OJFA078261

### *Engine compartment fuse panel*



OJF075029

■ GAMMA 1.6L T-GDI




OJFA078260

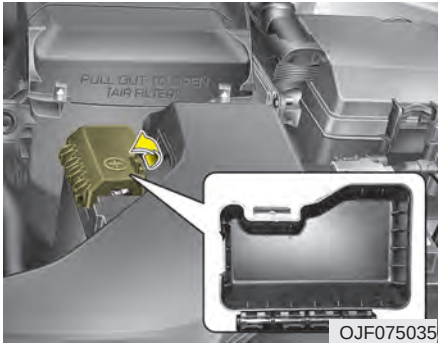
**Engine room compartment fuse panel**

| Fuse Name | | Fuse rating | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| MULTI FUSE | MDPS 1 | 80A | MDPS Unit (Column) |
| | COOLING FAN 2 | 60A | [G4KH/G4FJ] Cooling Fan1 Relay, Cooling Fan2 Relay |
| | COOLING FAN 1 | 50A | [G4KJ] Cooling Fan1 Relay |
| | B+ 3 | 50A | Smart Junction Block (IPS 2 (IPS 5), IPS 3 (IPS 6), IPS 7, IPS 8) |
| | REAR HEATED | 50A | Rear Heated Relay |
| | DCT1 | 40A | [G4FJ-DCT] TCM |
| | BLOWER | 40A | Blower Relay |
| | POWER OUTLET 1 | 40A | Power Outlet Relay |
| | IG2 | 30A | [W/O Smart Key] Start Relay, Ignition Switch, [With Smart Key] Start Relay, PCB Block (IG2 Relay) |
| | MDPS 2 | 100A | MDPS Unit (Rack) |
| | B+1 | 60A | Smart Junction Block (Fuse - SUNROOF1, SUNROOF2, S/HEATER RR, P/SEAT DRV, P/SEAT PASS, P/WINDOW LH, P/WINDOW RH, TRUNK) |
| | B+5 | 60A | PCB Block (Engine Control Relay, Fuse - TCU1, ECU2, FUEL PUMP, HORN, WIPER1) |
| | B+2 | 60A | Smart Junction Block (IPS 1, IPS 4, Fuse - AMP, S/HEATER FRT) |
| | ABS 1 | 40A | ESC Module |
| | IG1 | 40A | [W/O Smart Key] Ignition Switch, [With Smart Key] PCB Block (IG1/ACC Relay) |
| | DCT 2 | 40A | [G4FJ-DCT] TCM |
| | ABS 2 | 30A | ESC Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |

| Fuse Name | | Fuse rating | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| FUSE | B+4 | 40A | Smart Junction Block (Leak Current Autocut Device Fuse - INTERIOR LAMP, MEMORY1, MULTI MEDIA, Fuse - DOOR LOCK, MODULE1, SMART KEY, BRAKE SWITCH) |
| | E-CVVT 1 | 40A | E-CVVT Relay |
| | VACUUM PUMP 1 | 20A | Vacuum Pump |
| | DEICER | 20A | Deicer Relay |
| | AMS | 10A | Battery Sensor |
| | E-CVVT 2 | 20A | PCM |
| | A/CON | 10A | A/C Control Module |
| | E-CVVT 3 | 20A | PCM |
| | HEATED MIRROR | 10A | A/C Control Module, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror, ECM |
| | WIPER 2 | 10A | BCM, PCM/ECM |
| | H/LAMP HI | 20A | Head Lamp HI Relay |

| Fuse Name | | Fuse rating | Circuit Protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| FUSE | FUEL PUMP | 20A | Fuel Pump Relay |
| | ECU 1 | 20A | PCM/ECM |
| | SENSORS 2 | 10A | E/R Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay, Cooling Fan 1/2 Relay)<br>[G4KJ] Oil Control Valve (Exhaust), Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve<br>[G4KH] Oil Control Valve (Exhaust), Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve<br>[G4FJ] Oil Control Valve #1/#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV Control Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve |
| | TCU 2 | 15A | Transaxle Range Switch, TCM |
| | ABS 3 | 10A | ESC Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | POWER OUTLET 3 | 20A | Rear Power Outlet |
| | B/UP LAMP | 10A | PCM/TCM, Transaxle Range Switch, Audio, Electro Chromic Mirror, Rear Combination Lamp (IN) LH/RH |
| | SENSOR 1 | 15A | Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down) |
| | IGN COIL | 20A | Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4 |
| | ECU 2 | 10A | PCM/ECM |
| | TCU 1 | 10A | PCM/TCM |
| | VACUUM PUMP 2 | 10A | Vacuum Pump, Vacuum Switch |
| | ECU 3 | 10A | PCM/ECM |
| | POWER OUTLET 2 | 20A | Front Power Outlet #1 |
| | HORN | 20A | Horn Relay, ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Horn Relay) |
| | WIPER 1 | 30A | Wiper Power Relay |

***Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)***



OJF075035

## ✻ NOTICE

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.**



OJF078248

# LIGHT BULBS

## Bulb replacement precaution

Please keep extra bulbs on hand with appropriate wattage ratings in case of emergencies.

Refer to “Bulb Wattage” in chapter 8.

When changing lamps, first turn off the engine at a safe place, firmly apply the parking brake and detach the battery’s negative (-) terminal.

**⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights**

**Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle , burns to your skin for fingers, or an electric shock.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Light replacement**

***Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Headlamp Lens**

***To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamp lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

**• Lamp part malfunction due to net-work failure**

The headlamp, taillight, and fog light may light up when the head lamp switch is turned ON, and not light up when the taillight or for light switch is turned ON. This may be cause by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If there is a problem, we recommend the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

**• Lamp part malfunction due to electrical control system stabilization**

A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily. This momentary occurrence is due to the stabilization function of the vehicle's electrical control system. If the lamp stops flickering after a few moments, the vehicle does not require service.

However, if the lamp goes out after the momentary flickering, or the flickering continues, we recommend the system be serviced by an authorized Kia dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the light bulb or lamp connector is removed while the lamp is still on, the fuse box's electronic system may log it as a malfunction. Therefore, a lamp malfunction incident may be recorded as a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the fuse box.**
- **It is normal for an operating lamp to flicker momentarily. This is due to a stabilization function of the vehicle's electronic control device. If the lamp lights up normally after momentarily blinking, then it is functioning as normal. However, if the lamp continues to flicker several times or turns off completely, there may be an error in the vehicle's electronic control device. Please have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer immediately.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**We recommend that the headlight aiming be adjusted after an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled at an authorized Kia dealer.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**After driving in heavy rain or washing, headlamp and taillight lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn't indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.**

If you don't have the necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult an authorized Kia dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

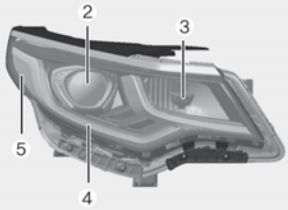
Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

If non-genuine parts or substandard bulbs are used, it may lead to blowing a fuse or other wiring damages.

Do not install extra lamps or LEDs to the vehicle. If additional lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunctions and flickering. Additionally, the fuse box and other writing may be damaged.

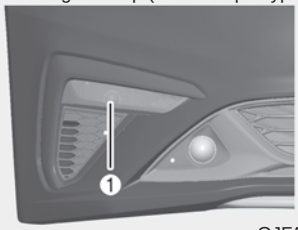
## Light bulb position (Front)

■ Head lamp - Type A



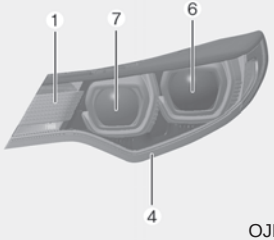

OJFA078237

■ Front turn signal lamp (Head lamp - Type A)



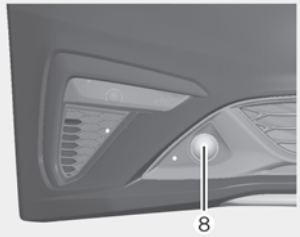

OJFA078238

■ Head lamp - Type B



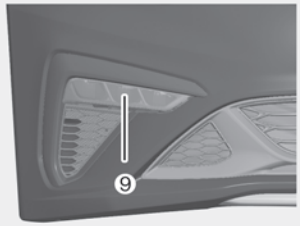

OJFA078223

■ Front fog lamp - Type A




OJFA078239

■ Front fog lamp - Type B

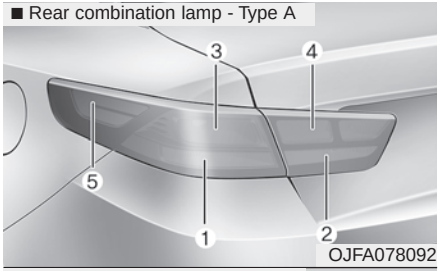



OJFA078240

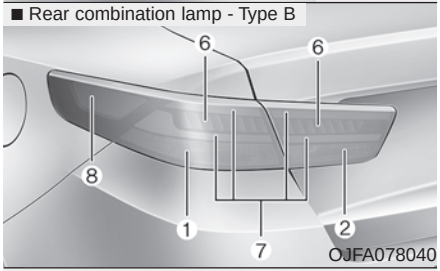
(1) Front turn signal lamp (bulb type)
(2) Headlamp (Low) (bulb type)
(3) Headlamp (High) (bulb type)
(4) Day time running lamp/ Position lamp (LED type)
(5) Side marker (LED type)
(6) Headlamp (Low) (LED type)
(7) Headlamp (High) (LED type)
(8) Front fog lamp (bulb type)
(9) Front fog lamp (LED type)

## Light bulb position (Rear)

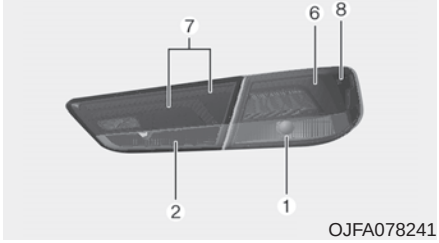
■ Rear combination lamp - Type A



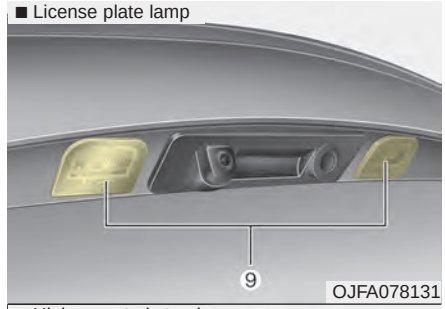

■ Rear combination lamp - Type B



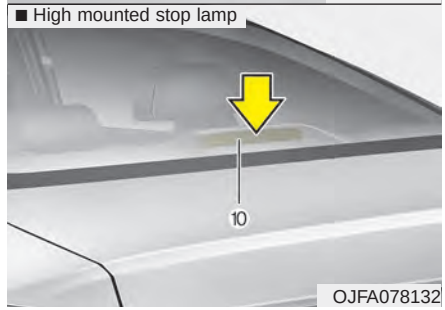

■ Rear combination lamp - Type C




■ License plate lamp

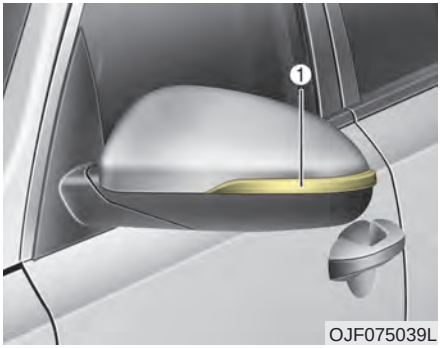



■ High mounted stop lamp



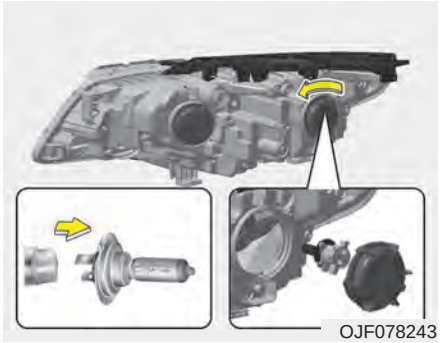

(1) Rear turn signal lamp (bulb type)
(2) Back-up lamp (bulb type)
(3) Stop and tail lamp (bulb type)
(4) Tail lamp (bulb type)
(5) Side marker (bulb type)
(6) Stop and tail lamp (LED type)
(7) Stop and tail lamp (LED type)
(8) Side marker (LED type)
(9) License plate lamp (bulb type)
(10) High mounted stop lamp (LED type)

## Light bulb position (Side)



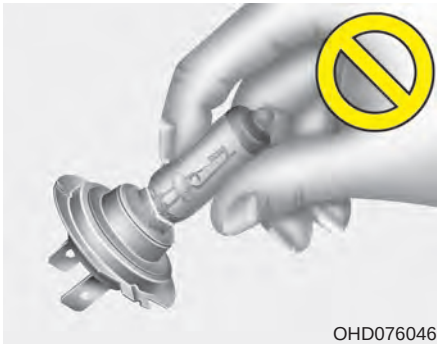

(1) Side repeater lamp (LED type)

## Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A)




1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

*Headlamp bulb*


OHD076046

**⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs**

**Handle halogen bulbs with care.**

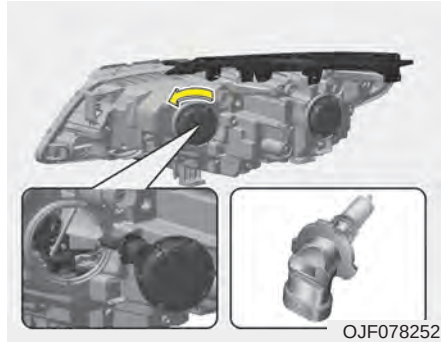
- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit. A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlamp.**
- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

## Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A)


OJF078252

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.

5. Install a new bulb-socket assembly in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
6. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

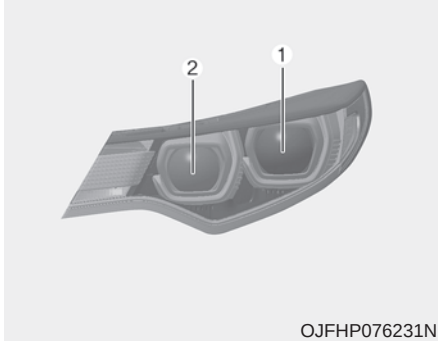
## Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A)




OJFA078238

If the front turn signal lamp (1) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

## Headlamp (Low/High beam) (LED type) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type B)




OJFHP076231N

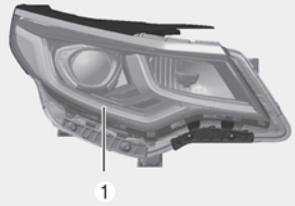
If the low beam (1) and high beam (2) do not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the head lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

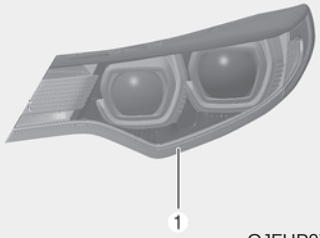
## Position lamp / Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type A, B)

■ Head lamp - Type A




OJF078245

■ Head lamp - Type B



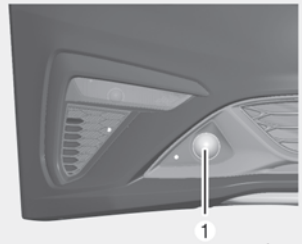

OJFHP076191L

If the position lamp + DRL (LED) (1) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.
A skilled technician should check or repair the position lamp + DRL (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

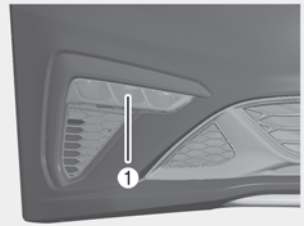
## Front fog lamp bulb replacement

■ Front fog lamp - Type A




OJFA078250

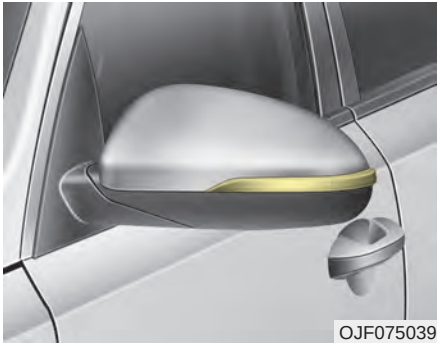
■ Front fog lamp - Type B




OJFA078251

If the front fog lamp (1) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

## Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement


OJF075039

If the side repeater lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

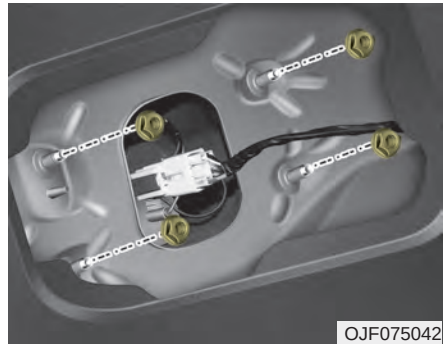
The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the side repeater lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

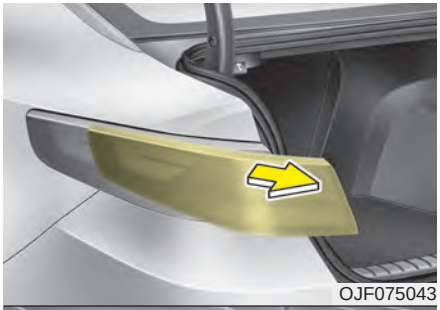
## Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement

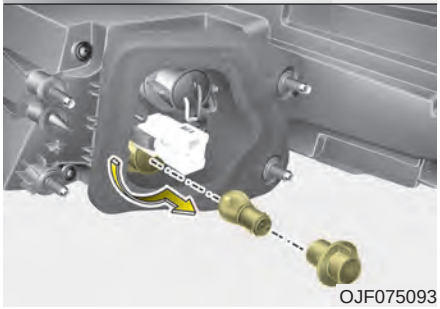

OJF075041

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.


OJF075042

3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.


OJF075043

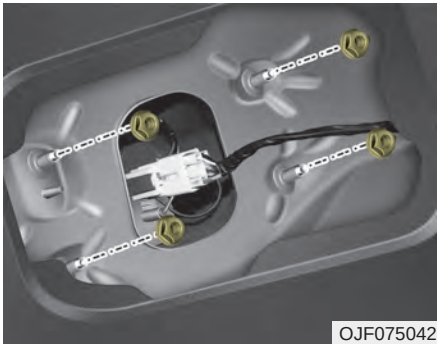

OJF075093

5. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

## Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement

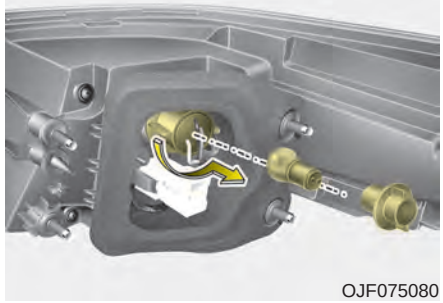

OJF075041

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.


OJF075042

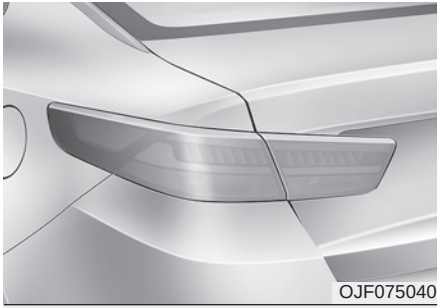
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.

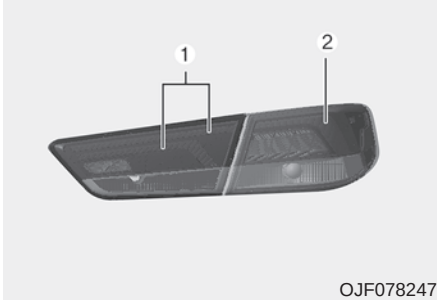

OJF075043


OJF075080

5. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

## Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement


OJF075040



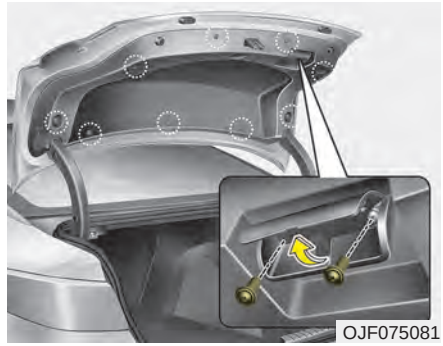
OJF078247

If the stop and tail lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair stop and tail lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

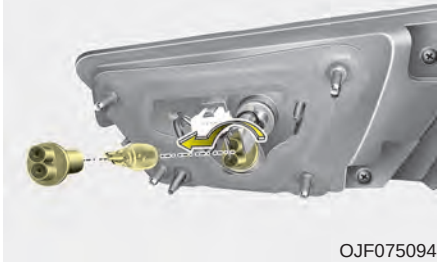
## Back-up lamp bulb replacement


OJF075081

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

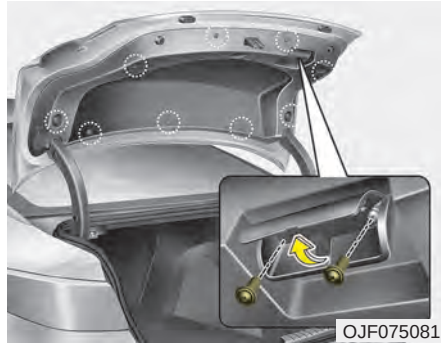

OJF075082


OJF075083


OJF075094

3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

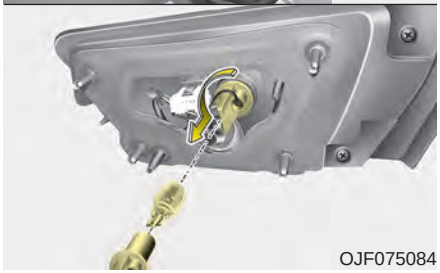
## Tail lamp bulb replacement


OJF075081

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

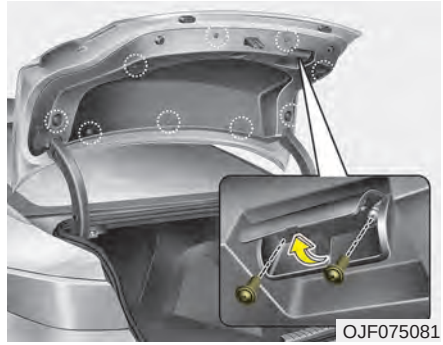

OJF075082


OJF075083

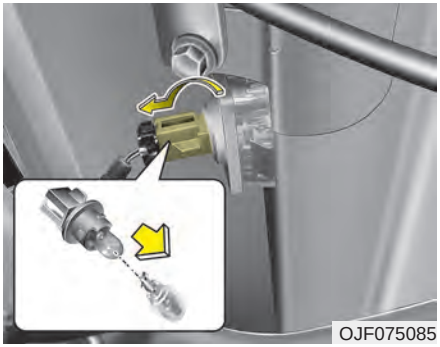

OJF075084

3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the rear combination lamp (inside) connector.
5. Remove the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly from the body of the vehicle.
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
8. Insert a new bulb into the bulb-socket.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Install the rear combination lamp (inside) assembly to the body of the vehicle.
11. Install the trunk lid cover.

## License plate lamp bulb replacement

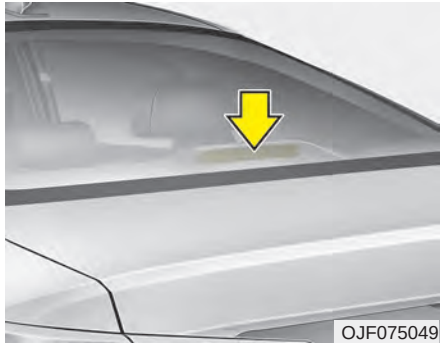

OJF075081

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.


OJF075085

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the trunk lid cover.

## High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement


OJF075049

If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

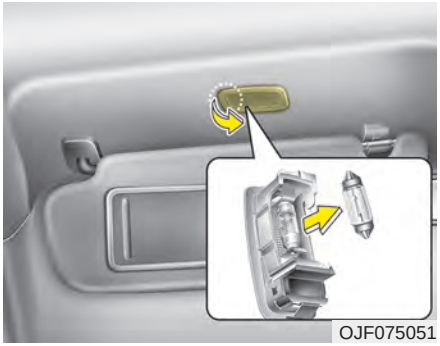
A skilled technician should check or repair high mounted stop lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Map lamp bulb replacement


OJF075050

If the map lamp (bulb and LED type) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

## Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement


OJF075051

**⚠ WARNING - Interior lamps**

**Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is pressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

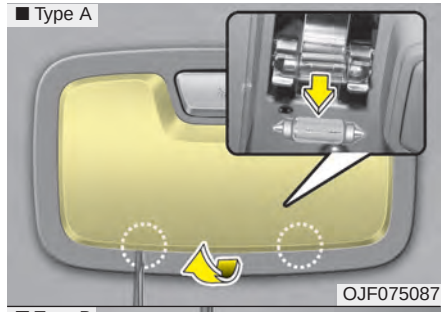
1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

### ✻ NOTICE

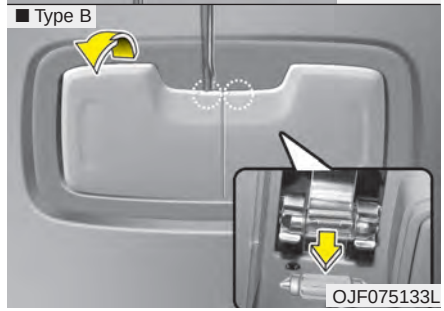
**Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.**

## Room lamp bulb replacement

■ Type A


OJF075087

■ Type B


OJF075133L

**⚠ WARNING - Interior lamps**

**Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.**

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.**

## Personal lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

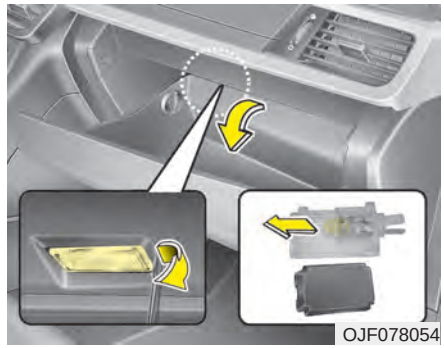



If the personal lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Kia dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single component because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair personal lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Glove box lamp bulb replacement

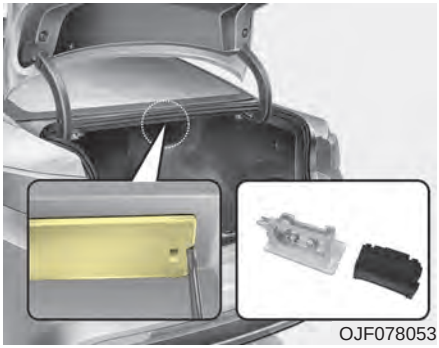



1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.**

### Trunk lamp bulb replacement




1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.**

# APPEARANCE CARE

## Exterior care

### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

### *Finish maintenance*

**Washing**

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

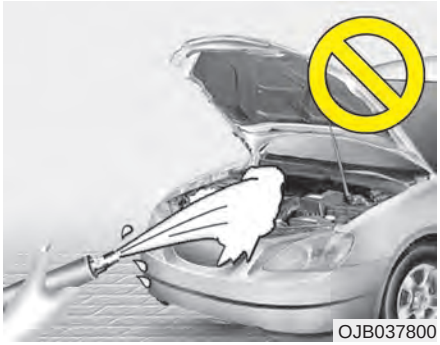
Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

**High-pressure washing**

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.


OJB037800

**⚠ CAUTION - Wet engine**

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**

### Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

Do not apply wax on embossed unpainted unit, as it may tarnish the unit.

**⚠ CAUTION - Drying vehicle**

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

### *Finish damage repair*

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

### *Bright-metal maintenance*

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

### *Underbody maintenance*

Road salt and other corrosive chemicals are used in cold weather states to melt snow and prevent ice accumulation. If these chemicals are not regularly removed, they will corrode the vehicle underbody and over time damage fuel lines, the fuel tank retention system, the vehicle suspension, the exhaust system, and even the body frame. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has warned all vehicle owners of all brands of the need to take the following steps:

- Wash the undercarriage of your vehicle regularly during the winter and whenever your vehicle has been exposed to such salts or chemicals.

- Do a thorough washing of the undercarriage at the end of the winter.
- Use professional service technicians or governmental inspection stations to annually inspect for corrosion.
- Immediately seek an inspection of your vehicle if you become visually aware of corrosion flaking or scaling or if you become aware of a change in vehicle performance, such as soft or spongey brakes, fluids leaking, impairment of directional control, suspension noises or rattling metal straps.

### *Aluminum wheel maintenance*

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with highspeed vehicle wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergents It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

### *Corrosion protection*

**Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

**Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

**High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

**Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporates slowly.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

**To help prevent corrosion**

You can help prevent corrosion from beginning by observing the following:

**Keep your vehicle clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

**Keep your garage dry**

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

**Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

**Don't neglect the interior**

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

## Interior care

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. If necessary, use a vinyl cleaner, see product instructions for correct usage.

**⚠ CAUTION - Electrical components**

***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Leather**

***When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.***

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

**Vinyl**

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

**Fabric**

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

**⚠ CAUTION - Rear window**

***Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.***

***Taking care of leather seats (if equipped)***

- Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
- Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
- Sufficient use of a leather protective may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the color.

  Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agents.
- Leather with bright colors(beige, cream beige) is easily contaminated and clear in appearance. Clean the seats frequently.
- Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.

***Cleaning the leather seats (if equipped)***

- Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
- Cosmetic products(sunscreen, foundation, etc.)
  - Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated point. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
- Beverages(coffee, soft drink, etc.)
  - Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
- Oil
  - Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover for natural leather only.
- Chewing gum
  - Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

***Fabric seat cover using precautions (if equipped)***

Please clean the fabric seats regularly with a vacuum cleaner in consideration of fabric material characteristics. If they are heavily soiled with beverage stains, etc., use a suitable interior cleaner. To prevent damage to seat covers, wipe off the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure using a soft sponge or microfiber cloth.

Velcro closures on clothing or sharp objects may cause snagging or scratches on the surface of the seats. Make sure not to rub such objects against the surface.

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Consumer Information manual in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems, as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorized Kia dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

### 2. Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

(The ORVR system is designed to allow the vapors from the fuel tank to be loaded into a canister while refueling at the gas station, preventing the escape of fuel vapors into the atmosphere.)

### *Canister*

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

### *Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)*

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

## 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

### *Vehicle modifications*

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorized electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorized electronic devices.

### *Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)*

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust**

**Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.**

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

***Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)***

**⚠ WARNING - Catalytic converter**

**Keep away from the catalytic converter and exhaust system while the vehicle is running or immediately thereafter. The exhaust and catalytic systems are very hot and may burn you.**

**⚠ WARNING - Fire**

- **Do not park, idle or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc. A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle.**
- **Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorized Kia dealer.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

## CALIFORNIA PERCHLORATE NOTICE

Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/ perchlorate.

Notice to California Vehicle Dismantlers:

Perchlorate containing materials, such as air bag inflators, seatbelt pretensioners and keyless remote entry batteries, must be disposed of according to Title 22 California Code of Regulations Chapter 67384.10 (a).

# Specifications, Consumer information and Reporting safety defects


Dimensions . . . . . 8-2
Engine . . . . . 8-2
Bulb wattage . . . . . 8-3
Tires and wheels . . . . . 8-5
Gross vehicle weight . . . . . 8-6
Luggage volume . . . . . 8-6
Air conditioning system . . . . . 8-6
Recommended lubricants and capacities . . . . . 8-7
• Recommended SAE viscosity number . . . . . 8-9
Vehicle identification number (VIN) . . . . . 8-10
Vehicle certification label . . . . . 8-10
Tire specification and pressure label . . . . . 8-11
Engine number . . . . . 8-11
Refrigerant label . . . . . 8-11
Consumer assistance (U.S. only) . . . . . 8-12
Electrical Equipment (U.S. only) . . . . . 8-15
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. only) . . . . . 8-16
Online factory authorized manuals (U.S. only) . . 8-16

## DIMENSIONS

| ITEM | | | in (mm) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Overall length | | | 191.1 (4,855) |
| Overall width | | | 73.2 (1,860) |
| Overall height | | | 57.6 (1,465) |
| Tread | Front | 205/65 R16 | 63.5 (1,614) |
| | | 215/55 R17 | 63.1 (1,602) |
| | | 235/45 R18 | 62.9 (1,597) |
| | Rear | 205/65 R16 | 63.8 (1,621) |
| | | 215/55 R17 | 63.3 (1,609) |
| | | 235/45 R18 | 63.1 (1,604) |
| Wheelbase | | | 110.4 (2,805) |

## ENGINE

| Items | 1.6 T-GDI | 2.0 T-GDI | 2.4 GDI |
|---|---|---|---|
| Displacement cu. in (cc) | 97.09 (1,591) | 121.92 (1,998) | 143.96 (2,359) |
| Bore x Stroke in. (mm) | 3.03x3.36 (77x85.4) | 3.39x3.39 (86x86) | 3.46x3.82 (88x97) |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 |
| No. of cylinders | 4, In-line | 4, In-line | 4, In-line |

## BULB WATTAGE

| Light Bulb | | | Wattage (W) | Bulb type |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Front | Headlamps (Low) | | 60W | HB3 |
| | Headlamps (Low) - LED type | | 28W | LED |
| | Headlamps (High) | Type A | 65W | HB3 (9005+) |
| | | Type C (LED type) | 16W | LED |
| | Front turn signal lamps | | 28W | 2357NALL |
| | Front position lamps | | 0.9W | LED |
| | Daytime running light | LED type | 14W | LED |
| | Front fog lamp | LED type | 7.5W | LED |
| | Side Repeater lamps | Bulb type | 5W | W5W LL |
| | | LED type | 0.5W | LED |
| | Side marker | | 5W | W5W LL |
| Rear | Rear Stop/Tail lamps (outside) | Bulb type | 5W | P21 |
| | Rear tail lamps (Inside) | | 5W | W5W |
| | Rear Stop/Tail lamps (outside) | LED type | 12W | LED |
| | Rear tail lamps (Inside) | | 6W | LED |
| | Rear turn signal lamps | | 21W | PY21W |
| | Back-up lamps | | 16W | W16W |
| | High mounted stop lamp | | 3W | LED |
| | License plate lamps | | 5W | W5W |
| | Side marker | LED type | 0.8W | LED |
| | | Bulb type | 5W | W5W |

(Continued)

(Continued)

| Light Bulb | | | Wattage (W) | Bulb type |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Interior | Map lamps | Bulb type | 10W | FESTON BULB |
| | | LED type | 1W | LED |
| | Room lamps | | 10W | FESTON BULB |
| | Personal lamps | | 1W | LED |
| | Vanity mirror lamps | | 5W | FESTON BULB |
| | Glove box lamp | | 5W | FESTON BULB |
| | Trunk lamp | | 5W | FESTON BULB |

## TIRES AND WHEELS

| Item | Tire size | Wheel size | Load Capacity | | Speed capacity | | Inflation pressure [bar(psi, kPa)] | | | | Wheel lug nut torque [Kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | Normal load *3 | | Maximum load | | |
| | | | LI *1 | Kg | SS *2 | Km/h | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tire | 205/65 R16 | 6.5J × 16 | 95 | 690 | H | 210 | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 11 ~ 13 (79 ~ 94, 107 ~ 127) |
| | 215/55 R17 | 7.0J × 17 | 94 | 670 | V | 240 | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | |
| | 235/45 R18 | 7.5J × 18 | 94 | 670 | V | 240 | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | 2.35 (34, 235) | |
| Compact spare tire (if equipped) | T125/80 D16 | 4.0T × 16 | 97 | 730 | M | 130 | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | |
| | T135/80 D17 | 4.0T × 17 | 103 | 875 | M | 130 | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | |

*1: Load Index *2: Speed Symbol *3: Normal load : Up to 3 persons

### ⚠ CAUTION

***When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.***
***Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or make them work irregularly.***

### ✻ NOTICE

- **It is permissible to add 3psi to the standard tire pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tires typically loose 1psi for every 12°F temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, re-check your tire pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.**
- **We recommend that when replacing tires, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.**
- **When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tire pressure and add more air when necessary.**
  **Additionally required tire air pressure per km above sea level: 1.5psi/km**

## GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

| Items | 1.6 T-GDI | 2.0 T-GDI | 2.4 GDI |
|---|---|---|---|
| Gross vehicle weight lbs. (kg) | 4321 (1960) | 4630 (2100) | 4497 (2040) |

## LUGGAGE VOLUME

| ITEM | Volume |
|---|---|
| SAE | 450L (15.9 cu ft) |

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

| Items | | Weight of Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant oz. (g) | 1.6 T-GDI | 20.1 ± 0.88 (570 ± 25) | R-1234yf |
| | 2.0 T-GDI | | |
| | 2.4 GDI | | |
| Compressor lubricant oz. (cc) | | 3.53 ± 0.35 (100 ± 10) | PAG (FD46XG) |

We recommend that you contact an authorized Kia dealer for more details.

## RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill)<br>Recommends<br>TOTAL QUARTZ | 1.6 T-GDI | 4.75 US qt. (4.5 *l*) | SAE 5W-30 / API*3 Latest (ILSAC*4 Latest) or ACEA A5/B5 |
| | 2.0 T-GDI | 5.07 US qt. (4.8 *l*) | SAE 5W-30 / API*3 Latest (ILSAC*4 Latest) or ACEA A5/B5 |
| | 2.4 GDI | 5.07 US qt. (4.8 *l*) | SAE 5W-20 / API Latest (ILSAC Latest) |
| Automatic transmission fluid | 2.0 T-GDI | 8.24 US qt. (7.8 *l*) | SK ATF SP-IV, MICHANG ATF SP-IV, NOCA ATF SP-IV, Kia GENUINE ATF SP-IV |
| | 2.4 GDI | 7.50 US qt. (7.1 *l*) | |
| Dual clutch transmission fluid | | 2.01~2.11 US qt.(1.9~2.0 *l*) | - SAE 70W, API GL-4<br>HK SYN DCTF 70W (SK)<br>SPIRAX S6 GHME 70W DCTF (H.K.SHELL)<br>GS DCTF HD 70W (GS CALTEX) |

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 If the API SM engine oil is not available, you can use API SN or above.

*4 If the ILSAC GF-4 engine oil is not available, you can use ILSAC GF-5 or above.

| Lubricant | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Coolant | 1.6 T-GDI | 7.50 US qt. (7.1 *l*) | Mixture of antifreeze and water (Ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant for cooling device) |
| | 2.0 T-GDI | 7.92 US qt. (7.5 *l*) | |
| | 2.4 GDI | 7.60 US qt. (7.2 *l*) | |
| Brake fluid | | 0.47 US qt.(0.45 *l*) | FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4 |
| Fuel | | 18.5 US gal. (70 *l*) | Unleaded gasoline |

## Recommended SAE viscosity number

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance; however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage. When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

**Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers**

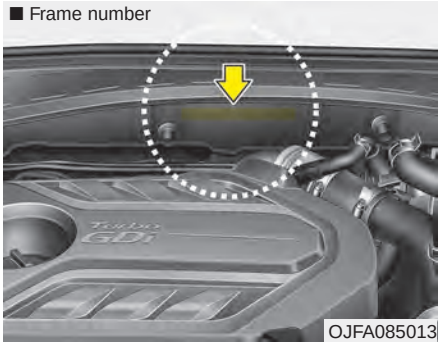
| Temperature | °C | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | (°F) | -10 | | 0 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 |
| Gasoline Engine Oil (Theta II 2.0 T-GDI, Gamma 1.6 T-GDI) | | | | | | | 20W-50 | | | |
| | | | | | | | 15W-40 | | | |
| | | | | | | | 10W-30 | | | |
| | | | | | | | 5W-30, 5W-40 | | | |
| Gasoline Engine Oil (Theta II 2.4 GDI) | | | | | | | 10W-30 | | | |
| | | | | | | | 5W-20, 5W-30 | | | |




An engine oil displaying this API Certification Mark conforms to the international Lubricant Specification Advisory Commmittee (ILSAC). It is recommended to only use engine oils that uphold this API Certification Mark

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

■ Frame number

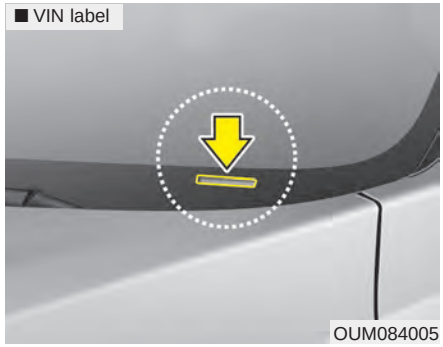



OJFA085013

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the front side wall of the engine room.

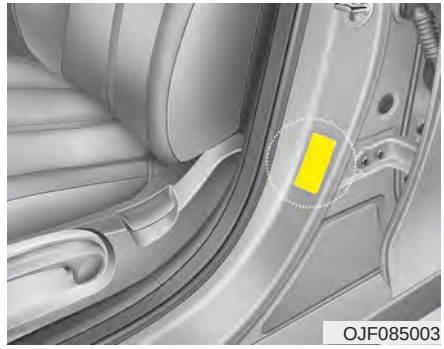
■ VIN label



OUM084005

The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

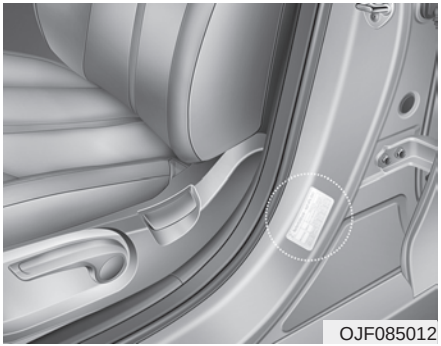
## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



OJF085003

The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

## TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

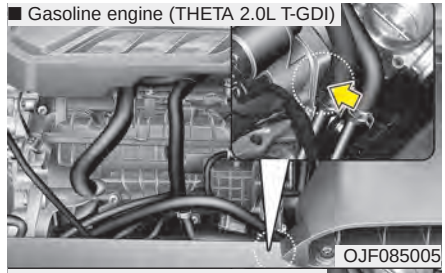



The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

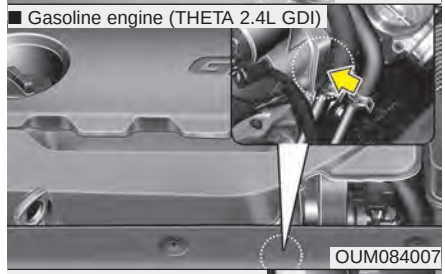
The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## ENGINE NUMBER

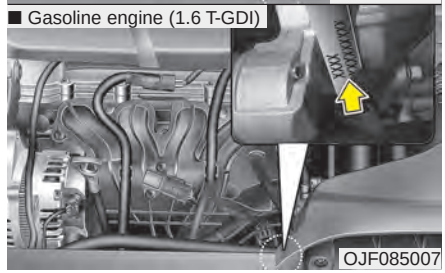
■ Gasoline engine (THETA 2.0L T-GDI)




■ Gasoline engine (THETA 2.4L GDI)

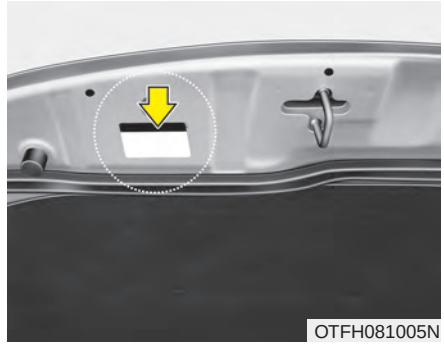



■ Gasoline engine (1.6 T-GDI)




The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

## REFRIGERANT LABEL




The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the hood.

## CONSUMER ASSISTANCE (U.S. ONLY)

Roadside Assistance is provided on all new current model year Kia Vehicles from the date the vehicle is delivered to the first retail buyer or otherwise put into use (in-service date), whichever is earlier, for a period of 60 months or 60,000 miles, whichever is earlier, subject to the terms, conditions and exclusions set forth in the Kia Warranty and Consumer Information Manual applicable to your model year vehicle.

KMA reserves the right to limit or deny services or other benefits to any owner or driver when, in KMA's judgment, the claims and/or service requests are excessive in frequency or type of occurrence.

### Toll free consumer assistance

Kia's toll-free Consumer Assistance hot line is staffed from 5:00 AM to 6:00 PM PST, Monday through Friday and is accessible by dialing 1-800-333-4Kia (4542).

For more information regarding assistance available, please refer to your Kia Warranty & Consumer Information Manual.

### Emergency roadside assistance

Kia's toll free Roadside Assistance hot line is staffed 24 hours a day, 365 days a year and is accessible by dialing 1-800-333-4Kia (4542).

Please note that you must provide your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) to verify coverage at the time of your call. The VIN can be found on the dash of your vehicle on the driver's side, on the door jamb of the driver's door, your vehicle's registration or proof of insurance card.

Kia utilizes a network of over 30,000 roadside assistance providers. Should you accidentally run out of fuel, require a battery jump, or need help changing a tire, a Kia Roadside Assistance Representative will dispatch someone to deliver a small quantity of gas, change a flat tire with your inflated spare, or arrange a battery jump to allow you to proceed to your destination. We have access to a network of over 10,000 locksmiths to help you should you become locked out of your Kia.

In the event that mechanical difficulty renders your vehicle undriveable due to a warranty-related concern, Kia's Roadside Assistance Representative will arrange to transport your vehicle to the nearest Kia dealer or to an authorized Kia alternative service location.

Your vehicle must be accessible to our dispatch transport vehicle, as determined by our driver, to receive this service.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Roadside Assistance benefits are not available for any Kia vehicle that has ever been or should be issued a "salvage" title or similar "branded" title under any state's law or has been declared a "total loss" or equivalent by a financial institution or insurance company.**

### Trip interruption

Trip interruption expense benefits are provided in the event that a warranty-related disablement occurs more than 150 miles from your home, and the repairs require more than 24 hours to complete. Reasonable reimbursement is included for meals, lodging, or rental vehicle expenses. Trip interruption coverage is limited to $100 per day subject to a three day maximum limit per incident. You must contact the Kia Roadside Assistance Center to obtain pre-authorization of expenses. Once the Kia Roadside Assistance Center gives authorization for trip interruption benefits, they will assist you in making the necessary arrangements. Insurance deductibles, expenses, and claims paid by your insurance company or other providers are not eligible for reimbursement.

Fleet vehicles are excluded from reimbursement under Kia's Trip Interruption Policy.

## Registering your vehicle in a foreign country

If you plan to register your vehicle in a foreign country, you should confirm that it conforms to the regulations in that country. Even if you successfully register the vehicle in a foreign country, you may experience the following problems and should therefore consider the possibility of having to deal with them:

1. The fuel specified for your vehicle may be unavailable. If other than the specified fuel is used, it could cause damage to the engine, the fuel injection system, and other fuel-related parts which may not be covered under your New Vehicle Emissions Limited Warranty.
2. We must, therefore, clearly state that when you leave the country in which you purchased your Kia new and register it in another country, problems arising from the use of fuel other than the specified fuel are not subject to manufacturer's warranty. Because vehicles like yours may not be marketed in the new country of registration, parts, servicing techniques and tools necessary to maintain and repair your vehicle may be unavailable.

   Even if vehicles like yours are sold there, mechanical specifications required by the government may vary enough from the country of purchase to cause additional problems.
3. There may not be an Authorized Kia Dealer in the area in which you plan to register your vehicle. You may additionally experience difficulty in obtaining services in a foreign country for any number of reasons.

Further, we cannot assume any responsibility for problems that result from unsatisfactory service or lack of service outside of the United States.

## ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT (U.S. ONLY)

The electrical system of your vehicle is designed to perform under all reasonably expected operating conditions. However, before any additional electrical equipment is installed in your vehicle, consult an Authorized Kia Dealer, in order to ensure that you do not void your warranty.

Certain electrical equipment, or the way in which it is installed, may adversely affect the operation of your vehicle, including such systems as the engine control system, the audio system and the electrical charging system and thus potentially void all or part of your warranty.

We assume no responsibility for any expense you may incur or for any malfunction of your vehicle or any of its components or systems that may result from the installation of additional electrical equipment that is not supplied, or recommended for installation by, Kia.

### Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

If a mobile two-way radio system is installed improperly, or if an excessively powerful type of system is used, other electronic systems may be adversely affected. To avoid damage to your vehicle, consult an Authorized Kia Dealer concerning the proper equipment and installation.

Kia motor vehicles are designed and manufactured to meet or exceed all applicable safety standards.

For your safety, however, we strongly urge you to read and follow all directions in this Owner's Manual, particularly the information under the headings "NOTICE", "CAUTION" and "WARNING".

If, after reading this manual, you have any questions regarding the operation of your vehicle, safety issues and defects please contact your Kia's toll-free Consumer Assistance hot line as below:

National Consumer Affairs Manager
Kia Motors America, Inc.
P.O. Box 52410
Irvine, CA 92619-2410
1-800-333-4Kia (4542)

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Kia Motors America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Kia Motors America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; download the SafeCar mobile application; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave. SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

## ONLINE FACTORY AUTHORIZED MANUALS (U.S. ONLY)

The following publications are available on www.KiaTechinfo.com

### Service manual:

This manual covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the Journeyman mechanic, but is simple enough for most mechanically inclined owners to understand.

### Electrical troubleshooting manual:

This manual complements the Service Manual by providing indepth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

### Owner's manual:

This manual describes the overall features and operating procedures for the vehicle.

# Index

## A


Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle . . . . . 3-72
Adjusting outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-56
Air bag inflation conditions . . . . . 3-67
Air bag non-inflation conditions . . . . . 3-69
Air bag warning label . . . . . 3-72
Air bag warning light . . . . . 3-48
Air bags . . . . . 3-45
Operation . . . . . 3-46
Air bag warning light . . . . . 3-48
SRS components and functions . . . . . 3-49
Occupant detection system . . . . . 3-52
Driver's and passenger's front air bag . . . . . 3-60
Side air bag . . . . . 3-63
Curtain air bag . . . . . 3-65
Air bag inflation conditions . . . . . 3-67
Air bag non-inflation conditions . . . . . 3-69
SRS Care . . . . . 3-71
Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle . . . . . 3-72
Air bag warning label . . . . . 3-72
Air cleaner . . . . . 7-34
Filter replacement . . . . . 7-34
Air conditioning system lubricants . . . . . 8-6
Air ventilation seat . . . . . 4-152
Antenna . . . . . 4-157
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . . 5-50
Appearance care . . . . . 7-94
Exterior care . . . . . 7-94
Interior care . . . . . 7-99
Armrest . . . . . 3-18
Assist mode . . . . . 4-66
Audio system . . . . . 4-157
Antenna . . . . . 4-157
Auto defogging system . . . . . 4-146
Auto hold . . . . . 5-46
Auto light . . . . . 4-104
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-131
Automatic heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-132
Manual heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-133
System operation . . . . . 4-139
Climate control air filter . . . . . 4-141
Air Conditioning refrigerant label . . . . . 4-142
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant . . . . . 4-141
Automatic heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-132
Automatic transaxle . . . . . 5-14
Automatic transaxle operation . . . . . 5-14
Good driving practices . . . . . 5-21

## B


Back-up lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-87
Battery . . . . . 7-42
For best battery service . . . . . 7-42
Recharging the battery . . . . . 7-43
Reset items . . . . . 7-44
Battery replacement (Folding key) . . . . . 4-8
Battery replacement (Smart key) . . . . . 4-15
Battery saver function . . . . . 4-103
Before driving . . . . . 5-5
Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system . . . . . 5-115
BCW (Blind-spot Collision Warning) . . . . . 5-116
RCCW (Rear Cross-traffic Collision Warning) . . . 5-119
Bonnet see the hood . . . . . 4-36
Brake system . . . . . 5-36
Power brakes . . . . . 5-36
Parking brake . . . . . 5-38
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) . . . . . 5-39
Auto hold . . . . . 5-46
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . . 5-50
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . . 5-52
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) . . . . . 5-56
Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) . . . . . 5-58
Brakes fluid . . . . . 7-31
Checking the brake fluid level . . . . . 7-31
Bulb replacement . . . . . 7-76
Bulb replacement precaution . . . . . 7-76
Bulb wattage . . . . . 8-3
Button start/stop, see engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-10


## C


California Perchlorate notice . . . . . 7-105
Camera (Rear view) . . . . . 4-101
Capacities (Lubricants) . . . . . 8-7
Care
Care of seat belts . . . . . 3-33
Tire care . . . . . 7-45
Exterior care . . . . . 7-94
Interior care . . . . . 7-99
Center console storage . . . . . 4-148
Central door lock switch . . . . . 4-22
Chains - Tire . . . . . 5-146
Checking fluid levels . . . . . 7-25
Checking tire inflation pressure . . . . . 7-46
Child restraint system . . . . . 3-34
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) . . . . . 3-35
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) . . . . . 3-38
Securing a child restraint with the LATCH anchors system . . . . . 3-40
Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system . . . . . 3-41
Child-protector rear door lock . . . . . 4-24
Climate control air filter . . . . . 7-36
Filter inspection . . . . . 7-36

Closing the sunroof. . . . . 4-47
Coat hook . . . . . 4-155
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster . . . . . 4-59
Consumer assistance (U.S. ONLY) . . . . . 8-12
Coolant . . . . . 7-28
Cooling fluid, see engine coolant . . . . . 7-28
Crankcase emission control system . . . . . 7-102
Cruise control system . . . . . 5-87
To set cruise control speed . . . . . 5-88
To increase cruise control set speed. . . . . 5-88
To decrease the cruising speed. . . . . 5-89
To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on. 5-89
To cancel cruise control . . . . . 5-89
To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 20mph (30 km/h) . . . . . 5-90
To turn cruise control off . . . . . 5-90
Cup holder . . . . . 4-150
Curtain air bag . . . . . 3-65

## D

Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination . . . . . 4-60
Dashboard, see instrument cluster . . . . . 4-59
Day/Night rearview mirror . . . . . 4-53
Daytime running light. . . . . 4-103
Defogging (Windshield) . . . . . 4-143
Defroster (Rear window) . . . . . 4-120
Defrosting (Windshield) . . . . . 4-143
Dimensions . . . . . 8-2
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination. 4-60
Displays, see instrument cluster . . . . . 4-59
Do not use methanol. . . . . 1-4
Door lock button. . . . . 4-21
Door locks. . . . . 4-20
from outside the vehicle. . . . . 4-20
from inside the vehicle. . . . . 4-21
Door lock button . . . . . 4-21
Central door lock switch . . . . . 4-22
Child-protector rear door lock . . . . . 4-24
Drinks holders, see cup holders . . . . . 4-150
Drive mode integrated system . . . . . 5-112
Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system . . . . . 5-134
System setting and activation. . . . . 5-134
Resetting the system. . . . . 5-136
System disabled . . . . . 5-137
System malfunction . . . . . 5-137
Driver position memory system . . . . . 3-11
Driver's and passenger's front air bag. . . . . 3-60
Driver's seat belt warning . . . . . 3-23
Driving at night. . . . . 5-142
Driving in flooded areas . . . . . 5-144
Driving in the rain . . . . . 5-143
Driving off-road . . . . . 5-144

Dual clutch transmission . . . . . 5-22
Dual clutch transmission operation . . . . . 5-22
Good driving practices . . . . . 5-33
Dynamic Bending Light (DBL) . . . . . 4-111

## E

Economical operation . . . . . 5-139
Electric power steering . . . . . 4-49
Electrical equipment (U.S. ONLY) . . . . . 8-15
Electro Chromic Mirror (ECM) . . . . . 4-54
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) . . . . . 5-39
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . . 5-52
Emergency starting . . . . . 6-5
Jump starting . . . . . 6-5
Emergency while driving . . . . . 6-3
Emission control system . . . . . 7-102
Crankcase emission control system . . . . . 7-102
Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system . . . 7-102
Exhaust emission control system . . . . . 7-103
Engine . . . . . 8-2
Engine compartment . . . . . 2-6, 7-4
Engine coolant . . . . . 7-28
Checking the coolant level . . . . . 7-28
Changing the coolant . . . . . 7-30
Engine coolant temperature gauge . . . . . 4-62
Engine number . . . . . 8-11
Engine oil . . . . . 7-26
Checking the engine oil level . . . . . 7-26
Changing the engine oil and filter . . . . . 7-27
Engine overheats . . . . . 6-7
Engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-10
Illuminated engine start/stop button . . . . . 5-10
Engine start/stop button position . . . . . 5-10
Starting the engine . . . . . 5-12
Engine start/stop button illumination . . . . . 5-10
Engine start/stop button position . . . . . 5-10
Engine will not start . . . . . 6-4
Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system . . . . . 7-102
Exhaust emission control system . . . . . 7-103
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . . . 7-22
Engine oil and filter . . . . . 7-22
Drive belts . . . . . 7-22
Fuel filter (for gasoline) . . . . . 7-22
Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections . . . . . 7-22
Vapor hose and fuel filler cap . . . . . 7-22
Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses . . . . . 7-23
Air cleaner filter . . . . . 7-23
Spark plugs . . . . . 7-23
Valve clearance . . . . . 7-23
Cooling system . . . . . 7-23
Coolant . . . . . 7-23
Automatic transmission fluid . . . . . 7-23
Dual clutch transmission fluid . . . . . 7-24

Brake hoses and lines . . . . . 7-24
Brake fluid . . . . . 7-24
Parking brake . . . . . 7-25
Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors . . . . . 7-25
Exhaust pipe and muffler . . . . . 7-25
Suspension mounting bolts . . . . . 7-25
Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint . . . . . 7-25
Drive shafts and boots . . . . . 7-25
Air conditioning refrigerant . . . . . 7-25
Exterior care . . . . . 7-94
Exterior overview . . . . . 2-2

## F

Flat tire . . . . . 6-14
Jack and tools . . . . . 6-14
Removing and storing the spare tire . . . . . 6-15
Changing tires . . . . . 6-16
Tire Mobility Kit . . . . . 6-23
Components of the Tire Mobility Kit (TMK) . . . . . 6-27
Using the Tire Mobility Kit . . . . . 6-28
Floor mat anchor(s) . . . . . 4-155
Fluid
Brake fluid . . . . . 7-31
Washer fluid . . . . . 7-32
Folding key . . . . . 4-5
Record your key number . . . . . 4-5
Key operations . . . . . 4-5
Transmitter precautions . . . . . 4-7
Battery replacement . . . . . 4-8
Immobilizer system . . . . . 4-9
Folding the outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-57
Folding the rear seat . . . . . 3-19
Forward Collision-Avoidance assist (FCA) (Camera type) . . . . . 5-60
System setting and activation . . . . . 5-60
FCA warning message and system control . . . . . 5-62
Brake operation . . . . . 5-63
FCA front radar/camera sensor . . . . . 5-64
System malfunction . . . . . 5-65
Limitation of the system . . . . . 5-67
Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA) (Smart cruise control system equipped) . . . . . 5-72
System setting and activation . . . . . 5-72
FCA warning message and system control . . . . . 5-74
Brake operation . . . . . 5-75
FCA front radar/camera sensor . . . . . 5-76
System malfunction . . . . . 5-78
Limitation of the system . . . . . 5-80
Recognizing pedestrians . . . . . 5-84
Front fog lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-83
Front fog light . . . . . 4-110
Front passenger's seat belt warning . . . . . 3-24

Front seat adjustment - power . . . . . 3-8
Front seat adjustment-manual. . . . . 3-7
Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement
(Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-82
Fuel additives . . . . . 1-5
Fuel filler lid. . . . . 4-38
Opening the fuel filler lid. . . . . 4-38
Closing the fuel filler lid . . . . . 4-38
Emergency fuel filler lid release . . . . . 4-41
Fuel gauge. . . . . 4-62
Fuel requirements . . . . . 1-3
Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol . . . . . 1-3
Other fuels . . . . . 1-4
Gasoline containing MMT . . . . . 1-4
Do not use methanol . . . . . 1-4
Fuel additives . . . . . 1-5
Operation in foreign countries . . . . . 1-5
Fuses . . . . . 7-60
Inner panel fuse replacement . . . . . 7-62
Engine compartment fuse replacement . . . . . 7-64
Fuse/Relay panel description . . . . . 7-66

## G

Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol . . . . . 1-3
Gasoline containing MMT . . . . . 1-4
Gauges . . . . . 4-61
Glove box . . . . . 4-148
Glove box lamp. . . . . 4-118
Glove box lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-92
Gross vehicle weight . . . . . 8-6

## H

Hazard warning flasher. . . . . 6-2
Hazardous driving conditions. . . . . 5-141
Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement
(Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-81
Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement
(Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-80
Headlamp (Low/High beam) (LED type) bulb replacement
(Headlamp Type B) . . . . . 7-82
Headlight (Headlamp) escort function . . . . . 4-119
Headlight leveling device . . . . . 4-111
Headlight position. . . . . 4-104
Headrest (front). . . . . 3-14
Headrest (rear) . . . . . 3-17
Heated steering wheel. . . . . 4-51
High - beam operation . . . . . 4-105
High beam assist. . . . . 4-106
High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb
replacement . . . . . 7-90
Highway driving. . . . . 5-144
Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) . . . . . 5-58

Hood . . . . . 4-36
Opening the hood . . . . . 4-36
Closing the hood . . . . . 4-37
Hood open warning . . . . . 4-36
Horn . . . . . 4-52
How to use this manual . . . . . 1-2

## I

Immobilizer system (Folding key) . . . . . 4-9
Immobilizer system (Smart key) . . . . . 4-15
Indicator lights . . . . . 4-93
Inside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-53
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS). . . . . 3-38
Instrument cluster . . . . . 4-59
Instrument cluster control . . . . . 4-60
LCD display control. . . . . 4-60
Gauges . . . . . 4-61
Warning lights . . . . . 4-85
Indicator lights . . . . . 4-93
Instrument panel overview . . . . . 2-5
Interior care. . . . . 7-99
Interior features. . . . . 4-150
Cup holder . . . . . 4-150
Seat warmer . . . . . 4-151
Air ventilation seat . . . . . 4-152
Sunvisor . . . . . 4-152
Power outlet . . . . . 4-153
Coat hook . . . . . 4-155
Floor mat anchor(s) . . . . . 4-155
USB charger . . . . . 4-154
Side curtain. . . . . 4-156
Interior light . . . . . 4-116
Map lamp . . . . . 4-117
Room lamp . . . . . 4-116
Trunk room lamp . . . . . 4-118
Glove box lamp . . . . . 4-118
Vanity mirror lamp . . . . . 4-118
Interior overview . . . . . 2-4

## J

Jump starting. . . . . 6-5

## K

Key operations (Folding key). . . . . 4-5
Key positions . . . . . 5-7
Ignition switch position . . . . . 5-7
Starting the engine . . . . . 5-9

## L


Label
- Tire sidewall labeling . . . . . 7-50
- Vehicle certification label. . . . . 8-10
- Tire specification and pressure label . . . . . 8-11
- Refrigerant label. . . . . 8-11

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System . . . . . 5-125
- LKA system operation . . . . . 5-126
- Driver's attention . . . . . 5-131
- LKA system malfunction . . . . . 5-132
- LKA system function change. . . . . 5-133

LCD display . . . . . 4-65
- LCD modes . . . . . 4-65
- Trip computer mode. . . . . 4-66
- Turn by turn mode . . . . . 4-66
- Assist mode . . . . . 4-66
- Service mode . . . . . 4-67
- Master warning mode. . . . . 4-68
- User settings mode. . . . . 4-68

LCD modes. . . . . 4-65
License plate lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-89
Light bulb position (front) . . . . . 7-78
Light bulb position (rear) . . . . . 7-79
Light bulb position (side) . . . . . 7-80
Light bulbs . . . . . 7-76
- Bulb replacement precaution . . . . . 7-76
- Light bulb position (front) . . . . . 7-78

Light bulb position (rear). . . . . 7-79
Light bulb position (side). . . . . 7-80
Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-80
Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-81
Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) . . . . . 7-82
Headlamp (Low/High beam) (LED type) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type B). . . . . 7-82
Position lamp/Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type A, B) . . . . . 7-83
Front fog lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-83
Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . 7-84
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-84
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-85
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . 7-87
Back-up lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-87
Tail lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-88
License plate lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-89
High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . . . . 7-90
Map lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-90
Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-91
Room lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-91
Personal lamp (LED type) bulb replacement. . . . . 7-92
Glove box lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-92
Trunk lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-93

Lighting . . . . . 4-103
Battery saver function . . . . . 4-103
Daytime running light . . . . . 4-103
Parking & Tail light . . . . . 4-104
Auto light . . . . . 4-104
Headlight position . . . . . 4-104
High - beam operation . . . . . 4-105
High Beam Assist . . . . . 4-106
Turn signals and lane change signals . . . . . 4-109
Headlight leveling device . . . . . 4-111
Front fog light . . . . . 4-110
Dynamic Bending Light (DBL) . . . . . 4-111
Loss of the smart key (Smart key) . . . . . 4-14
Lubricants and capacities . . . . . 8-7
Luggage volume . . . . . 8-6

## M

Maintenance
Engine compartment . . . . . 7-4
Maintenance services . . . . . 7-6
Owner maintenance . . . . . 7-8
Scheduled maintenance service . . . . . 7-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . . . 7-22
Tire maintenance . . . . . 7-50
Maintenance schedule . . . . . 7-10
Normal maintenance schedule - Non turbo models . . 7-11
Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Non turbo models . . . . . 7-14
Normal maintenance schedule - Turbo models . . . . 7-16
Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Turbo models . . . . . 7-20
Maintenance services . . . . . 7-6
Owner's responsibility . . . . . 7-6
Owner maintenance precautions . . . . . 7-7
Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-121
Heating and air conditioning . . . . . 4-122
System operation . . . . . 4-127
Climate control air filter . . . . . 4-129
Air Conditioning refrigerant label . . . . . 4-129
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant . . . . . 4-130
Map lamp . . . . . 4-117
Map lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-90
Master warning mode . . . . . 4-68
Mirrors . . . . . 4-53
Inside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-53
Day/night rearview mirror . . . . . 4-53
Electro Chromic Mirror (ECM) . . . . . 4-54
Outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-55
Adjusting outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-56
Reverse parking aid function . . . . . 4-56
Folding the outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-57

## O


Occupant detection system . . . . . 3-52
Odometer . . . . . 4-63
Oil (Engine) . . . . . 7-26
Online factory authorized manuals (U.S. ONLY) . . . . 8-16
Operation . . . . . 3-46
Operation in foreign countries . . . . . 1-5
Other fuels . . . . . 1-4
Outside rearview mirror . . . . . 4-55
Outside temperature gauge . . . . . 4-64
Overheats . . . . . 6-7
Owner maintenance . . . . . 7-8
  Owner maintenance schedule. . . . . 7-8


## P


Panoramic Sunroof . . . . . 4-42
  Sunroof open warning . . . . . 4-43
  Sunshade. . . . . 4-44
  Sliding the sunroof. . . . . 4-45
  Tilting the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
  Closing the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
  Resetting the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
Parking & Tail light . . . . . 4-104
Parking brake . . . . . 5-38
Parking brake . . . . . 7-33
  Checking the parking brake . . . . . 7-33
Parking distance warning-reverse. . . . . 4-98
  Operation of the parking distance warning-reverse. 4-98
  Non-operational conditions of parking distance warning-reverse . . . . . 4-99
  Parking distance warning-reverse precautions. . . . 4-100
  Self-diagnosis . . . . . 4-100
Personal lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . . . . 7-92
Pocket lamp. . . . . 4-119
Position lamp/Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type A, B). . . . . 7-83
Power brakes. . . . . 5-36
Power outlet . . . . . 4-153
Power window lock button. . . . . 4-35
Precautions . . . . . 3-31
Pre-tensioner seat belt. . . . . 3-28


## R


Rear seat adjustment. . . . . 3-17
  Headrest (rear) . . . . . 3-17
  Armrest. . . . . 3-18
  Folding the rear seat. . . . . 3-19
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-84
Rear view monitor . . . . . 4-101
Recommended lubricants and capacities . . . . . 8-7
  Recommended SAE viscosity number. . . . . 8-9
Record your key number (Folding key) . . . . . 4-5
Record your key number (Smart key) . . . . . 4-11

Refrigerant label . . . . . 8-11
Reporting safety defects (U.S. ONLY). . . . . 8-16
Resetting the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
Reverse parking aid function . . . . . 4-56
Road warning . . . . . 6-2
Rocking the vehicle . . . . . 5-141
Room lamp . . . . . 4-116
Room lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-91
Rotation (Tire) . . . . . 7-47

## S

Scheduled maintenance service . . . . . 7-10
Normal maintenance schedule - Non turbo models . . 7-11
Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Non turbo models . . . . . 7-14
Normal maintenance schedule - Turbo models . . . . 7-16
Maintenance under severe usage conditions - Turbo models. . . . . 7-20
Seat belt restraint system . . . . . 3-22
Seat belts. . . . . 3-22
Seat belt restraint system . . . . . 3-22
Driver's seat belt warning. . . . . 3-23
Front passenger's seat belt warning . . . . . 3-24
Pre-tensioner seat belt . . . . . 3-28
Precautions . . . . . 3-31
Care of seat belts . . . . . 3-33
Seat warmer . . . . . 4-151
Seats . . . . . 3-4
Driver’s seat . . . . . 3-4
Front passenger’s seat . . . . . 3-4
Rear seat. . . . . 3-4
Securing a child restraint seat with "Tether Anchor" system. . . . . 3-41
Securing a child restraint with the LATCH anchors system. . . . . 3-40
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS). . . . . 3-35
Service mode . . . . . 4-67
Side air bag. . . . . 3-63
Side curtain. . . . . 4-156
Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . . . 7-84
Sliding the sunroof . . . . . 4-45
Smart cruise control with Stop & Go System . . . . . 5-91
Smart cruise control speed. . . . . 5-93
Vehicle to vehicle distance setting. . . . . 5-98
To adjust the sensitivity of smart cruise control system. . . . . 5-104
To convert to cruise control mode . . . . . 5-105
Limitations of the system. . . . . 5-105
Smart key . . . . . 4-11
Record your key number . . . . . 4-11
Smart key function . . . . . 4-11
Loss of the smart key. . . . . 4-14
Smart key precautions . . . . . 4-14
Battery replacement . . . . . 4-15
Immobilizer system . . . . . 4-15

Smart key function (Smart key) . . . . . 4-11
Smart key precautions (Smart key) . . . . . 4-14
Smart trunk . . . . . 4-27
How to use the Smart trunk . . . . . 4-27
How to deactivate the Smart trunk function using the smart key . . . . . 4-29
Detecting area. . . . . 4-30
Smooth cornering . . . . . 5-142
Snow tires . . . . . 5-145
Spare tire
Jack and tools . . . . . 6-14
Removing and storing the spare tire . . . . . 6-15
Changing tires . . . . . 6-16
Special driving conditions . . . . . 5-141
Hazardous driving conditions . . . . . 5-141
Rocking the vehicle . . . . . 5-141
Smooth cornering . . . . . 5-142
Driving at night . . . . . 5-142
Driving in the rain . . . . . 5-143
Driving in flooded areas. . . . . 5-144
Driving off-road . . . . . 5-144
Highway driving. . . . . 5-144
Speedometer . . . . . 4-61
SRS Care. . . . . 3-71
SRS components and functions . . . . . 3-49
Starting difficulties, see engine will not start . . . . . 6-4
Starting the engine - With a smart key . . . . . 5-12
Steering wheel. . . . . 4-49
Electric Power Steering (EPS) . . . . . 4-49
Tilt and telescopic steering. . . . . 4-50
Heated steering wheel . . . . . 4-51
Horn . . . . . 4-52
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement. . . . . 7-87
Stop and tail lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-85
Storage compartment . . . . . 4-148
Center console storage . . . . . 4-148
Glove box . . . . . 4-148
Sunglass holder . . . . . 4-149
Sunglass holder. . . . . 4-149
Sunroof open warning . . . . . 4-43
Sunshade . . . . . 4-44
Sunvisor . . . . . 4-152
Surround View Monitoring System (SVM) . . . . . 4-102

## T

Tachometer . . . . . 4-61
Tail lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-88
Theft alarm system . . . . . 4-17
Armed stage . . . . . 4-17
Theft-alarm stage . . . . . 4-18
Disarmed stage . . . . . 4-18
Tilt and telescopic steering . . . . . 4-50
Tilting the sunroof . . . . . 4-47
Tire chains. . . . . 5-146

Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 6-8
Check tire pressure . . . . . 6-8
Low tire pressure telltale . . . . . 6-10
Changing a tire with TPMS . . . . . 6-12
Tire replacement . . . . . 7-49
Tire rotation . . . . . 7-47
Tire specification and pressure label . . . . . 8-11
Tires and wheels . . . . . 8-4
Tires and wheels . . . . . 7-45
Tire care . . . . . 7-45
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures . . . . . 7-45
Tire pressure . . . . . 7-46
Checking tire inflation pressure . . . . . 7-46
Tire rotation . . . . . 7-47
Wheel alignment and tire balance . . . . . 7-48
Tire replacement . . . . . 7-49
Wheel replacement . . . . . 7-50
Tire traction . . . . . 7-50
Tire maintenance . . . . . 7-50
Tire sidewall labeling . . . . . 7-50
Tire terminology and definitions . . . . . 7-54
All season tires . . . . . 7-57
Summer tires . . . . . 7-57
Snow tires . . . . . 7-57
Tire chains . . . . . 7-58
Radial-ply tires . . . . . 7-58
Low aspect ratio tire . . . . . 7-59
Towing . . . . . 6-33
Towing service . . . . . 6-33
Transaxle - Automatic transaxle . . . . . 5-14
Transmission shift indicator . . . . . 4-64
Transmitter precautions (Folding key) . . . . . 4-7
Trip computer mode . . . . . 4-66
Trip modes (Trip computer) . . . . . 4-74
Trip modes . . . . . 4-74
Fuel economy . . . . . 4-75
Accumulated driving information mode . . . . . 4-76
One time driving information mode . . . . . 4-77
Digital speedometer . . . . . 4-77
Smart shift . . . . . 4-78
Transmission temperature . . . . . 4-78
Trunk . . . . . 4-25
Opening the trunk . . . . . 4-25
Closing the trunk . . . . . 4-26
Emergency trunk safety release . . . . . 4-26
Trunk lamp bulb replacement . . . . . 7-93
Trunk room lamp . . . . . 4-118
Turn By Turn mode . . . . . 4-66
Turn signals and lane change signals . . . . . 4-109

## U

USB charger . . . . . 4-154
User settings mode . . . . . 4-68

## V

Vanity mirror lamp . . . . . 4-118
Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement. . . . . 7-91
Vehicle break-in process. . . . . 1-5
Vehicle certification label . . . . . 8-10
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders . . . . . 1-6
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). . . . . 8-10
Vehicle load limit . . . . . 5-149
Tire and loading information label. . . . . 5-149
Certification label. . . . . 5-153
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) . . . . . 5-56
Vehicle weight glossary . . . . . 5-154

## W

Warning and indicator lights. . . . . 4-85
Warning lights. . . . . 4-85
Warning messages. . . . . 4-78
Washer fluid . . . . . 7-32
Checking the washer fluid level. . . . . 7-32
Welcome system . . . . . 4-119
Headlight (Headlamp) escort function . . . . . 4-119
Interior light . . . . . 4-119
Pocket lamp . . . . . 4-119
Wheel alignment and tire balance . . . . . 7-48
Wheel replacement . . . . . 7-50
Windows . . . . . 4-31
Power window lock button . . . . . 4-35
Windshield defrosting and defogging. . . . . 4-143
Manual climate control system . . . . . 4-143
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 4-144
Defogging logic . . . . . 4-145
Windshield washers . . . . . 4-114
Windshield wipers. . . . . 4-113
Winter driving. . . . . 5-145
Snow tires. . . . . 5-145
Tire chains . . . . . 5-146
Wiper blades . . . . . 7-38
Blade inspection . . . . . 7-38
Blade replacement . . . . . 7-38
Wipers and washers . . . . . 4-113
Windshield wipers . . . . . 4-113
Front windshield washers. . . . . 4-114

© 2018 KIA MOTORS AMERICA, INC.